

Far East Everyday Chinese

遠東

生活語彙

○ Book II ○

主編 葉德明 Yeh Teh-ming

遠東圖書公司

The Far East Book Co., Ltd.

Far East Everyday Chinese

遠東生活華語

Book II

[Part A]

主編 葉德明 Yeh, Teh-ming

編者 劉咪咪 Liu, Mi-mi
吳彰英 Wu, Zhang-ying
蔡顏秀 Cai, Yan-xiu

遠東圖書公司

The Far East Book Co., Ltd.

Published by

The Far East Book Co., Ltd.

www.fareast.com.tw

遠東圖書公司出版印行 版權所有 翻印必究

© 2018 The Far East Book Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

North America Distributor

Elite Culture Educational Co.

www.eliteculture.com

ISBN 978-957-612-487-7

前言

遠東生活華語教材系列，是配合光碟與書面一同發行而設計的。本教材提供教師在課室授課及學生自學的材料。

本教材宗旨是以真實生活語料為主，讓學生學習有意義的華語文，在聽、說、讀、寫四項語文能力上，都能達到與人溝通的目的。因此在語音、語法、語意與語用上，均考慮到學生語言習得的因素，加強認知能力的練習，以期達到以華語文為第二語言學習的目的。

全教材一套三冊，每冊包括課本、學生作業本（第一冊另加編習字本）、教師手冊、CD等附件。

每冊共十二課，第二冊分為十二單元共二十四課。每課項目分為本課學習目標（包括生詞與語法要點）、課文、生詞、注釋、文法、聽力練習、綜合練習、實用語料等。

第一冊內容著重在日常實用口語會話的表達，採用真實的語料與基本功能語法，期使學生能用基本華語達到交際的目的。全冊漢字共457個，新詞共609個，語法要點118條。

第二冊內容漸進到現代生活資訊方面的語料，增加書面語，進一步介紹書面語中的文法結構。語用上使學生熟識現代各地通用的社會語言。全冊漢字共569個，新詞1149個，語法要點179條。

第三冊內容由目前流行的經濟話題漸進至新聞、歷史文化等層面，使學生能了解更多中國人的思想方式與文化內涵。全冊漢字共435個，新詞共912個，語法要點171條。

全書語音系統是用漢語拼音為注音符號，語法解釋方式是參照耶魯大學華語教材語法詞類系統，與中國呂叔湘著作〈現代漢語八百詞〉等為依據。

本教材在編輯時為了使內容資料豐富，提供給學生更多的語料，篇幅較長，在配合上課時數的前題下，教師可以自由選用，以利教學。

本教材由台灣師大國語教學中心劉咪咪、潘蓮丹、陳惠玲、林千惠、吳彰英、蔡顏秀、鄭嘉琿、王文娟、陳瑩漣等九位老師共同編寫。由羅凱（Frank Kenneth Ross II）與金包伯（Robert Kinney）兩位美籍人士翻譯為英文。全書經過美國威廉大學東方語文學系主任顧百里博士（Dr. Cornelius C. Kubler），台灣師範大學華語文研究所所長鄧守信博士審查指正，於此一併致謝。敬希華語文教學界各位先進給予指教。

葉德明

一九九九年九月

編輯大意

一、目標

本教材承接第一冊之理念，力求真實、自然與實用，以符合一切講究迅速有效的新世代學生的需要。希望學生學會用中文做某些生活中必需的事情，聽、說、讀、寫四種技能同時發展，為本書的理想。本教材分十二單元，共二十四課，除了課本以外，還包括學生作業本、教師手冊。老師可依照學校規定課時、學生學習情形採用本書內容，也就是說本書各部份設計是為幫助學生學習，並不一定每個部份老師都要採用。課本最後有生詞索引及語法點索引。

二、每課內容結構

1. 對話

每單元一個主題，前六單元每課有兩段簡單自然而且實用的對話。在該情境中國人會說什麼，需要哪些辭彙，是主要考慮。第七單元開始，第一部份為對話，第二部份為書面資料，開始學習書面語。介紹生活中很容易見到的書面資料，如通知單、卡片、信件等。因為對學生 meaningful 的內容，也就是學生覺得有用的，學生才有興趣學，也才容易學會，所以建議老師可以依照學生的需要增減書中內容。另有簡體字課文。

2. 生詞

有拼音、詞類、英文意思，還有用學過的詞做的例句，例句之下有英文翻譯。前面有 * 號的生詞不在對話中，但與對話中的生詞相關。且介紹較多合詞。例：「旅遊平安保險」下面除了「旅遊」、「平安」、「保險」，還介紹了「旅客」跟「遊客」以備學生需要，而且「客」不是新字，不會增加學習負擔。

3. 注釋

針對對話中提到的事情或語言加以說明。

4. 文法

基本做法同第一冊。先用對話中的句子引出句型，再加上中英文的句型用法說明。說明之後有練習，前六單元為了強調學生掌握發揮溝通技能 (communicative) 這些練習都是對話式的。但第七單元以後第二段書面語辭彙的練習則考慮學生讀書面語的機會比寫用書面語的機會多，練習方式有所不同。每個 drill 下面的 Additional vocabulary 是生詞表內沒有，但做練習可能需要的詞，在這個階段學生只要會說就可以了，不必會寫，所以拼音在漢字前面。

有的時候配合一個活動加強學生使用該句型的能力。（語法說明多參考呂叔湘主編之《現代漢語八百詞》、劉月華、潘文娛、顧韡等所編之《實用現代漢語語法》及范慧貞、劉咪咪、蕭美美等所編之《實用視聽華語二》）

5. 聽力練習

希望學生注意語境 context，從上下文跟情況來了解內容。但自第七單元起，第二部份的聽力練習多為模擬公共場所的廣播，因為其中多有書面語詞彙，宜加以學習。

6. 練習

有各種聽說的活動，包括遊戲、問卷調查、角色扮演等。老師和學生可以選擇需要的部分來做。有些活動參考 Penny Ur 所著 *Grammar Practice Activities*。

7. 短文

以本課生詞用學生可能接觸的真實體裁（信件、日記等）編寫而成，作為閱讀練習。短文後有閱讀理解問答。

8. 猜猜猜

目的是讓學生有機會了解中文辭彙組成的特色，培養學生對中文的語感。

9. Authentic Material

提供學生一些跟課文內容有關的真實生活可能接觸到的文字資料，（有些資料可能跟坊間所看到的有點出入，有的細節被省略了，不完全是真實的。）希望學生能逐漸培養閱讀中文資料的方法和能力。

10. 課文翻譯

將課文翻成英文，學生除了了解課文內容，也可比較英文中文說法的不同。

三、學生作業本

包括聽力練習（發音、聲調、聽寫、句子理解、對話理解）、寫字、辨字、改錯、連連看、選擇、克漏字 cloze、翻譯、尋詞、讀真實資料回答問題、寫有關主題之短文。

四、教師手冊

包括教學要點、課室活動說明、課本內練習解答、聽力練習內容及解答，後半部為學生作業本解答。

Foreword

I. Purpose

In accordance with the philosophy of teaching and learning of the Far East Everyday Chinese Book I, the Book II maintains its authenticity and practicality to meet the needs of efficiency-demanding learners. Our goal is to provide materials, with 12 units, to facilitate the learners to improve their communicative skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing in modern standard Chinese in daily life.

The Far East Everyday Chinese Book II consist of a textbook, a student workbook, a teacher's manual, and CD.

II. Structure

1. Dialogues: The dialogues are simple and practical. Every unit has a topic. There are two dialogues in the first 6 units, and in order to introduce written language, some written-styled materials are included along with one dialogue from Unit 7. These written form materials, including notices, greeting cards, and letters, are commonly encountered in daily life. Since the material is meaningful, it will promote learning. The texts are also provided with simplified-character version.
2. Vocabulary: Each vocabulary provides pronunciation, identification of parts of speech, and meaning with examples of usage, followed by an English translation. An “*” precedes each new word that does not appear in the dialogue, but is related to the vocabulary in the dialogue. More compound words are introduced.
3. Notes: Notes explain special uses of expressions and matters mentioned in the dialogues.
4. Grammar: The grammar section explains the correct use of sentence patterns drawn from the dialogues both in Chinese and English. In order to reinforce the communicative skills of the learners, the exercises after each grammar explanation are small dialogues. However, since the learners may have less opportunity to write in Chinese written language, the grammar exercise after each written form material from Unit 7 is designed in a different way. Some drills are followed by an additional vocabulary used only in the drills. Students need only possess speaking ability for this section, as writ-

ing is not required, so pinyin is placed before the characters. Some activities are used to strengthen students' language skills.

5. Aural Comprehension Drill: The section is designed to enable students to understand meanings through the context. Starting with Unit 7, most of the second listening section simulates broadcasts in public places, which contains words in written language.
6. Variety Exercises: This section includes listening and speaking activities, such as games, surveys, and role-playing. The teacher and students can choose the activities that are most suitable. *Grammar Practice Activities* by Penny Ur is sometimes used as reference.
7. Reading Comprehension: This section is composed of the vocabulary used in the text, and in the form of realistic documents, such as letters and diaries. It is followed by questions based on the narrative.
8. Try to Guess: This section is designed to help students understand the Chinese word combinations and acquire a good sense of the Chinese language.
9. Authentic Material: This section provides written materials related to the text so as to help students understand commonly encountered information in paper. (Some unimportant details may be omitted.) The purpose is to gradually build up students' ability and strategies in reading Chinese materials.
10. Translation of the Texts: An English translation of the texts is provided to help students better understand the texts as well as how certain phrases are translated into English.

III. Student Workbook

The workbook includes exercises for listening(pronunciation, tones, dictation, sentence comprehension, and dialogue comprehension), character writing, character distinction, character correction, matching, multiple choices, cloze, translation, choosing the correct phrases, answering questions after reading authentic materials, and writing short essays.

IV. Teacher's Manual

The Teacher's Manual includes important teaching points, suggestions for classroom activities, exercise answer key the text of each aural Comprehension Drill and answers to the questions as well as the Student's workbook answer key.

CONTENTS

目 錄

[Part A]

Unit 1	看電視	Watching Television	1
Lesson 1	租錄影帶	Renting Video Tapes	2
Lesson 2	你不要轉台	Don't Switch the Channel	13
Unit 2	我們旅行去	Let's Go Traveling	30
Lesson 3	有沒有去歐洲的旅行團？	Are There Tour Groups Going to Europe?	31
Lesson 4	那個地方怎麼樣？	What Do You Know about That Place?	45
Unit 3	休閒活動	Leisure Activities	63
Lesson 5	你週末都做些什麼？	What Do You Do on the Weekends?	64
Lesson 6	露營	Camping	79
Unit 4	夜生活	Night Life	96
Lesson 7	逛夜市	Taking a Stroll in a Night Market	97
Lesson 8	到酒館坐坐	Sitting in a Pub	112
Unit 5	文化與藝術	Culture and Art	131
Lesson 9	我們去喝茶吧	Let's Go Have Some Tea	132
Lesson 10	去看表演	Going to See a Performance	145

Unit 6	找工作	Job Hunting	164
Lesson 11	找工作嗎？	Looking for a Job?	165
Lesson 12	應徵工作	Responding to a Job Offer	179

Unit 7	別忘了繳費	Don't Forget to Pay	196
Lesson 13	可以開戶轉帳	You Can Open a Bank Account and Transfer Funds	197
Lesson 14	繳費通知	Notice for Payment	211

[Part B]

Unit 8	你病了嗎？	Are You Ill?	231
Lesson 15	小心感冒	Be Careful or You Will Catch a Cold	232
Lesson 16	出車禍了	Had a Car Accident	248

Unit 9	你怎麼了？	What's the Matter?	267
Lesson 17	好癢啊！	It's So Scratchy!	268
Lesson 18	探病	To the Hospital to Visit the Sick	285

Unit 10	請客	Hosting a Party	305
Lesson 19	參加慶生會	Attending a Birthday Party	306
Lesson 20	好友的婚禮	My Best Friend's Wedding	323

Unit 11	心情不好 Feeling Blue.....	343
Lesson 21	唉！考試沒考好 Alas! I Didn't Do Well on the Test	344
Lesson 22	寫情書 Writing a Love Letter.....	359
Unit 12	糟糕了，不好了！ Oh No! This Is Terrible!.....	380
Lesson 23	遭小偷了 Burglarized.....	381
Lesson 24	一則火災的廣播新聞 A News Broadcast about a Fire.....	396
Index I	Vocabulary	
	生詞索引	416
Index II	Grammar	
	文法索引	449
Appendix I	Translation of the Texts	
	課文翻譯	454
Appendix II	Abbreviations List	
	詞類略語表	472

第一單元 看電視

Unit 1 Watching Television

Key Study Points

Lesson 1: renting a video tape / asking about the price / renting regulations / types of tapes / talking about a gradual change / mild change of tone / giving limitations and advice (suggestions)

Lesson 2: arguing about which television program to watch (conflict) / talking about various television programs / comparing two things / talking about past experience / questioning / complaining / criticizing someone's attitude / conceding / reminding

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 1

錄影帶，週末，票，越來越，聽說，
店，包你好看，帶子，就，片子，
過，卷，最好，申請，會員卡，
元，不過，以內，還，借，扣，
再說，動作片，功夫片，對，
興趣，文藝愛情，限制級，
喜劇，悲劇，部

越來越+SV
V 過
最好
不過
Nu-M 以內
對……有/沒興趣

Lesson 2

轉台，比賽，比，籃球賽，比完，
廣告，卡通影片，新聞，隊，贏，
輸，怎麼，那麼，這麼，
別人，節目，以前，以後，
遙控器，意思，兇，叫，
氣象預報，聽見，看見，別，又，
連續劇，電視長片，關，開，生氣

NP₁/VP₁ 比 NP₂/VP₂ + SV
V 完(看完，比完)
怎麼(how come)
那麼/這麼+SV
什麼(QW)都……
聽見(看見)
別又

第一課 租錄影帶

Lesson 1 Renting Video Tapes

妹妹：姊¹，這個週末一起去看電影，怎麼樣？
 \、 • zhōumò \、 \、 \、 \、 \、 \、 • \、

姊姊：現在電影票 越來越 貴。我們租錄影帶 在家看吧²。

妹妹：好啊。聽說路口新開了一家錄影帶出租店，好像叫
Tīngshuō \、\ — — • \、— \、√ \、— — diàn √ \、\
「包你好看」。要不要去看看他們有什麼帶子？
Bāo Nǐ Hǎokàn \、／ \、\、\、• — • √ ／ • dài·zi

姊姊：好啊。我們現在就去看看。走吧²。



(在錄影帶出租店)

店員：兩位要租什麼片子？你們來過沒有？
 v \ \ - / • piàn-zi v • lái-guò / v

妹妹：沒來過。租一卷帶子多少錢？
 ／ ／ 、 — 、 juǎn dài·zi — √ ／

店員：你最好申請會員卡。會員每人一千元，可租十五

卷帶子³。如果不是會員，每卷八十塊，押金一百塊。

姊姊：你們有沒有新一點的片子？

店員：有啊，不過三天以內一定要還⁴。不還的話，會員要扣錢，非會員就扣押金⁵。

妹妹：我們先看看你們有什麼再說。

（兩人走開，去看錄影帶）

姊姊：他們這裡有很多動作片、功夫片。

妹妹：我對功夫片沒興趣，我喜歡看文藝愛情片。

啊，這裡有一些限制級的電影⁶。

姊姊：限制級的你最好不要看。我們看喜劇吧²。

妹妹：這部愛情片不錯。我們先租這部，下次再看喜劇。

Vocabulary (The words with * in the front are not used in the dialogue.)

1. 錄影帶 lùyǐngdài

(錄像帶 lùxiàngdài)

N: video cassette (M: juǎn 卷 roll、支)

錄 lù

V: to record; to tape

今天我不能去上課。老師說的話，你能不能幫我錄一下？

I cannot go to class today. Can you record what the teacher says for me?

錄影 lùyǐng

VO: to videotape

我二十歲生日的時候，請了很多朋友來。我男朋友特別來錄影。

On my 20th birthday I invited many friends over. My boyfriend came especially to videotape it.

2. 週末 zhōumò

N: weekend (M: 個) (also written as 周末)

上個週末我跟朋友去打球了。

Last weekend I went to play in a ball game with my friend.

3. 票 piào

N: ticket (M: 張)

一張電影票多少錢？

How much is one movie ticket?

4. 越來越 yuèlāiyuè

Adv: increasingly; more and more

我已經學到第二本書了，我知道的中國字越來越多了。

I've already reached the second book, I now know more and more Chinese characters.

5. 聽說 tīngshuō

V: to hear; to have heard

我聽說大千百貨公司打八折，你要不要去看看？

I heard that the Daqian Department Store has a 20% off sale. Do you want to have a look there?

6. 店 diàn

N: store; shop (M: 家、個)

7. 包你好看 Bāo Nǐ Hǎokàn

Proper N: name of a video rental store

包 bāo

V/Proper N: to guarantee; to wrap/family name

1) 我們餐廳的麻婆豆腐包辣，不辣不要錢。

2) 包先生包太太都是老師，一個教英文，一個教日文。

1) Our restaurant's Mapo Tofu is guaranteed to be hot. If it's not hot, it's free.

2) Mr. and Mrs. Bao are both teachers, one teaches English, and the other teaches Japanese.

8. 帶子 dài·zi

N: tape cassette (M: juǎn 卷 roll、支)

9. 就 jiù

Adv: right away, then

我還有一點事。你們先走，我馬上就來。

I still have a little something to do. You all go first, and I will be there right away.



10. 片子 piàn·zi/piān·zi N: movie; film (M: 部、個)

片 piàn M: piece, for things that are sliced or flat

11. 過 guò P: (used after a verb indicating past experience)

我以前沒吃過宮保雞丁，不知道宮保雞丁是辣的。

I have not had Gong Bao chicken before and did not know that it is spicy.

12. 卷 juǎn M: for videotapes

13. 最好 zuìhǎo MA: It's best that...; had better

1) 旅行的時候，最好別帶太多現金，有信用卡就夠了。

2) 你最好十一點以前回家，因為十一點以後沒有公車。

1) When traveling, it's best not to take too much cash with you. A credit card is enough.

2) You had better come home before 11:00 because there are no busses after 11:00.

14. 申請 shēnqǐng V: to apply

我想去美國念大學。你看我可以申請哪個大學？

I want to go to the USA to attend college. Which university do you think I can apply for?

15. 會員卡 huìyuán kǎ N: membership card (M: 張)

會員 huìyuán N: club member (M: 位、個)

店員 diànyuán N: clerk, shop attendant (M: 位、個)

16. 元 yuán M: for money; same meaning as 塊 but more formal

17. 不過 búguò Conj: however

王先生沒學過中文，不過他太太是中國人。他應該會說一點吧？

Mr. Wang has not studied Chinese. However, his wife is Chinese, so I suppose he should be able to speak a little bit Chinese.

18. 以內 yǐnèi Adv: within; inside

我昨天去看了一個房子，房東要我三天以內告訴他要不要租。

I went to see a house yesterday, the landlord wanted me to tell him if I would like to rent it within three days.

19. 還 huán V: to return (something); to give back

1) 我那本書你已經看了一個月了，什麼時候還我？

2) 我明天沒有錢付房租，你把我的錢還給我吧。

1) You have already been reading that book of mine for a month. When will you return it to me?

2) I do not have money to pay the rent tomorrow. Please return my money (the money I lent you).

20. 借 jiè V: to borrow; to lend

- 1) 我忘了帶筆。你的筆借我，好不好？
 - 2) 我把那本書借給小張了，他還沒還我呢。
 - 3) 我想跟你借三本書，可以嗎？
- 1) I forgot to bring a pen. Lend me your pen, OK?
 - 2) I lent that book to Little Zhang. He still has not returned it to me.
 - 3) I'd like to borrow three books from you. Is it okay?

21. 扣 kòu V: to deduct

如果你不來上班，公司會扣錢。

If you do not come to work, the company will deduct your pay.

22. 再說 zài shuō Adv-V: to talk about or consider at a later time

我們先去打球。晚上要做什麼，等一下再說。

Let's go play ball first. Later we will talk about what to do tonight.

23. 動作片 dòngzuòpiàn N: action movie (M: 部)

動作 dòngzuò N: action; movement (M: 個)

- 1) 媽媽的動作很快，再十分鐘就可以吃飯了。
 - 2) 打球的時候小王的動作太大，打到他右邊的人。
- 1) Mother cooks very quickly. We can eat in another ten minutes.
 - 2) When playing ball, Little Wang's movement is too big. He hit the person to the right of him.

動 dòng V: to move

- 1) 那個壞人說：「別動！把你的錢給我。」
 - 2) 我的信用卡到哪裡去了？誰動了我的東西？
- 1) That criminal said, "Don't move! Give me your money."
 - 2) Where is my credit card? Who moved my things?

24. 功夫片 gōngfūpiàn N: kung fu/martial arts movie (M: 部)

功夫 gōngfū N: kung fu; martial arts (M: 門)

我認識一個會中國功夫的人。他的功夫很好，一個人可以打十個人。

I know a person who knows Chinese kung fu. His martial skill is really good. He can fight ten people on his own.

25. 對 duì CV: to; towards

小張對人很客氣，常常說：請、謝謝、對不起。

Little Zhang is very polite to people. He often says: please, thank you, and excuse me.

26. 興趣 xìngqù N: interest

我對電腦很有興趣。我想知道電腦可以做哪些事。

I am very much interested in computers. I want to know what computers can do.

27. 文藝愛情片 wényì àiqíngpiàn N: artistic love story movie (M: 部、個)

愛情 àiqíng N: love (between a couple)

張先生對你很好，可是你覺得這是愛情嗎？

Mr. Zhang is very good to you, but do you think this is love?

28. 限制級 xiànzì jí N: restricted rating

這是限制級電影，還不到十八歲的人不可以看。

This is a restricted movie. Those under 18 years old cannot watch it.

限制 xiànzì V/N: to restrict /restriction (M: xiàng 項 item)

1) 爸爸限制我看電視的時間。每天只能看兩個小時。

2) 我現在寫中文信有很多限制，因為不會的字太多。

1) Dad limited my television watching time. Every day I can watch only two hours.

2) The Chinese letters I write now are very limited because there are many characters that I do not know.

29. 喜劇 xǐjù N: comedy (M: chū 齣 set、部)

*30. 悲劇 bēijù N: tragedy (M: chū 齣 set、部)

31. 部 bù M: for movies, machines, etc.

Grammar

1. 現在電影票越來越貴。 Tickets for movies are more and more expensive now.

Explanation: “越來越……” is used to describe the level of the subject's action is increased with time. An SV or state verb +O such as “to like me,” “to love him,” “to like to eat Chinese food,” etc., can follow the “越來越”.

1) 現在已經十二月了，天氣 _____ 了。

2) 我一定得搬家了，因為 _____，沒有辦法再住在這裡了。

3) 我上次打電話給小王，我們還能說兩分鐘話。現在我打電話找他，都不接。我想他 _____ 了。

4) 我姊姊剛買電腦的時候，一點都不懂，可是現在會用電腦做很多事。她 _____ 了。

越來越懂電腦
家裡的人越來越多

房租越來越貴
越來越冷

越來越不喜歡我
越來越愛玩電腦

2. 你們來過沒有？ Have you been here before?

Explanation: The “V 過” pattern indicates previous experience. A noun explaining the type of action described may follow “過”. “沒(有)+V 過” may be used to express no previous experience. A question can be stated as S + V 過(O)沒有？ or S + V 過(O)嗎？

a) Q: 你 去過日本 沒有？ A: 去過。 or 沒去過。

你哥哥
張小姐
陳先生
你們

學過中文
吃過法國菜
看過中國電影
想過這個問題

嗎？
沒有？

學過
吃過
看過
想過

沒學過
沒吃過
沒看過
沒想過

b)

王：你會用筷子嗎？要不要請服務生給你刀子、叉子？

李：不必。我在美國已經 _____。

王：下星期我要到上海去。不知道那裡天氣怎麼樣？

李：小林 _____。你可以問他。

王：你喜歡小謝，可以請她去看電影啊。

李：我 _____，不知道怎麼跟她說。

王：租一卷錄影帶要多少錢？

李：我不知道，我 _____。

學過怎麼用筷子
沒跟她說過話

去過上海
沒租過錄影帶

去過很多次
沒用過筷子

沒交過女朋友

3. ◎你最好申請會員卡。 It's best that you apply for a membership card.

◎限制級的你最好不要看。 You better not watch restricted movies.

Explanation: The moveable adverb “最好” indicates the best choice or alternative. It reflects the speaker's suggestion, advice, hope, or conclusion and can be used with reference to oneself or to others.

王：我今天應該給我媽媽打個電話。

李：你 _____，長途電話十二點以後打折。

王：我可以再吃一碗嗎？

李：晚飯 _____。

王：我不好意思問她，請你幫我，行不行？

李：這是你自己的事，你_____。

王：明天我們要去爬山，不知道天氣怎麼樣？

李：聽說會下雨，我們_____。

最好不要吃得太飽
最好等一下再打

最好下星期再去
最好自己跟她說

4. 不過三天以內一定要還。 However, it must be returned within three days.

Explanation: “不過” is used to revise or supplement the previous statement. It is milder than “可是”, and mostly used in speech.

王：下個月我有十天不必工作。我們去外國旅行好不好？

李：去外國旅行很好，不過_____。

王：台灣大學很有名，你去過嗎？

李：去過，這所大學很有名，不過_____。

王：我們就租這個房子吧。

李：這個房子不錯，房租也不貴，不過_____。

王：你能不能幫我寄信？

李：我很想幫你，不過_____。

離學校遠了一點
我今天不去郵局

最少要點一千塊錢的菜
一定要多點兩個菜

太貴了 十天太長了
地方很小，學生也太多

5. 不過三天以內一定要還。 However, it must be returned within three days.

Explanation: “Nu-M 以內” indicates within the scope restricted by the Nu-M and not beyond this limit. Nu-M may refer to time, distance or other measurable nouns, e.g., three days, sixty kilometers, one hundred dollars, twenty kilograms, etc.

王：我先去買別的東西，過一會兒再來。

李：請你_____回來。

王：這封航空信要貼幾塊錢的郵票？

李：_____十五塊錢。你給我十五塊。

王：這附近有沒有銀行？

李：有很多。_____就有三家。

王：林老師說這封中文信要寫多長？

李：不必太長。_____就可以了。

一個小時以內

一千塊以內

一百公尺以內

三百字以內

二十公克以內

6. 我對功夫片沒興趣。 I am not interested in kung fu movies.

Explanation: The preposition “對” is used to introduce the object of an action or condition. When indicating interests in some one or something, the person or thing must be placed before “有興趣” and after the preposition “對”, which is used to introduce this person or thing. The negative is “對……沒(有)興趣”.

a)

王：小張這個人怎麼樣？

李：他_____很客氣。

王：你為什麼要搬家？

李：房東_____不好。

王：聽說小陳在幫你找房子。

李：是啊。可是我剛剛決定不搬了。我覺得_____真不好意思。

b)

王：現在不會用電腦的人很難找工作。你怎麼不學呢？

李：沒辦法。我_____。

王：你看，那個服務生真漂亮。

李：欸，你是不是_____？你可以請她看電影啊。

太太：好久沒逛街了。這個週末去百貨公司逛逛，怎麼樣？

先生：你知道，我_____。請你妹妹跟你去，行不行？

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, and answer the questions below.

- () 你想他們在哪裡說話？
 a. 家裡 b. 錄影帶出租店 c. 電影院
- () 這位先生喜歡看什麼樣的電影？
 a. 功夫片 b. 文藝愛情片 c. 動作片
- () 最後他們看的是什麼樣的電影？
 a. 功夫片 b. 文藝愛情片 c. 動作片

Notes

1. “姊” is short for “姊姊”. People usually drop the second syllable in everyday conversation when addressing someone who is very close, e.g. “媽” for “媽媽”, “爸” for “爸爸”, and “哥” for “哥哥”.
2. “我們租錄影帶在家看吧” means “Let's rent videotapes and watch them at home.” “走吧” means “Let's go.” “我們看喜劇吧” means “Let's watch a comedy.” The “吧” in these three sentences indicates suggestion.
3. “會員每人一千元，可租十五卷帶子。” means “One thousand (NT) dollars for each member, which allows one to rent fifteen tapes.” “元” is the formal term, often but not exclusively used in writing, for spoken “塊錢”. “可” is shortened from “可以”, which is normally used in speech. But here the speaker is talking about a regulation, as if he/she is reading it, that is why “元” and “可” are used. The measure word “卷” used for videotapes is a Taiwanese measure, therefore it is only spoken by the people in Taiwan. “帶子” can refer to a videotape, audio-tape or a belt. Its meaning depends on the context.
4. The character “還” can be pronounced as “hái” and “huán” with different meanings. “還 hái” meaning “still, yet” was introduced in the first book. “還 huán” means “to return something one has borrowed.” When a character has more than one pronunciation with different meanings, it is called “破音字 pòyīnzì”. Other examples are: 便 is pronounced as “biàn” in “方便” but as “pián” in “便宜”. 覺 is pronounced as “jué” in “覺得” but as “jiào” in “睡覺”.
5. “非會員就扣押金” means “(If he/she is) a non-member, then his/her deposit will be deducted.” When the character “非” is used in front of a noun, it means “un-”, “in-,” or “non-.”
6. “限制級的電影” refers to movies that are only for people over a certain age, which is 18 in Taiwan. In Taiwan, movies are graded in four ranks: 普遍級, 保護級, 輔導級, and 限制級. 普遍級 (pǔbiàn jí) is for everyone. 保護級 (bǎohù jí) is for viewers aged 6 and up. 輔導級 (fǔdǎo jí) is for people from 13 and up. Both 保護級 and 輔導級 require parental supervision.
7. In Taiwan, “片子” is usually pronounced as “piàn·zi”. In Mainland China, “piān·zi” means movie, and “piàn·zi” means name card which is 名片 in Taiwan.

〔简体课文〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

妹妹：姊，这个周末一起去看电影，怎么样？

姊姊：现在电影票越来越贵。我们租录影带在家看吧。

妹妹：好啊。听说路口新开了一家录影带出租店，好像叫「包你好看」。要不要去看看他们有什么带子？

姊姊：好啊。我们现在就去看看。走吧。

(在录影带出租店)

店员：两位要租什么片子？你们来过没有？

妹妹：没来过。租一卷带子多少钱？

店员：你最好申请会员卡。会员每人一千元，可租十五卷带子。如果不是会员，每卷八十块，押金一百块。

姊姊：你们有没有新一点的片子？

店员：有啊，不过三天以内一定要还。不还的话，会员要扣钱，非会员就扣押金。

妹妹：我们先看看你们有什么再说。

(两人走开，去看录影带)

姊姊：他们这里有很多动作片、功夫片。

妹妹：我对功夫片没兴趣，我喜欢看爱情文艺片。啊，这里有一些限制级的电影。

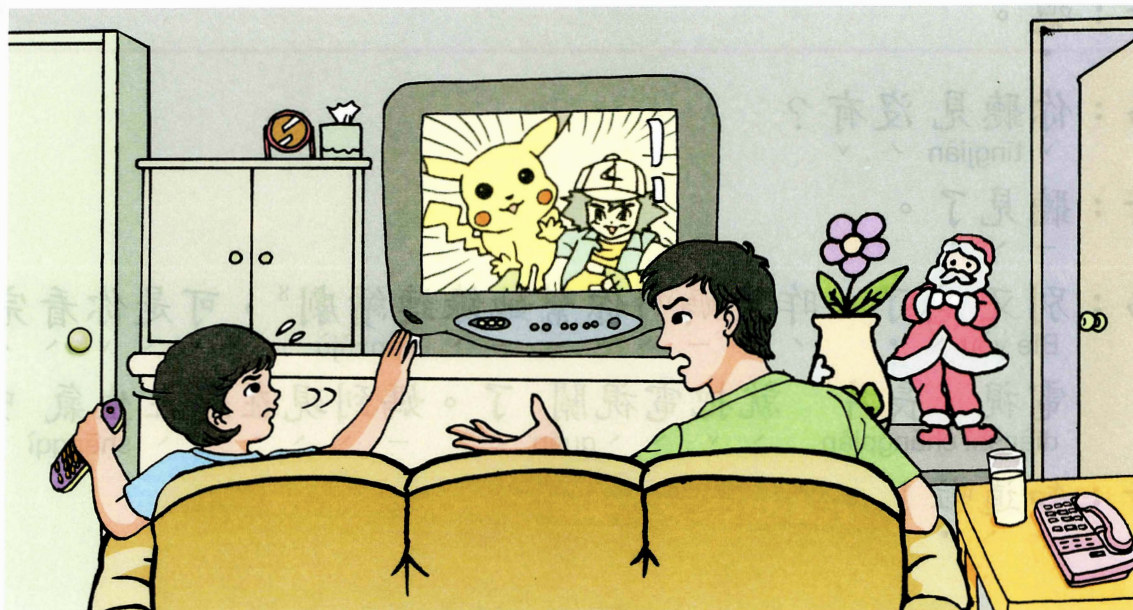
姊姊：限制级的你最好不要看。我们看喜剧吧。

妹妹：这部爱情片不错。我们先租这部，下次再看喜剧。

第二課 你不要轉台

Lesson 2 Don't Switch the Channel

2



哥哥：欸，比賽還沒完。你不要轉台¹。

弟弟：現在是廣告時間。我要看第三台的卡通²。

卡通影片 比籃球賽 好看多了。

哥哥：可是球賽還沒有比完啊！

弟弟：沒關係。等一下看新聞就知道哪一隊贏了。

哥哥：不行。我先來的³。你怎麼可以這樣？

弟弟：你看球賽，看了那麼久了⁴。別人什麼節目都不能看。

哥哥：這個卡通，我以前看過，一點也不好看。遙控器給我！⁵

弟弟：你什麼意思？這麼兇⁶！好吧，給你看球賽吧。⁷

球賽完了，你叫我。我要看新聞跟氣象預報。

明天我要去爬山。

2

哥哥：嗯。

弟弟：你聽見沒有？

哥哥：聽見了。

弟弟：別又忘了。昨天媽叫你幫她錄連續劇⁸，可是你看完
電視長片就把電視關了。媽到現在還在生氣呢。

哥哥：知道啦！

Vocabulary

1. 轉台 zhuǎn//tái VO: to switch the channel

請你轉到第三台，我要看電影。

Please turn to channel three. I want to watch the movie.

轉 zhuǎn V: to transfer; to convert; to relay

王先生要我把這封信轉給你。

Mr. Wang wants me to relay this letter to you.

台 tái M/N: M for TV companies, computers, etc./ channel; station

2. 比賽 bǐsài V/N: to compete/contest; race

1) 我們比賽，看誰走得快。

2) 今天的比賽真奇怪。來看的人都是女的，沒有男的。

1) Let's race to see who walks the quickest.

2) Today's contest was very strange. The ones who came to watch were all women. No man came.

3. 比 bǐ V: to compare

你比一比這兩件襯衫，哪一件好看。

Compare these two shirts, and decide which one is better looking.

4. 籃球賽 lánqiúsài N: basketball game (M: chǎng 場 performance)

籃球 lánqiú N: basketball (M: 個)

籃 lán M: basket

籃子 lán·zi N: basket (M: 個)

球賽 qiúsài N: ballgame (M: chǎng 場 performance)

你喜歡看哪種球賽？

What kind of ballgame do you like?

5. 比完 bǐwán RC: game over

昨天的球賽什麼時候比完的？九點還是九點半？

What time did the ball game finish yesterday? Nine o'clock or nine thirty?

完 wán RE: to be finished

每次打完球我就回家洗澡，洗完澡再吃飯。

Every time I finish playing ball I return home to take a bath. When I finish taking a bath I eat.

6. 廣告 guǎnggào N: commercial; advertisement (M: 個、zé 則 item)

我們公司最近在電視上做了一個很大的廣告，希望來買東西的人會多一點。

Our company recently made a big television commercial, hoping more people will come to buy our things.

7. 卡通影片 kǎtōng yǐngpiàn N: animated film (M: 部)

卡通 kǎtōng N: cartoon

我弟弟每天回家就開電視看卡通，常常忘了吃飯。

Everyday my little brother watches cartoons on TV when he comes home. He often forgets to eat.

8. 新聞 xīnwén N: news (M: tiáo 條 strip、zé 則 item)

今天的報上有一條我們學校的新聞。

Today's paper had some news about our school.

9. 隊 duì M: team, for contest teams

隊員 duìyuán N: team member (M: 位、個)

10. 贏 yíng V: to win

這次的比賽，小張打得最好，贏了一萬塊錢。

Little Zhang played the best in this game and won \$10,000.

*11. 輸 shū V: to lose

我們比賽。如果我輸了，我請你吃飯。

Let's race. If I lose, I will buy you a meal.

12. 怎麼 zěn·me QW: how come; how can it be

已經十二點了，你怎麼還不睡覺？

It's already 12:00. How come you haven't gone to sleep yet?

13. 那麼 nà·me Adv: so; to that degree; in that way

李：我下個月要去美國。

王：我還沒去過那麼遠的地方。

Li: I am going to the USA next month.

Wang: I have not yet gone to such a faraway place.

14. 這麼 zhè·me Adv: so; in this way; to this degree

中文這麼難，你還想學嗎？

Chinese is so difficult. Do you still want to study it?

15. 別人 biérén N: other people

別人說什麼沒關係，我喜歡就好了。

It does not matter what other people say. If I like it, that is good enough.

16. 節目 jiémù N: program (M: 個)

這個節目不好看，我們轉台吧。

This program is boring. Let's switch the channel.

17. 以前 yǐqián MA: before

我以前不會說中文，現在會說一點了。

Before, I could not speak Chinese, but now I can speak a little.

從前 cóngqián MA: a long time ago, before, formerly

*18. 以後 yǐhòu MA: after, later on, sometime in the future

你還小，不懂沒關係。以後你大了，就懂了。

You are still young, and it does not matter that you do not understand. When you are grown up, you will understand.

19. 遙控器 yáokòngqì N: a remote controller (M: 個)

遙控 yáokòng V: to control from a distance

這種車車門可以遙控。

The doors of this kind of car can be operated by remote control.

20. 意思 yì·si N: meaning (M: 個)

1) 你的意思是這件衣服太貴了，我不應該買？

2) 這個字有什麼意思？請你告訴我。

1) Do you mean that this piece of clothing is too expensive and that I should not buy it?

2) What does this character mean? Please tell me.

21. 兇 xiōng SV: to be fierce and mean

我的老師很兇。我們寫錯字，他就要我們寫一百次。我們都很怕他。

My teacher is really mean. If we miswrite a character, we have to write it a hundred times. We are all afraid of him.

22. 叫 jiào V: to call; to tell someone to do something

1) 你在這裡等一等。我叫你的時候，你再進來。

2) 你女朋友剛剛打電話來。她叫你回來以後給她回電。

1) You wait here. Come in when I call you.

2) Your girlfriend just called. She asked you to call her when you get back.

23. 氣象預報 qìxiàng yùbào N: weather forecast (M: xiàng 項 item)

氣象預報說今天會下雨。我們不要出去吧。

The weather forecast said it would rain today. Let's not go out.

報告 bàogào V/N: to announce; to report/report (M: fèn 份 copy、piān 篇)

1) 新聞已經報告完了，我不看了。你要看球賽，你看吧。

2) 張老師說趙奇的報告寫得很好。

1) The news is already over. I am not watching. If you want to watch the ball game, go ahead and watch.

2) Teacher Zhang said that Zhao Qi's report was written very well.

24. 聽見 tīngjiàn RC: to perceive from hearing, to hear

我昨天在街上叫你，叫了好幾次，你都沒聽見。

I called you on the street yesterday for many times, but you did not hear me at all.

*25. 看見 kànjiàn RC: to perceive from seeing, to see

你看見我的書了沒有？我忘了放在哪裡了。

Have you seen my book? I forgot where I put it.

26. 別 bié Adv: don't (imperatively)

你別給他錢。他會拿去買酒喝。

Do not give him money. He will take it and go buy liquor.

27. 又 yòu Adv: again

你的電腦，我昨天給你弄好了，怎麼今天又壞了？

I fixed your computer yesterday. How can it be broken again today?

28. 連續劇 liánxùjù N: television series that airs every week-day (M: chū 齣 set、部)

連續 liánxù Adv: successive; continuous

你已經連續看了兩個小時的書了，都沒有站起來走一走，不太好吧？

You have continuously been reading that book for two hours already without getting up to walk around. Don't you think that's not very good?

29. 電視長片 diànshì chángpiàn N: TV movie (M: 部)

昨天的電視長片是一部日本電影，你看了沒有？

Yesterday's television feature was a movie from Japan. Did you see it?

30. 關 guān V: to close; to turn off

你出去的時候，別忘了關燈、關門。

When you leave, do not forget to turn off the lights and close the door.

*31. 開 kāi V: to open; to turn on

電腦是誰開的？怎麼沒有人在用？

Who turned on the computer? How come no one is using it?

32. 生氣 shēng/qì SV/VO: to be angry

1) 哥哥很生氣，因為弟弟把他的電腦弄壞了。

2) 你在生誰的氣？為什麼不說話？

1) Big brother is really mad because little brother broke his computer.

2) Whom are you mad at? Why don't you say something?

氣 qì SV/V: to be angry/ to provoke; to irritate

1) 小張說我很兇，我很氣，以後都不要跟他說話了。

2) 你別氣我了。你知道我不喜歡吃糖，你還買糖給我！

1) Little Zhang said I am very mean. It really makes me mad, and I do not want to talk with him anymore in the future.

2) Don't provoke me. You know I do not like to eat candy, yet you still buy me it.

Grammar

1. 卡通影片比球賽好看多了。 The cartoon is much better than the ballgame.

Explanation: The “NP₁/VP₁ 比 NP₂/VP₂+ SV” sentence pattern is used when comparing two things. Using NP₂/VP₂ as a standard, SV is the result of the comparison, for example 高 for height, 大 for size, 熱 for temperature, etc. A phrase used to indicate the level of the difference of the items compared follows the SV. The most often used phrases are: 得多, 多了, 一點, 很多, and Nu-M(-N).

王：今天真冷，還下雨。氣象預報說明天天氣怎麼樣？

李：_____，也不下雨。

王：說中國話不難，寫中國字也不難吧？

李：誰說的？_____。

王：這兩件襯衫都很好看。你要買哪件？

李：_____。我買這件。

王：你家遠，還是我家遠？遠多少？

李：我家遠，_____。

寫中國字比說中國話難得多
我家比你家遠兩公里

這件比那件漂亮多了
明天比今天好一點

2. ①球賽還沒有比完啊！The ballgame isn't over yet!

①你看完綜藝節目就關電視了。

You turned off the television when you finished watching the variety show.

Explanation: “比完” and “看完” are resultative verb compounds, with the ending “完” indicating the conclusion or completion of something. Previously studied words which can be used with “完” include: 搬, 打, 教, 賣, 收, 說, 算, 填, 聽, 洗, 寫, 學, 做.

王：那本書，你什麼時候還我？

李：我上個星期就_____，可是忘了還你。真對不起。

王：小張幾點鐘到我們家來？

李：她說她要去打球，_____再來。

王：我要買卡通影片「小美人魚」。你們還有沒有？

李：對不起，已經_____。你兩天以後再來看看。

王：李太太，等一下要不要跟我們一起去看電影？

李：我很想去，可是衣服_____，大概不能跟你們去。

打完球

賣完了

看完了

沒洗完

3. 你怎麼可以這樣？How can you act like this?

Explanation: When “怎麼” is used to inquire about the cause or reason, it can be followed by an adverb, auxiliary verb, verb, or adjective to mean “why?”, in a surprised mood. The subject can be placed before or after “怎麼”, but the meaning would

be different. When the subject follows “怎麼”, it indicates that the speaker questions why the subject has done this action or is in this situation (not some other action or situation). For example: “你怎麼會喜歡他? How can you like him?”, which means “How strange, for what reason do you like him?”, “Why do you like him and not dislike him?”, or “Why do you like him, but do not like the other person?”, whereas “怎麼你會喜歡他? How come you like him?” would also mean “Why do you - - not someone else - - like him?”. The meaning depends on the context.

王：你再教我一次怎麼寫這個字，好不好？

李：我教了你十幾次了，_____？

王：明天不上班，你要做什麼？

李：明天真的不上班嗎？_____？

王：這是我做的宮保雞丁。你吃吃看。

李：咦？_____？宮保雞丁不是很辣嗎？

王：現在別跟她說話。她不太高興。

李：_____？是不是跟男朋友 chǎojià (吵架) 了？

怎麼你還不會呢
怎麼不辣

怎麼你們都知道，我不知道
她怎麼不太高興

怎麼沒人告訴我
你怎麼可以看別人的信

Additional Vocabulary

chǎojià (吵架): to argue

4. ④看了那麼久了。 You have been watching so long.

④你什麼意思？這麼兇！ What do you mean? You are so mean!

Explanation: In the “那麼/這麼+SV” pattern the “那麼” or “這麼” modifies the following SV to show that the level or degree is high. There is a little exaggeration in the tone, so that the language is made more vivid. If the speaker feels the subject is far away, “那麼” is used, whereas “這麼” is used when the speaker feels the subject is near. Besides SV, some state verbs that indicate mental activities, such as 喜歡 and 愛, can also be used in this pattern.

王：我們已經等了一個小時了。李紅怎麼還沒回來？

李：是啊，我們_____，她大概不會回來了。我們走吧。

王：已經下班了，你怎麼還在這裡？

李：工作_____，沒做完，不能走。

王：剛剛我們看的那件襯衫顏色很好看，樣子也不錯，就是貴了一點。

李：Jià(價)錢貴了一點，不過你_____，你就買了吧。

王：昨天我跟老闆說話的時候，我的話還沒說完，他就叫我出去。

李：真的？他怎麼_____？

這麼喜歡

這麼生氣

這麼多

等了這麼久了

Additional Vocabulary

jià(價)錢: price

5. 別人什麼都不能看。 Others can't watch anything.

Explanation: In the “QW(-N) -都/也……” sentence pattern the QW is not used as an question word, instead, it is used to show inclusiveness. If the modified noun follows it, then “都” or “也” follows to connect the elements of the sentence. This pattern indicates that within the mentioned range everything is the same, without exceptions.

王：這個週末你要去哪裡？

李：我_____，只想在家睡覺。

王：你怎麼知道那家餐廳的菜很好吃？

李：那家餐廳很有名，_____。

王：我什麼時候去你家比較方便？

李：我這個週末都在家。_____。

王：應該說「我 hàn(和)你」，還是「我 hé(和)你」？

李：兩個都對，_____。

先生：太太，我想帶個朋友回家吃飯，可以嗎？

太太：不行。今天沒買菜，家裡_____。

誰都知道

我對誰都很客氣

你什麼時候都可以來

怎麼說都可以

什麼菜都沒有

哪兒也不想去

6. 聽見沒有？ Did you hear me?

Explanation: “聽見” is a resultative verb compound. “見” is a resultative compound ending often combined with the actions “聽” and “看”. “聽見” and “看見” are the result of the action, indicating the subject has perceived the information via the action of “聽” or “看”. In Taiwan and southern China, “到” is often used instead of “見”, e.g. “看到”, “聽到”.

孩子：媽，我放在桌上的錢，你看見了沒有？

媽媽：_____。我幫你收起來了。

王：我在跟你說話。你怎麼一jù(句)話都不說？

李：我_____，可是不知道應該說什麼。

王：小林最近怎麼樣？

李：不知道。我很久_____。

王：我昨天晚上十點給你打電話，怎麼沒有人接？

李：那時候我們在看電視，大概_____。

聽見你說的話了 沒看見他了 看見了 沒聽見

Additional Vocabulary

jù(句): measure word for sentences

7. 別又忘了。 Don't forget again.

Explanation: a)“別” means “don’t.” It is placed at the front of a sentence to indicate dissuasion or prohibition and can be followed by a verb or a Stative Verb. b) “又” indicates an action repeats or occurs in succession, moreover, this action has normally already occurred. (“再” indicates the actions will repeat in the future). c) “別” and “又” together indicate that the speaker speculates the other party may repeat some action in the future, but the speaker does not hope so.

a) 別 + V/ SV

兒子：我出去一下，一會兒就回來。

媽媽：已經不早了，_____。

王：Zhāngláng(蟑螂)，蟑螂！那裡有蟑螂！

李：_____！我來打。

王：你看這個怎麼樣？

李：太貴了。_____。

王：謝謝你帶我看了這麼多房子。

李：_____，我們是老朋友啊！

別怕 別買了 別客氣 別太晚回來

Additional Vocabulary

zhāngláng(蟑螂): cockroach

b) 又 + VP

王：小李，來看球賽。美國隊跟日本隊都打得不錯。

李：(從房間裡出來)你昨天看，今天_____。你忘了明天要kǎoshì(考試)？

王：事qíng(情)真多。每天都要做到八、九點。

李：是啊！最近公司這麼忙。我們今天_____。

孩子：媽媽，我沒有錢了。你給我五百塊，好不好？

媽媽：今天早上我給過你五百塊啊！你怎麼_____？

先生：我今天租的動作片比上次的好看。這個週末我們可以一起看。

太太：你怎麼_____？給孩子看，不太好吧。

又租動作片 又用完了 又要錢 又看 又要八、九點回家了

Additional Vocabulary

kǎoshì(考試): test; examination

事qíng(情): matter; event; things to do

c) 別又 + VP

王：這個字怎麼寫？我每次都寫錯。

李：我寫給你看。明天kǎo(考)試_____。

王：哎呀！張先生已經走了。我來晚了。

李：沒關係。你明天再來，可是_____。

王：這個遙控器好像又壞了。

李：小xīn(心)！我剛弄好。你_____。

王：我上次做的宮保雞丁不好吃，今天我要再做一次。

李：這次_____。

別又來晚了 別又弄壞了 別又太鹹了 別又不夠辣了 別又寫錯了

Additional Vocabulary

kǎo(考)試: test; examination

小xīn(心): to be careful

Aural Comprehension Drill

2

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

- () 這兩個人正在說什麼？
a. 一個電影 b. 一個電視節目 c. 男女朋友的問題
- () 為什麼要請十位先生、小姐來？
a. 來參加電視節目 b. 來看電視節目 c. 來比賽
- () 先生對小姐說的這個事情有沒有興趣？
a. 有 b. 沒有 c. 沒有說，不知道

Notes

1. “你不要轉台” means “Don’t switch the channel.” Many people in Taiwan will say “換台” instead of “轉台”.
2. “我要看第三台的卡通” means “I want to watch the cartoon on channel three.” It is also common to use the name of the TV company when one is talking about TV programs, e.g., the “中視” in “我要看中視的卡通”, which is short for “中國電視公司” (China TV company).
3. “我先來的” means “I came first.” This sentence derived from the fuller form 我是先來的, which is also correct. The “(是……) 的” emphasizes the 先.
4. “你看球賽，看了那麼久了” means “You have been watching the ball game for such a long time.” The “了” used at the end of the sentence indicates that the action of watching TV has been continuing until now.
5. “遙控器給我” means “The remote control, give it to me.” or “Give me the remote control.” This is a topic-comment sentence. The topic is “遙控器”, and “給我” is the comment. “你把遙控器給我” would mean the same, but the tone would be softer.
6. “你什麼意思？這麼兇！” means “What do you mean by that? (You are) so mean.” One could also say “你這麼兇是什麼意思？” or “你是什麼意思？你為什麼這麼兇？”
7. “好吧，給你看球賽吧。” means “All right. (I’ll) let you watch the ball game.” This “給” means: let; allow. The “吧” both in “好吧” and “給你看球賽吧” denotes a tone of concession.
8. “昨天媽叫你幫她錄連續劇” means “Yesterday Mom told you to record the soap opera for her.” This “叫” means to tell someone to do something. The “幫” in this sentence means to help someone by doing something.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

2

哥哥：欸，比赛还没完。你不要转台。

弟弟：现在是广告时间。我要看第三台的卡通。

卡通影片比篮球赛好看多了。

哥哥：可是球赛还没有比完啊！

弟弟：没关系。等一下看新闻就知道哪一队赢了。

哥哥：不行。我先来的。你怎么可以这样？

弟弟：你看球赛，看了那么久了。别人什么节目都不能看。

哥哥：这个卡通，我以前看过，一点也不好看。遥控器给我！

弟弟：你什么意思？这么凶！好吧，给你看球赛吧。球赛完了，你叫我。我要看新闻跟气象预报。

明天我要去爬山。

哥哥：嗯。

弟弟：你听见没有？

哥哥：听见了。

弟弟：别又忘了。昨天妈叫你帮她录连续剧，可是你看完电视长片就把电视关了。妈到现在还在生气呢。

哥哥：知道啦！

Exercises

I. Comparison

Divide the students into groups of two and let them compare their age, appearance, abilities, family situation, etc. Then have them talk about or write out the results.

- 例如：他比我高一點。 (gāo 高 tall)
我跟XX一樣高。
我比XX胖。 (pàng 胖 fat)
XX比我大六個月。
他的頭髮比我的長。 (tóufǎ 頭髮 hair on the head)
(cháng 長 long)
他們家的小孩比我們家多。
他會說的語言比我多。 (yǔyán 語言 language)
.....

II. Chain story

Have the students sit in a circle. One student begins to tell a story, then every student adds to it until it is finished. Every student must use at least one “V 過” sentence. The teacher will decide how many sentences each student makes.

- 例如：①有一個中國人，他沒有吃過法國菜。
②有一天他的朋友請他去吃法國菜，可是他沒有用過刀子、叉子。那麼多刀叉，他也不知道先用哪一個。怎麼辦呢？
.....

III. Dos and Don'ts

1. First, let the students imagine there is a new student who has just arrived at the school. What suggestions would everyone give him/her using “你最好……” and “你別……”? The teacher will ask each student to say the suggestion and write it on the board or on a sheet of paper.

- 例：你最好每天早一點來學校。 你上課的時候別睡覺。
你最好多交幾個朋友。 你別跟人打架。 (dǎjià 打架 to fight)
你最好自己帶午飯來。 你別翹課。 (qiàok è 翹課 to cut class)
.....

2. Have the students think about what they are good at the best (such as a kind of sport; an occupation; a hobby, etc.), then think about a person who wants to learn this skill and what the students should tell him/her. Each student should write out five sentences with “你最好……” and five with “別……”. Then the students work in pairs to give their suggestions to each other.

IV. Making advertisements

Divide the students into groups of two (if there are not enough, students can work individually). Discuss and decide what to advertise on the radio (of course, you must use Chinese). Try your best to use this chapter's sentence patterns. The advertisement can be for a TV program, ball game tickets, a new product, new video rental store, etc. and the length should be limited to about three minutes. If the students need more time for discussion, they may discuss after class and present the commercial the following day. If there are things that the students do not know how to say, the teacher should help or have the students look it up in the dictionary.

例：推銷球賽門票

男：你看過「公牛隊」比賽嗎？哇！他們打得那麼好。你一定要來看他們打球。你就知道他們打得比誰都好。

女：真的嗎？什麼時候比賽？

男：七月十號，星期五，晚上七點半。在台北球場。

女：好，我去看看他們是不是跟你說的一樣好。

男：別忘了，七月十號晚上七點半。

V. Role play

1. One person is a video rental store clerk, the other is a customer. The customer rented three tapes the previous week and is not returning them until today, four days overdue. What kind of discussion will they have? Please act out the dialogue.
2. Two roommates are watching television. One wants to watch the weather report, the other wants to watch a soap opera. Neither will give in and an argument ensues. A friend hears them and comes to look. What do you think they will say? Please have students act this out.

Reading Comprehension

我妹妹非常喜歡看電視，什麼節目都看：看完了卡通影片，看連續劇。看完了連續劇，看球賽。電視上的節目都看完了，她就去租錄影帶來看。她是附近那家「人人錄影帶出租店」的特別會員，租片子可以打八折，比別人便宜。她租過的電影，哪一種都有。文藝愛情片、功夫片、動作片，她都有興趣，不過限制級的還不能看。媽媽看妹妹在電視前面的時間越來越長，怕妹妹的眼睛越來越壞，就對妹妹說：「你最好少看一點兒電視。從今天開始，每天只能看一個小時以內的電視。如果你不聽我的話，我就把電視送給別人。」妹妹怕以後沒有電視看，就把借來的錄影帶都還了，少看一點兒電視了。

Questions:

1. 我妹妹有多麼喜歡看電視？
2. 我妹妹為什麼在「人人錄影帶出租店」租帶子？
3. 妹妹什麼樣的電影都可以看嗎？為什麼？
4. 媽媽為什麼叫妹妹少看一點兒電視？
5. 妹妹現在還看那麼多電視嗎？為什麼？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “情人” means?
a) one's lover b) a person who is in love c) a person who loves people
2. What do you think “開關” in “電視機開關” means?
a) to turn on and off b) an electric switch c) open and close

Authentic Material

I. 星期三的電視節目

中 視			(02)2789-6607
0630 國內外新聞	1230 午間劇場：阿霞開店	1830 寶島戲劇線：濟公活佛	
0800 CBS英語新聞	1300 燃燒的太陽	1900 中視新聞全球報導	
0830 瑜珈	1430 童養媳	2000 黃金戲劇線：大姊當家	
0900 星雲說	1500 中視客間新聞	2100 黃金劇場——珍重我的愛	
0905 動物金銀島	1600 生活的旋律	2230 夢幻遊戲	
0930 普願慈悲心	1630 卡通：原子小金剛	2330 中視夜間新聞	
1000 體壇風雲：足球賽	1700 兒童天地	0020 夜樂夜線	
1100 太陽雨	1730 卡通：機動戰士	0040 動物歷險	
1200 中視午間新聞	1800 冠軍家庭	0140 家有四寶	

1. 這是什麼？哪一個電視公司的？
2. 今天有幾次新聞？幾點？
3. 有幾個連續劇？幾點？
4. 什麼時候可以看卡通？
5. 我想看球賽，應該幾點開電視？

II. 租書店的入會辦法

越來越聰明租書店會員入會及租書辦法

1. 會員卡一張，工本費150元。
2. 申請入會後，請在七天以內帶身分證影本及工本費收據，到本店領卡。
3. 如果先付租金1000元，租書時，可以打八折。
4. 如果先付租金600元，租書時，可以打九折。
5. 每本書第一天十五元，每加一天，再加十元。
6. 租新書每本須付押金五百元，限租三天。過期租金每天加二十元。

1. 想要得到一張會員卡，你應該怎麼辦？
2. 想租到比較便宜的書，你應該怎麼辦？
3. 如果我借了三本書，一個星期以後還，我要付多少租金？
4. 租新書有什麼特別的規定？

第二單元 我們旅行去¹

Unit 2 Let's Go Traveling

Key Study Points

Lesson 3: inquiring about a tour group itinerary, price, how many people, and how many days / applying for a visa and passport / stating conditions / comparing two things / giving a general description

Lesson 4: inquiring about a tour destination, hotel, transportation, price and weather / talking about an immediate action / comparing at a higher level / using a change of tone / talking about two existing situations and two successive actions

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 3

歐洲，旅行團，行遍天下旅行社，
高，行程，打算，德國，義大利，
浪漫，古跡，參觀，特色，國家，
不但，風景，高，矮，低，包括，
旅遊平安保險，地點，門票，簽證，
報名，以下，以上，才，參加，放心，
差不多，差一點，護照，過期，
照片

不但……也……
跟 NP₁/VP₁ 比起來，
NP₂/VP₂……(V 起來)
Nu-M 以下
才(conditional)
NP₁/VP₁ 有/沒有(NP₂/VP₂)
那麼+SV
差不多
差一點

Lesson 4

暑假，計畫，東部，休息，花蓮，
海邊，就，放假，旅館，價錢，
單人房，雙人房，客滿，訂不到，
青年活動中心，一般，更，團體房，
交通，離，雖然，累，飛機，又，
班，舒服，季，夏天，春天，秋天，
冬天，氣溫，溫度，颱風

V 過 Nu 次(了)
一……就……
訂不到(可能式 RC)
NP₁/VP₁ 比 NP₂/VP₂ 更 SV
NP₁ 離 NP₂ + 不 + (Adv)+ 遠/近
雖然……可是……
又……又……
(S+)V₁ 了 O₁，S 就 V₂O₂

第三課 有沒有去歐洲的旅行團？

Lesson 3 Are There Tour Groups Going to Europe?



小姐：喂，行遍天下旅行社。你好。
Xíngbiàn Tiānxià Lǚxíngshè

小高：請問，你們下個月有沒有去歐洲的旅行團？
Ōuzhōu • lǚxíngtuán

小姐：有啊，我們有好幾種行程。你打算去哪些地方？
xíngchéng • dǎsuàn
去多久？

小高：我去過德國，現在最想去義大利。我聽說義大利人很浪漫²，還有很多古跡可以參觀。
Déguó • Yìdàlì • lǎngmàn • gǔjī • cānguān

小姐：沒錯，義大利是一個很有特色的國家。
tèsè • guójiā
我們下個月有一個十五天的團，去義大利跟法國。
búdàn • fēngjǐng
嗯，這個時候去最好，不但天氣好，風景也好。

小高：費用高嗎？
、 、 gāo •

小姐：包括旅遊平安保險跟參觀地點的門票，
Bāokuò lǚyóu píng'ān bǎoxiǎn — — — dìdiǎn • ménpiào
一共六萬五。
、 、 、 、 、 、

3 小高：不包括簽證費嗎？
、 — 、 qiānzhèng 、 •

小姐：不包括。跟別家旅行社比起來，六萬五已經是最便宜的了。
、 — 、 — / — √ / 、 √ √ / 、 、 √ √ — 、 、 / / • •

小高：這個團現在有多少人報名了？我不喜歡太大的團。
、 • / 、 、 √ — √ / bàomíng • √ 、 √ — 、 、 • /
二十個人以下，我才參加。
、 / • / yǐxià √ cái cānjiā

小姐：你放心，我們的團都沒有那麼大，差不多十八個人。
√ fàngxīn √ • • / — méiyǒu nà-me dà chàbùduō / — • /

小高：噢，我差一點忘了，我的護照過期了。
• √ chàyìdiǎn 、 • √ • hùzhào guòqī •

你們能不能幫我辦？
√ • / 、 / — √ 、

小姐：可以，不過要再加一千兩百塊，還要給我你的身分證、
√ √ / 、 、 、 — 、 — √ √ 、 / 、 √ √ √ • — 、 、
舊護照跟三張照片。
、 、 、 — — — zhàopiàn

小高：那，請你把行程表寄給我看看，好嗎？
、 √ √ √ / / √ 、 √ √ 、 • √ •

小姐：沒問題，請告訴我你的地址，我馬上寄出去。
/ 、 / √ 、 、 √ √ • 、 √ √ √ 、 、 — 、

Vocabulary

1. 歐洲 Ōuzhōu Proper N: Europe
 美洲 Měizhōu Proper N: America
 非洲 Fēizhōu Proper N: Africa
 洲 zhōu N: continent
2. 旅行團 lǚxíngtuán N: tour group (M: 個)
3. 行遍天下旅行社 Xíngbiàn Tiānxià Lǚxíngshè Proper N: Travel the World Travel Agency
 遍 biàn RC/M: everywhere/ measure for times of an action which is done thoroughly from the beginning till the end
 1) 我找遍整個房間，都沒有看見那本書。
 2) 你再看一遍我的支票寫錯了沒有。
 1) I have already searched throughout my room and did not see that book.
 2) Look again and see if my check was written incorrectly.
- 天下 tiānxià N: world
 爸爸媽媽都出去了，這個家就是我的天下了。我做什麼，都沒有人說不可以。
 Mom and Dad have both gone away, so this house is my world. Whatever I do, no one can say I can't do it.
4. 高 Gāo Proper N: Gao (common Chinese surname)
5. 行程 xíngchéng N: itinerary (M: 種、tàng 趟 trip)
 這個團第一天到上海，第三天到台北，第四天就到日本。這樣的行程你覺得怎麼樣？
 This tour goes to Shanghai on the first day, to Taipei on the third day and to Japan on the 4th day. What do you think about this kind of itinerary?
6. 打算 dǎsuàn V/N: to plan; to intend/plan; intention
 1) 我打算明年八月去歐洲旅行，可是不知道那個時候錢夠不夠。
 2) 我現在只想念書，沒有找工作的打算。
 1) I plan to travel to Europe next August, but I don't know if I will have enough money then.
 2) I only want to study now. I have no intention to look for a job.
7. 德國 Déguó Proper N: Germany
8. 義大利 Yìdàlì Proper N: Italy

9. 浪漫 lǎngmàn SV: to be romantic

我的男朋友不喜歡看電影，也不會買東西送我，跟我說的都是工作、工作，一點也不浪漫。

My boyfriend doesn't like to watch movies. He also doesn't buy me gifts. He only talks about work, work. He is not the least bit romantic.

10. 古跡 gǔjī N: relics; ruins

11. 參觀 cānguān V: to tour; to visit (an institution)

你的新家在哪裡？我們什麼時候可以去參觀？

Where is your new house? When can we visit it?

12. 特色 tè sè N: special feature

這家餐廳的特色是菜好吃、地方乾淨。

This restaurant's specialty is good food and a clean environment.

13. 國家 guójiā N: country

我明年去歐洲旅行。我要去法國、德國、義大利三個國家。

I will travel to Europe next year. I am going to France, Germany, and Italy, these three countries.

14. 不但 búdàn Conj: not only

王老師不但是我的老師，也是我的朋友。

Teacher Wang is not only my teacher, but also my friend.

15. 風景 fēngjǐng N: scenery

那個地方有山也有水，風景很漂亮。

That place has both mountains and water, and the scenery is very beautiful.

16. 高 gāo SV: to be tall/high

1) 你太高，這件衣服你穿不夠長。

2) 市區裡的房租比較高，每個月最少一萬塊。

1) You are too tall. These clothes are not long enough for you.

2) Rent is higher in the city. Each month at least \$10,000.

*17. 矮 ǎi SV: to be short (in height)

這是給小孩子用的桌子，所以比較矮。

This table is for a child, so it is shorter.

*18. 低 dī SV: to be low

押金低、房租便宜的房子不好找。

A low deposit and cheap rent apartment is not easy to find.

19. 包括 bāokuò V: to include

我給你三萬塊，包括押金兩萬跟第一個月的房租。

I will give you \$30,000, including \$20,000 deposit and the first month's rent.

20. 旅遊平安保險 lǚyóu píng'ān bǎoxiǎn N: travel (safety) insurance
(M: xiàng 項 item)

旅遊 lǚyóu N: tourism

平安 píng'ān SV: to be safe and sound

張先生，你太太生了，大人跟小孩都平安。

Mr. Zhang, your wife has given birth. The mother and child are both safe and sound.

保險 bǎoxiǎn N/SV: an insurance/to be safe; to be secure
(M: xiàng 項 item)

1) 你的新車買了什麼保險？

2) 錢放在家裡不保險，放在銀行比較保險。

1) What insurance did you buy for your new car?

2) It is not safe to keep your money at home. It's safe in a bank.

旅客 lǚkè N: passenger (M: 位)

十點二十三分的火車馬上要開了，還沒有上車的旅客請上車。

The 10:23 train is about to depart. All passengers not yet on board should board the train.

遊客 yóukè N: tourist (M: 個、位)

這兩天下大雨，所以參觀古跡的遊客不多。

It has been raining heavily these two days, so there have not been many tourists visiting the ruins.

21. 地點 dìdiǎn N: place; location; venue

明天去爬山，我們在哪兒見？時間、地點決定了沒有？

Where do we meet to go mountain hiking tomorrow? Have the time and place been decided?

22. 門票 ménpiào N: entrance ticket (M: 張)

車票 chēpiào N: train or bus ticket (M: 張)

23. 簽證 qiānzhèng N: visa

我要去美國旅行。請問，辦美國簽證需要多少時間？

I want to travel to America. Could you tell me how long it takes to get a visa?

24. 報名 bàomíng VO: to register; to sign up

我們週末要去爬山，你要去嗎？要去的話，就去辦公室報名。

We want to go mountain hiking this weekend. Do you want to go? If you want to go, sign up at the office.

25. 以下 yǐxià Adv: below; under (sometimes may also include the number preceding it)

十八歲以下的人不可以看限制級的電影。

Children under eighteen years of age cannot watch restricted movies.

*26. 以上 yǐshàng Adv: above; over (sometimes may also include the number preceding it)

店員說買一千塊以上的東西就可以打折。這件襯衫一千零五十塊，可以打折。

The clerk says items over \$1,000 can be discounted. This \$1,050 shirt can be discounted.

27. 才 cāi Adv: then; then and only then

你給我錢，我才幫你搬家。

Only when you give me the money will I help you move.

28. 參加 cānjiā V: to participate, to join

你參加過喝啤酒比賽沒有？

Have you ever participated in a beer drinking contest?

29. 放心 fàngxīn VO/SV: to stop worrying; to rest assured

1) 小弟不太會用電腦，所以我不放心他用我的電腦。

2) 這是我第一次住在學校。媽媽很不放心。

1) My little brother cannot use a computer very well, so I am not comfortable letting him use my computer.

2) This is my first time living at school. My mother is really worried.

心 xīn N: heart, mind (M: kē 顆 pellet)

我看見我們球隊贏了，心裡非常高興。

Watching our team win, my heart was filled with joy.

30. 差不多 chàbùduō Adv: almost; nearly

現在九月，我三月來的，所以我差不多來半年了。

It's now September. I arrived in March, so I've been here for about half a year.

差 chà SV/V: to be poor/to differ from; to fall short of

1) 把電視機關了吧。節目這麼差，你還看。

2) 還差兩分鐘就十點了。要上課了，怎麼學生都還沒來？

1) Why don't you turn off the TV? The program is so lousy. Yet you're still watching it.

2) It's two minutes before ten. It's time for class, and how come no students have shown up yet?

31. 差一點(兒) chàyidiǎn(r) Adv: nearly; on the verge of

這封信十九公克，差一點兒就超重了。

This letter weighs nineteen grams. It's nearly overweight.

32. 護照 hùzhào N: passport (M: 本)

33. 過期 guòqī V: to expire; to overdue; to past the deadline

我們租的錄影帶應該三號還。今天五號，已經過期兩天了。

We should return the videotape we rented by the third. Today is the fifth, and it's already two days overdue.

到期 dàoqī V: to reach the deadline

我們這個房子的租約下個月到期，房東問我們有什麼打算。

Our lease on this house ends next month, and the landlord has asked what we plan to do.

34. 照片 zhàopiàn N: picture; photograph (M: 張)

Grammar

1. 這個時候去最好，不但天氣好，風景也好。

This is the best time to go, not only is the weather good, but the scenery is also good.

Explanation: In the “不但……也……” sentence pattern the “不但” and “也” connect two short parallel sentences or phrases, indicating that besides the situation following “不但”, the situation following “也” also exists at the same time. If the subjects of these two short sentences or phrases are the same, “不但” is usually placed after the first subject, and the second subject is omitted; when the subjects are not the same, “不但” is usually placed in front of the first subject, with “也” then being placed after the second subject.

王：你們點了什麼菜？宮保雞丁還是麻婆豆腐？

李：我們都喜歡吃辣的，所以 _____。

王：這個旅行團行程不錯，你知道有誰要參加？

李：因為行程不錯，所以 _____。

王：好久沒看見老張了。以前他常說：他有了錢，一定要先買個房子再買個車子。不知道他現在買了沒有？

李：他貿易公司的生意不錯，所以 _____。

王：我們的英文老師第一次到台灣來，不知道他吃過中國菜沒有？會不會用筷子？我們最好請他吃西餐。

李：我已經問過了，_____。

不但點了宮保雞丁，也點了麻婆豆腐 不但我要去，我媽也要去
不但買了房子，也買了車子 他不但吃過中國菜，筷子也用得很好

Additional Vocabulary

生意: business

3

2. 跟別家旅行社比起來，六萬五已經是最便宜的了。

Compared to other travel agencies, \$65000 is already the cheapest.

Explanation: a) Some of the “V 起來” phrases are not Resultative Verb Compounds. If they are placed in the first part of the sentence, indicating the speaker's remarks, estimation or conjecture about the topic after the action. “V 起來” is often followed by an adjective phrase or a clause indicating description or modification. Verbs often used with this structure are: 聽, 看, 聞 (to smell), 說, 吃, 做, 算, 想, 穿, 用, 寫, 笑 (xiào, to laugh), 哭 (kū, to cry), etc. b) The “跟 NP₁/VP₁ 比起來, NP₂/VP₂ ……” sentence pattern is a comparison between NP₁/VP₁ and NP₂/VP₂. It also remarks about the level of the difference between the two. The phrase following the NP₂/VP₂ is the remark by the speaker. This remark usually needs an adverb indicating degree, such as: 最, 多了, 一點, 比較, etc.

a) V 起來

王：小李，這是我弟弟。

李：真的？你弟弟 _____，好像你哥哥。

王：這雙鞋樣子不太好看，你別買了。

李：Suīrán(雖然)樣子不太好，可是_____。買了逛街穿吧。

王：你的房租一個月五千塊，真便宜。

李：可是不包括水電費，我每個月自己要付一千多塊的水電費，所以 _____。

先生：這個菜很好吃，你回家也試試，做給我吃，好不好？

太太：你就會說。你要知道 _____，_____。你為什麼不自己做？

穿起來很舒服 算起來不便宜 看起來有一點老
說起來容易，做起來難

Additional Vocabulary

suīrán (雖然): although

就: just, only

b) NP₁/VP₁ 跟 NP₂/VP₂ 比起來

王：你為什麼帶我來這家餐廳？上次去的那家菜不錯啊。

李：_____。

王：我聽說德國現在很冷，義大利呢？

李：_____。

王：我家很遠，開車要半個小時。真麻煩。

李：_____。我要開一個小時呢。

王：你說學中文很難。你也學過日文，學日文難嗎？

李：_____。

跟我家比起來，你家近多了 跟德國比起來，義大利不太冷
跟那家比起來，這家不但好吃也便宜
跟學中文比起來，學日文比較難／容易

3. 二十個人以下，我才參加。 I'll join the group only if there are less than twenty people.

Explanation: “Nu-M 以下” indicates the amount is lower than or equal to the limitation set by “Nu-M.” Unless it is otherwise stated, the amount of the Nu-M may included.

王：這樣的傳真機很不錯，你就買這個吧！

李：一萬八太貴了。_____。

王：你今天怎麼這麼不高興？

李：這次kǎo(考)試我只考了五十八分。老師說_____。

王：我們去看電影，聽說「情人」很好看。

李：不行，這部電影是限制級的，_____。

先生：我去買票。要不要買小明的票？

太太：_____，他還不夠高。

一萬五以下我才買 十八歲以下不可以看
九十公分以下不必買票 六十分以下要再考一次

Additional Vocabulary

kǎo (考) 試: test; examination

4. 二十個人以下，我才參加。 I'll join the group only if there are less than twenty people.

Explanation: The “才” here is used to connect two sentences with an absolute relationship. The former sentence is the required condition for the latter sentence. Without the initial condition the succeeding condition will absolutely not occur. If the subject of the succeeding phrase is different than the initial subject, it should be placed before the “才”.

王：明年六月，我們一起到歐洲去旅行，好不好？

李：那要看我有沒有錢，_____。

小孩：我現在可以看電視嗎？

媽媽：Gōng(功)課寫完了沒有？_____。

太太：你要不要跟我去逛街？

先生：你要買東西嗎？_____。

小孩：媽，給我買雙qiú(球)鞋，好不好？

媽媽：這雙還沒有壞，_____。

壞了才可以買新的

你不買太多東西，我才跟你去

寫完了才可以看

有錢，我才去

Additional Vocabulary

gōng (功)課: homework

qiú (球)鞋: athletic shoes

5. 我們的團都沒有（你說的）那麼大，差不多十八個人。

None of our groups are that big, they are around eighteen people.

Explanation: In the “A 有/沒有 B 那麼/這麼+SV” sentence pattern, A and B are a Noun Phrase or Verb Phrase, using B as the standard to compare A and B. If A reaches the level of B, “有” is used to connect the two; if A does not reach the level of B, “沒有” is used. The SV is the result of comparison. “那麼” and “這麼” are used to indicate whether the speaker feels B is far away or near. If A or B has been mentioned previously or the listener already knows of it, it can be omitted.

王：你以前學過日文，你說日文很難，現在學中文，中文難不難？

李：我覺得_____。

王：今天這麼熱，不知道明天天氣怎麼樣？

李：氣象預報說，明天會下雨，_____。

王：你以前住家裡，為什麼要搬出來？

李：我現在住在學校，因為_____。

王：這家錄影帶店太貴了，我們去剛剛那家租吧。

李：對，_____。

日文沒有中文這麼難
住家裡沒有住學校這麼方便
這家沒有那家那麼便宜

沒有今天這麼熱
住學校沒有住家裡那麼麻煩
中文沒有日文那麼難

6. 我們的團都沒有那麼大，差不多十八個人。

None of our groups are that big, they are around eighteen people.

Explanation: “差不多” indicates very close or that the difference is very small. It is usually placed before a Nu-M.

王：你每天晚上幾點回家？我給你打了好幾次電話，你都不在。

李：我_____在家。

王：明年五月我想到歐洲去旅行一個月，要帶多少錢才夠？

李：Fēi(飛)機票、簽證費不算，_____。

王：張老師真年輕，不知道他今年多大了。

李：他的小孩都念大學了，我想_____。

王：不知道現在台幣對美金的huìlǜ(匯率)怎麼樣？

李：_____。

他差不多五十歲了
差不多十萬塊才夠

差不多十一點以後
一塊美金差不多三十五塊台幣

Additional Vocabulary

fēi (飛)機: airplane

年輕: to be young

huìlǜ (匯率): the exchange rate

7. 噢，我差一點忘了。 Oh, I almost forgot.

Explanation: “差一點” indicates that something has almost occurred but it did not. It is followed by a definite or indefinite verb phrase.

王：昨天晚上，小張和老高都喝多了，今天他們兩個都沒來上班。

李：是啊！我也_____。

王：他真像張老師。

李：對啊！我剛剛也_____。

弟弟：爸爸說電腦可以用，沒壞。你為什麼那麼怕？

哥哥：你不知道？我昨天_____。

太太：我已經把房租拿給房東了，還有錢付水電費嗎？

先生：還有一千塊可以付。唉！這個月的錢_____。

王：昨天的功課太多了，我寫到十二點還沒寫完。

李：對啊！我也_____。

差一點看錯人了
差一點不夠

差一點不能來
差一點把他的電腦弄壞了

差一點沒寫完

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

() 這位先生要做什麼？

a. 辦簽證

b. 延長簽證

c. 辦護照

() 這位先生有什麼問題？

a. 小姐不給他辦

b. 他沒有錢付簽證費

c. 他的簽證明天到期，他今天才來辦

() 這位先生的問題最後怎麼樣了？

a. 下星期一可以辦好

b. 沒辦成

c. 不知道

() 小姐要這位先生做什麼？

a. 給她護照跟申請表

b. 給她簽證費

c. 給她照片

Notes

1. “我們旅行去” means “Let’s take a trip.” This “去” is placed after the verb “旅行”. It is a little different from “我們去旅行”, which means “We are going to take a trip.” It means the same whether “去” is placed in front or after the verb of a sentence when there is a “了” after the verb at the end of the sentence, e.g. “我們去旅行了” and “我們旅行去了” are the same. When there is a time word before the verb, such as “我們明天去買菜” and “我們明天買菜去”, they also mean the same.
2. “浪漫” means “romantic.” There is a more complete transliteration for romantic, which is “羅曼蒂克 (luómàndìkè) .” Most people use “羅曼蒂克” when they want to refer to love affairs. On the other hand “浪漫” includes the notions imaginative, of fantasy, unrealistic, impractical, etc.
3. “照片” means the same as “相片 (xiàngpiàn)” or “像片”, because “照相” or “照像” means “taking a picture with a camera.”

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

小姐：喂，行遍天下旅行社。你好。

小高：请问，你们下个月有没有去欧洲的旅行团？

小姐：有啊。我们有好几种行程。你打算去哪些地方？
去多久？

小高：我去过德国，现在最想去义大利。我听说义大利人很浪漫，还有很多古迹可以参观。

小姐：没错。义大利是一个很有特色的国家。我们下个月有一个十五天的团，去义大利跟法国。嗯，这个时候去最好，不但天气好，风景也好。

小高：费用高吗？

小姐：包括旅游平安保险跟参观地点的门票，一共六万五。

小高：不包括签证费吗？

小姐：不包括。跟别家旅行社比起来，六万五已经是最便宜的了。

小高：这个团现在有多少人报名了？我不喜欢太大的团。二十个人以下，我才参加。

小姐：你放心。我们的团都没有那么大，差不多十八个人。

小高：噢，我差一点忘了。我的护照过期了。你们能不能帮我办？

小姐：可以，不过要再加一千两百块。还要给我你的身分证、旧护照跟三张照片。

小高：那，请你把行程表寄给我看看，好吗？

小姐：没问题。请你告诉我你的地址。我马上寄出去。

第四課 那個地方怎麼樣？

Lesson 4 What Do You Know about That Place?



台生：家明，你暑假要去哪裡旅行？有沒有計畫¹？
— / √ shǔjià \ \ √ √ √ / √ / √ jìhuà

家明：我打算去東部，你呢？
√ √ \ \ dōngbù √ •

台生：我想在家休息。
√ √ \ — xiūxi

家明：我聽說花蓮²海邊很漂亮，你去過沒有？
√ — — Huālián hǎibiān √ \ \ √ \ \ / √

台生：我去過好幾次了，你打算什麼時候去？
√ \ \ \ √ √ \ • √ √ \ / • / \ \

家明：我想一放假就去。那裡住的地方好找嗎？
√ √ yī fàngjià jiù \ \ √ \ • \ — √ √ •

台生：旅館很多，價錢也不貴，單人房一個晚上七百塊。
Lǚguǎn √ — jiàqián √ / \ dānrénfáng / • √ \ — √ \

不過你最好先打電話訂房間。
/ \ \ √ \ \ — √ \ \ \ / —

家明：你的意思是怕訂不到？
√ • \ • \ \ dìngbúdào

台生：對啊！放假的時候人多，晚了就客滿了，訂不到了。

噢，對了，訂不到旅館可以去住青年活動中心³，

比一般旅館更便宜，還有團體房，一個人三百塊。

家明：從台北到花蓮去，交通方便嗎？⁴我自己開車去，行不行？

台生：花蓮離台北不遠，雖然可以自己開車去，可是路不太好開，很容易累。

家明：那坐飛機呢？

台生：坐飛機又貴，票又不好買。到花蓮的火車每天有七、八班。你坐火車去，又舒服，又方便，三個小時就到了。

家明：花蓮的天氣怎麼樣？

台生：花蓮的天氣一年四季都比台北好。夏天的氣溫差不多三十度，可是有的時候有颱風。你去以前，最好聽聽氣象預報。

家明：謝謝你。明天下了課我就去買車票。

Vocabulary

1. 暑假 shǔjià N: summer vacation

2. 計畫 jìhuà N/V: plan/ to plan

1) 我打算這個週末租幾卷錄影帶回家看。你要不要來看，還是你有別的計畫了？

2) 我跟朋友明年去美國學英文。我們已經計畫了很久了。

1) I'm thinking of renting some videos this weekend and watching them at home. Do you want to come, or do you have other plans?

2) My friend and I will go to the USA to study English. We have already been planning this for a long time.

3. 東部 dōngbù N: eastern part

台灣的東部風景好，西部房子高，南部天氣熱，北部常下雨，中部都是山。

The eastern part of Taiwan has beautiful scenery; the western part has high buildings; the southern part has hot weather; in the north it rains often; the central region is all mountains.

4. 休息 xiūxi V: to take a rest

5. 花蓮 Huālían Proper N: name of a place in eastern Taiwan

6. 海邊 hǎibiān N: beach; sea side (M: chù 處 site)

台灣東部海邊的風景比西部的漂亮得多。

The scenery on Taiwan's eastern coast is much more beautiful than that on the western coast.

海 hǎi N: sea

7. 就 jiù Adv: then; right away; at once

我接了電話，就馬上回家了。

Immediately upon receiving the telephone call, I returned home.

8. 放假 fàngjià VO: to have or take a vacation

你們什麼時候放暑假？放多久？

When do you all have summer vacation? How long do you have off?

9. 旅館 lǚguǎn N: hotel, inn (M: 家)

這家旅館的房間都住了人了，沒有房間了，我們去別家吧。

This hotel's rooms are all occupied, and there are no rooms available. Let's go to another hotel.

10. 價錢 jiàqián N: price (M: 個)

市區裡的房子，價錢越來越高，房租也越來越貴。我們搬到別的地方去吧。

In the city, prices for houses are getting higher and higher, and apartment rents are also getting more and more expensive. Let's move to another place.

11. 單人房 dānrénfáng N: single room (M: 間、個)

*12. 雙人房 shuāngrénfáng N: double room (M: 間、個)

我們已經沒有雙人房了。給你兩間單人房，怎麼樣？

We are already out of double rooms. I can give you two single rooms, how about it?

13. 客滿 kè mǎn V: to be full; no vacancy

上下班時間，坐公車的人很多，每一輛公車差不多都客滿，很不容易上車。

During the rush hours, many people take the public bus. Almost every bus is full and is difficult to board.

滿 mǎn SV/RE: to be full/ to be filled

1) 爸，我在放洗澡水，滿了叫我。

2) 這家旅館已經住滿了，我們去別家吧。

1) Dad, I am filling up the bathtub. Call me when it is full.

2) This hotel is already full. Let's find another one.

14. 訂不到 dìngbúdào RC: unable to reserve

暑假出門旅遊的人很多，要是不早一點訂，可能訂不到車票，訂不到旅館房間。

Many people go out to travel during the summer vacation. If you do not reserve early, you will probably not be able to reserve a (train) ticket or hotel room.

15. 青年活動中心 Qīngnián Huódòng Zhōngxīn N: Youth Activity Center

青年 qīngnián N: youths; young people (M: 個、位)

活動 huódòng N/V: activity/ to exercise (M: 個、xiàng 項 item)

1) 我們每個星期都辦活動，有的時候爬山，有的時候打球，歡迎你們來參加。

2) 你打電腦打一個小時，就應該站起來活動活動。

1) We have activities every week. Sometimes we go for a hike in the mountains, and sometimes we play ball. You all are welcome to join.

2) (If) you have been at the computer for an hour, you should stand up and exercise a bit.

中心 zhōngxīn N: center (M: 個)

16. 一般 yìbān SV: common; general
 一般公司五點半下班，可是這家郵局六點才下班。
 Most offices get off at five thirty, but this post office does not get off until six.
17. 更 gèng Adv: even more; to a greater degree
 今天來看房子的人很多，八個。昨天來的人更多，十個。
 Many people, eight, came to look at the house today. Yesterday there were even more, ten.
18. 團體房 tuántǐfáng N: group room (M: 個、間)
19. 交通 jiāotōng N: communication; traffic
 我家附近有很多公車，所以交通很方便。
 There are many buses in my neighborhood so the traffic is quite convenient.
20. 離 lí CV: distant from
 飯館離這兒不遠，我們走過去吧。
 The restaurant is not far from here. Let's walk there.
21. 雖然 suīrán MA: although
 先生：這裡房租很便宜，我們就租了吧。
 太太：雖然很便宜，可是離我們上班的地方太遠，不方便。我們再找別的吧。
 Husband: The rent is cheap here. Let's rent it.
 Wife: Although the rent is cheap, it is too far from our work, and it is not convenient. Let's find another one.
22. 累 lèi SV: to be tired
 我剛打了兩個小時的籃球，真累！
 I have just played two hours of basketball, I'm really tired!
23. 飛機 fēijī N: airplane (M: 架、班)
 飛 fēi V: to fly
 這家公司一共有三十架飛機，每天有兩班飛機飛台北，三班飛日本。
 This company has a total of thirty airplanes. Everyday they have two flights to Taipei and three to Japan.
24. 又……又…… yòu...yòu... Adv: both...and...
 這家餐廳的菜又好吃，又便宜，所以常常客滿。
 The food in this restaurant is both good and cheap, so it is often full.
25. 班 bān M/N: for scheduled buses, trains and flights; class
 1) 從我家到學校的公車很多，大概兩、三分鐘就有一班。

2) 我們這個班一共有十二個學生。

1) There are many busses from my house to school. There is probably one every two or three minutes.

2) This class has twelve students altogether.

26. 舒服 shūfú SV: to be comfortable

洗完澡很舒服，剛坐下就想睡覺。

It's a very comfortable feeling after a bath. I just sat down and already I feel like sleeping.

27. 季 jì M: season

有的地方一年有四季，有的地方一年只有兩季。

Some places have four seasons every year, and some places only have two.

28. 夏天 xiàtiān N: summer (M: 個)

*29. 春天 chūntiān N: spring (M: 個)

*30. 秋天 qiūtiān N: autumn (M: 個)

*31. 冬天 dōngtiān N: winter (M: 個)

我喜歡春天去旅行，夏天去海邊，秋天去爬山，冬天在家看錄影帶。
你呢？

I like to travel in the spring, go to the seashore in the summer, hike in the mountains in the fall, and watch videos at home in the winter. How about you?

32. 氣溫 qìwēn N: temperature of the weather

今天的氣溫比昨天高，可是不覺得熱。

Today's temperature is higher than yesterday's, but it does not feel as hot.

33. 度 dù M: degree

今天七十度(F)，不冷不熱，很舒服。

It is seventy degrees today, neither cold nor hot, and it's really comfortable.

溫度 wēndù N: temperature

現在是冬天，海水的溫度太低，不可以去海邊玩水。

It is winter now. The sea temperature is too low. You cannot go to the beach and play in the water.

34. 颱風 táifēng N: typhoon (M: 個)

風 fēng N: the wind (M: zhèn 陣 gust)

今天風很大，你最好多穿一件衣服。

The wind is strong today. You'd better put on some more clothes.

Grammar

1. 我去過好幾次了。 I have been there many times.

Explanation: The “V 過” in the “V 過 Nu 次(了)” pattern indicates previous experience as stated in chapter 1. “Nu 次(了)” indicates the times one has had the experience. “了” is used to indicate the number of times continuing up to the present; no “了” is used to express past experience.

王：日本飯不容易吃飽，是真的嗎？

李：怎麼會呢？_____，每次都吃得很飽。

王：這個gē(歌)很有名，你聽過嗎？

李：_____，可是不知道叫什麼名字。

王：我沒辦過簽證，不知道麻煩不麻煩。

李：_____，不太麻煩。

王：你見過你女朋友的爸爸嗎？

李：_____，可是他好像不喜歡我。

我吃過很多次
聽過一次

我辦過一次
見過一次

我辦過很多次

Additional Vocabulary

gē(歌): song

2. 我想一放假就去。 I want to go as soon as vacation starts.

Explanation: The “一” and “就” in the “一……就……” pattern are followed by two different verbs. When the action or situation after the “一” takes place, the action or situation after the “就” will occur immediately. If the subjects of the two verbs are different, the second subject should be placed before “就”.

王：你怎麼又買了這麼多書？

李：沒辦法，我_____。

王：已經這麼晚了，他還在工作。又忘了吃飯啊？

李：就是啊，他每次_____。

太太：你自己說要洗碗的，怎麼還在看電視？

先生：好啦，好啦，_____。

媽媽：你先別寫信了。幫我去買一包糖。

孩子：好，我馬上寫完了。我_____。

王：你昨天下課以後到哪裡去了？我怎麼沒看見你？

李：我_____。

王：小張呢？剛剛還在這裡打電話的。

李：他媽媽有事找他，所以他_____。

4

我一看見書就想買

一寫完信就去

一打完電話就走了

一下課就回家了

我一看完這個節目就去

一工作就忘了吃飯

3. 放假的時候人多。晚了就客滿了，訂不到了。

There are many people during the holidays. If you are late the rooms will be full, and you won't get a room.

Explanation: The resultative verb compound introduced in the first volume was the actual type. The type being introduced here is the potential type. (Not every resultative verb compound can have both types.) If the verb and ending are connected by “得”, it is the affirmative potential type (V+得+RE); when the verb and ending are connected by “不”, it is negative. This kind of verb compound indicates whether the condition of the subject (either subjective conditions such as ability, strength, etc. or objective facts) can or cannot achieve the result of the action indicated by the ending. “訂不到” is a potential resultative verb compound. “到” indicates the action reaches the goal or has the result. The verbs already studied that can be used with this structure are as follow: 訂, 租, 等, 見, 買, 叫, 拿, 請, 送, 用, 找, 領, 看, 聽, 走。

王：這本日文書，我在台北買得到嗎？

李：你先找找，如果_____，沒關係，我可以請日本朋友幫你買。

王：你要找的學生找到了沒有？

李：他搬家了，我沒有他的新地址，_____他。

王：聽說「電腦大賽」很好看。我們去租帶子來看，怎麼樣？

李：好啊，可是這樣的新片，現在大概_____。

先生：你把那張通知單給我，我去郵局領包裹。

太太：今天星期天，_____嗎？

王：我想去見陳老師，你看明天早上怎麼樣？

李：他每天早上都在學校，你早上去一定_____。

買不到

找不到

見得到

領得到

租不到

4. (青年活動中心) 比一般旅館更便宜。

(The Youth Activity Center) is much cheaper than an ordinary hotel.

Explanation: The “NP₁/VP₁ 比 NP₂/VP₂ 更 SV” pattern indicates both of the things before and after “比” have the quality of the SV, but the level of the former is higher than the latter.

王：冬天的時候，美國東部的氣溫很低。

李：你沒去過加拿大，_____。

王：日本最高的山有 3776 公 chǐ(尺)。

李：_____，有 3997 公 chǐ(尺)。

王：我今天七點半就到學校來了。

李：_____，七點就到了。

王：辦護照很麻煩，要照片，還要身分證。辦簽證呢？

李：_____，不但要照片、身分證，還要飛機票。

王：坐飛機去旅行很舒服。

李：我覺得_____。

坐火車比坐飛機更舒服
台灣最高的山比日本的更高
加拿大的氣溫比美國更低

自己開車比坐飛機更舒服
我比你更早
辦簽證比辦護照更麻煩

Additional Vocabulary

加拿大: Canada

公 chǐ(尺): meter

5. 花蓮離台北不太遠，雖然可以自己開車去，可是路不太好開。

Hualian is not far from Taipei. Although you can drive there yourself, it's not an easy drive.

Explanation: In the “NP₁ 離 NP₂ + 不 + (Adv) + 遠/近” pattern, “離” is used to connect two noun phrases “NP₁” and “NP₂” which indicate places. It describes the distant between these two phrases of place. The negative is formed by putting “不” in front of “遠” or “近”. If NP₁ is already known, it can be omitted.

王：請問，大千百貨公司在哪裡？走路去行不行？

李：不行，_____，坐jì(計)程車去比較好。

王：寄到日本的航空信也要一個星期嗎？

李：不用，_____，差不多三天就到了。

先生：你到廚房拿杯水給我，好嗎？

太太：不好，_____。你為什麼不自己去？

房客：從這裡到學校去方便嗎？

房東：很方便，_____，走路去就可以了。

這裡離學校不怎麼遠
廚房離你比較近

大千百貨公司離這裡很遠
日本離台灣很近

Additional Vocabulary

jì(計) 程車: taxi

6. 花蓮離台北不太遠，雖然可以自己開車去，可是路不太好開。

Hualian is not far from Taipei. Although you can drive there yourself, it's not an easy drive.

Explanation: In the “雖然……可是……” pattern, “雖然” is a conjunction indicating concession, and “可是” is a conjunction indicating the change of tone. This pattern indicates that the speaker admits that what follows “雖然” is an existing fact, but what follows “可是” cannot avoid occurring just because of it. “雖然” can be placed either before or after the subject.

王：下個月有個團不錯。兩個星期，團不大，行程也很好，幾個有特色的地方都包括了。

李：_____。

王：這個房間這麼大，房租一個月只有五千塊，你怎麼不租呢？

李：_____，我到公司上班不方便。

王：是他自己要請客，你不必覺得不好意思。

李：_____，我還是覺得很不好意思。

王：我想這件襯衫比較好，不但顏色好，樣子也不錯。

李：_____，我沒有那麼多錢。

房租雖然便宜，可是離公司太遠了
這件襯衫雖然不錯，可是太貴了
雖然是他自己要請客，可是他點了那麼多菜
雖然行程很好，可是兩個星期去那麼多國家太累了

7. ㊟ 坐飛機又貴，票又不好買。

Taking a plane is expensive and tickets are hard to buy.

㊟ 你坐火車去，又舒服，又方便。

Take a train, it's both comfortable and convenient.

Explanation: The “又……又……” pattern indicates both of two actions, states or situations with the same positive or negative implication are existing. If what “又……又……” describes is two relevant facts, and the subjects are different, the second subject must be placed before the second “又”. If “又……又……” describes one subject, the subject is placed before the first “又” and the elements following the two “又” should be verbs, stative verbs or verb phrases with the same structure.

王：聽說那家新開的餐廳不但便宜，菜也做得不錯。

李：對啊！那家餐廳 _____，所以客人很多。

王：趙奇這麼好看，又這麼會說話，我想喜歡他的人一定很多。

李：你說得對，大家都喜歡 _____ 的人。

王：這雙皮鞋樣子不錯，也很好穿，可是今天我沒帶那麼多錢。

下次再來買吧。

李：這種皮鞋， _____，很多人要買。你最好明天就來。

王：我太太喜歡逛街，不過她不太喜歡買東西，所以給她信用卡，沒關係。

李：我太太跟你太太不一樣，她 _____，一定不可以把信用卡給她。

又好看，又會說話
又便宜，菜又好吃
又漂亮又舒服

又便宜，菜的味道又好
又好看又好穿
又喜歡逛街，又喜歡買東西

Additional Vocabulary

客人: guest

大家: everyone

8. 明天下了課我就去買車票。 Tomorrow after class I will go buy the train ticket.

Explanation: The “(S+)V₁了 O₁, S就 V₂O₂” pattern indicates two actions which occur successively. After the first action is completed, then the second one will occur.

王：別吃飯了，先給他打電話吧。他現在一定在家等你的電話。

李：好啦，好啦，_____。

孩子：媽，來一起吃飯吧。別做了，菜已經夠了。

媽媽：你們先吃，_____。

王：下午三點的飛機，你怎麼還在看電視，不打包呢？

李：時間還早。_____。

客人：我現在辦會員卡，租錄影帶可以打折嗎？

店員：可以啊。_____。

我吃了飯馬上就給他打電話
你辦了會員卡就可以打折

我做了這個菜就來
我看完了這個節目就去打包

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

() 你想這三個人在哪裡說話？

a. 餐廳櫃台

b. 旅館櫃台

c. 電話裡

() 這兩個小姐要做什麼？

a. 住旅館

b. 吃早飯

c. 打電話

() 小姐要的是什麼？

a. 有兩張床的雙人房

b. 有一張床的雙人房

c. 她沒說

() 這兩個小姐怎麼決定的？

a. 打電話另外再找

b. 去別的地方吃飯

c. 住在這裡

() 這兩個小姐要付多少錢？

a. 一個晚上兩千四百塊

b. 一個晚上一千八百塊

c. 一個晚上兩千塊

() 你想這兩個小姐現在要去哪裡？

a. 一樓

b. 二樓

c. 三樓

Notes

1. The difference between “計畫” and “打算” is that “計畫” is more serious, more formal, while “打算” may be just something that comes to one’s mind without further consideration.
2. 花蓮 refers to 花蓮縣 (Huālián Xiàn, County of Hualian), which is the largest county on Taiwan. Its capital is 花蓮市, the biggest city on the east coast of Taiwan. The area of 花蓮縣 is one eighth of Taiwan island. Around 23% of its population are aborigines. Since the Pacific Ocean is on its east, and mountains are on its west, the scenery is beautiful. The most famous spot in this county is 太魯閣國家公園 (Tàilǔgé Guójiā Gōngyuán, Taroko National Park). It was established in November 1986 as the fourth national park on Taiwan and is known for its high mountains and marble gorges.
3. 青年活動中心 is a place where people, usually students, can engage in all kinds of activities. There are many 青年活動中心 in Taiwan, either in the mountains or by the seaside. They are run by 青年救國團 (Qīngnián Jiùguótuán), the Youth Corps of the Republic of China, which is an organization coordinated by 中國國民黨 (Guómíndǎng, KMT). It organizes and sponsors many activities for students during their summer and winter vacations. Therefore 青年活動中心 are built to accommodate people who take part in the activities. When there are no activities, these 青年活動中心 are open to the public. Since they are not private, they are cheaper than private hotels.
4. “交通” is usually translated as “traffic,” but it is not quite the same. For example, the English sentence “There is a lot of traffic on the road.” cannot be translated as “路上有很多交通。” It should be “路上有很多車。” When a Chinese asks “交通方便嗎？” he/she is asking “Are there means of transportation available so that it will be easy to get around?”

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

台生：家明，你暑假要去哪里旅行？有没有计划？

家明：我打算去东部。你呢？

台生：我想在家休息。

家明：我听说花莲海边很漂亮，你去过没有？

台生：我去过好几次了，你打算什么时候去？

家明：我想一放假就去，那里住的地方好找吗？

台生：旅馆很多，价钱也不贵。单人房一个晚上七百块。不过你最好先打电话订房间。

家明：你的意思是怕订不到？

台生：对啊！放假的时候人多，晚了就客满了，订不到了。噢，对了。订不到旅馆可以去住青年活动中心，比一般旅馆更便宜，还有团体房，一个人三百块。

家明：从台北到花莲去，交通方便吗？

我自己开车去，行不行？

台生：花莲离台北不远，虽然可以自己开车去，可是路不太好开。很容易累。

家明：那坐飞机呢？

台生：坐飞机又贵，票又不好买。到花莲的火车每天有七、八班。你坐火车去，又舒服，又方便，三个小时就到了。

家明：花莲的天气怎么样？

台生：花莲的天气一年四季都比台北好。夏天的气温差不多三十度，可是有的时候有台风。你去以前，最好听听气象预报。

家明：谢谢你。明天下了课我就去买车票。

Exercises

I. Let's compare two places.

Divide the students into groups of two and let them compare their recent travels including place, climate, transportation, hotel, cost, and sights. After comparing, one student should report the conclusions to the class.

Patterns May Be Used : 跟……比起來，

NP₁/ VP₁ 有/沒有 (NP₂/ VP₂) 那麼 +SV，

NP₁/ VP₁ 比 NP₂/ VP₂ + SV,

NP₁/ VP₁ 比 NP₂/ VP₂ 更 SV，

NP₁ 跟 NP₂ 一樣 (+SV)

例如：跟花蓮比起來，台北的天氣比較不好。

台北的風景沒有花蓮的漂亮。

去花蓮坐火車比坐飛機舒服。

花蓮的旅館比台北的便宜一點。

去花蓮的飛機票比去台北的更難買。

放假的時候，花蓮的人跟台北的人一樣多。

II. Plans for a trip

To prepare for the activity, the teacher asks students to think about where they would go for a week's vacation. Students may use outside materials to help them plan. During class, groups of three or four discuss where they want to go and what they want to do there. If someone in the group has a different opinion, he/she must say so and offer another place explaining why his/her choice is better. Please use “不但……也……”, or “又……又……” sentences to explain reasons. After discussion, one student should present the conclusion to the class.

例如：我們去花蓮好不好？聽說花蓮不但風景好，天氣也很舒服。

我們坐飛機去好不好？我覺得坐飛機又快又方便。

我們最好住青年活動中心，因為不但房租便宜，也可以認識很多新朋友。

III. Making rules

Divide students into groups of three or four and have them discuss starting a club or society. They should discuss the club's name and membership. Chinese should be used during the discussion, using such phrases as “……才可以參加”. Every group must set at least five conditions for membership and write them on the poster prepared by the teacher. Then each group's conditions will be hung on the wall for class discussion. Students may ask the teacher for help with unfamiliar vocabulary.

例如：高的人，一百六十公分以上的人才可以參加。

會說中文的人，我們才歡迎。
喜歡喝茶的人才能來。
kǎo(考)試七十分以上的人才可以進來。

IV. Role play

1. Groups of Two: One student plays the husband, the other plays the wife. The husband wants to spend his holiday resting at home but the wife wants to go abroad, so they start to argue. The two students should act out what the couple would say.
2. Two friends go traveling and are about to run out of money by the second week. When they arrive at a place, they look for a hotel and inquire at three or four hotels, but all the cheap rooms are full. They do not have enough money for a single room. What should they do? Please act out for the class what you think they will say.

V. What should they do?

After the students have acted out the first role play above, divide the class into two groups, each group with one student who has just acted on opposing teams (i.e. husband and wife). The other students act as consultants and offer opinions on the action taken during the role play. There will probably be some differing views. After discussion, students should present their conclusions to the entire class. Then do the same with the second role play. The students should try their best to use the vocabulary and sentence patterns they have learned.

Reading Comprehension

我跟妹妹一年以前開始計畫暑假一起去歐洲旅行。因為我參加過一次旅行團，覺得不太好玩，而且暑假裡的旅行團都很大，差不多都是二十個人以上，一定很麻煩，所以這次我們要自己去。我們打算先去法國再去義大利。雖然放假的時候旅行的人多，旅館很快就客滿了，可是我們不怕訂不到房間，因為我們的法國朋友可以先幫我們訂。

今年夏天，我們到了法國，一下飛機就看見我們的法國朋友來接我們。她訂的旅館離火車站很近，不但方便，也很便宜。我們在法國參觀了很多有名的地方，也吃了不少法國菜。我們覺得法國又浪漫又漂亮，差一點不想走了。可是因為怕簽證過期，兩個星期以後，我們跟法國朋友說了再見，就上了到義大利的火車。跟法國比起來，義大利的天氣熱一點，不過氣溫沒有台北這麼高，

很舒服。義大利真是一個有特色的國家，一定要參觀了這裡的古跡才能知道歐洲的歷史有多老。

Additional Vocabulary :

開 shǐ (始): to start; to begin 好玩: to be fun

érqiě (而且): moreover; besides lìshǐ (歷史): history

Questions:

1. 為什麼這次我不要參加旅行團？
2. 我們怕訂不到旅館嗎？為什麼？
3. 我們的旅館怎麼樣？
4. 我們喜歡法國嗎？你怎麼知道？
5. 我們為什麼只能在法國玩兩個星期？
6. 義大利的天氣怎麼樣？
7. 為什麼要參觀義大利的古跡？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “滿意” means?
a) full of meaning b) meaning is sufficient c) to be satisfied
2. What do you think “特價” means?
a) a special price b) a unique price c) a special offering

Authentic Materials

I. 旅遊廣告

浪漫法國十天遊 2000年最熱門行程
心動不如馬上行動！

坐TGV子彈列車 • 全程市區旅館 • 美式早餐

巴黎(二天), 馬賽, 里昂, 坎城, 尼斯

乘快車 看古堡 品名酒 嚐法國菜 徜徉海邊

出發日期: 7/16. 7/22 8/4. 13. 20 (7/22團已滿)

行遍天下 旅行社 (02) 2393-4949 · 2393-1688

1. 你想這是什麼？
2. 這是去哪裡旅行？多少天？
3. 這個旅行團要去哪些地方？
4. 這個旅行團有哪些活動？
5. 什麼時候旅行團出國？那是哪一季？
6. 如果你要參加，你知道費用多少嗎？如果不知道，你應該怎麼辦？

II. 青年活動中心價目表

八仙山青年活動中心			
A. 住宿：			
套房	三床	可住4人	2000元
套房	二單床	2人	1650元
	雙人床		
團體房	榻榻米	16人	165元/人
B. 餐飲：			
早餐	合菜一桌400元(10人份)、客飯一份40元		
午晚餐	合菜一桌1500元(10人份)、客飯一份80元		

1. 「價目表」是什麼東西？
2. 如果有一家人，爸爸、媽媽跟兩個小孩一起星期五到這裡來，他們最好住什麼樣的房間？一個晚上多少錢？
3. 這家人吃一次早飯要付多少錢？
4. 如果兩個朋友一起來這裡，他們住什麼樣的房間比較舒服？
5. 如果你的錢不多，你最好住什麼樣的房間？一個晚上多少錢？

第三單元 休閒活動

Unit 3 Leisure Activities

Key Study Points

Lesson 5: discussing plans for leisure activities / the names of different activities / setting the time to meet / asking questions tactfully / conceding / mentioning something indefinite

Lesson 6: talking about camping equipment / urging someone to do something / sighing about the level of something / using rhetorical questions / assigning work / describing something / disposing of something

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 5

休閒活動，運動，保齡球，溜冰，
慢跑，下棋，電動玩具，看，
露營，烤肉，游泳，健行，約好，
網球，然後，KTV，記得，
記錯，釣魚，本來，後來，花草，
樹木，只好，禮拜，晴天，好玩，
主意，集合，出發，改變，聯絡，
大哥大，號碼

沒有什麼 (SV 的+) NP
得/要看
不知道……
約好 (V 好)
本來
後來
只好
什麼 (indefinite)

Lesson 6

快，路線，條，忍耐，平，背包，
背，水果，鍋子，罐頭，帳篷，
搭，生火，提水，老大，打開，
收音機，好聽，音樂，棒，
錄音帶，火柴，打火機，急，
踢翻，走(away)，底下，安全，
危險，速食麵，煮，睡袋，手電筒

快 V
好(Adv) + SV
不是……嗎？
S + 來/去 + VO(non-directional)
SV-SV(repetition of mono-syllabic SV)
S + 把 NP + V 到 + PW 來/去
拿走(V 走)

第五課 你週末都做些什麼？

Lesson 5 What Do You Do on the Weekends?



5

老馬：小張，最近忙嗎？

小張：還好¹，沒有什麼特別的事。

老馬：週末你都做些什麼？你喜歡運動嗎？

小張：我常跟女朋友去打保齡球、溜冰²、慢跑。有的時候
在家下下棋，打打電動玩具。

老馬：噢，你們好像不太喜歡去外面活動。

小張：也不是，那得看時間跟天氣。我們常去爬山、露營、
烤肉，有的時候去海邊游泳。

老馬：這個週末我跟太太、孩子要去健行。不知道你們有沒

有興趣一起去？

小張：對不起，我跟我女朋友約好了去打網球，然後去KTV

唱歌。我記得你要跟小錢去釣魚的。

老馬：不是，你記錯了。我本來是要去打網球，後來孩子說，

老師要他們去山上認識一些花草、樹木，我只好先帶

他們上山，下禮拜再去打網球。

小張：這幾天都是晴天，週末的天氣應該也不錯，出去走走

也好。³我去問問我女朋友要不要跟你們一起去。

老馬：好啊，人多好玩。我太太、孩子也愛唱歌，我們下山

以後，可以去KTV唱歌。

小張：這個主意不錯，我女朋友一定願意去。我們在哪裡集合？

幾點出發？

老馬：禮拜六早上七點在火車站門口集合，七點十分出發。

小張：好，就這樣，如果有什麼改變的話，我再跟你聯絡。

我有你的大哥大⁴號碼，不怕找不到你。

Vocabulary

5

1. 休閒活動 xiūxián huódòng N: leisure activities (M: 種、xiàng 項 item)

放假的時候，你喜歡做什麼樣的休閒活動？爬山還是看電影？

What kind of leisure activities do you like to do during your vacation? Hiking in the mountains or watching movies?

休閒鞋 xiūxiánxié N: casual shoes; sneakers (M: 雙)

小王喜歡穿休閒鞋逛街，因為比較舒服。

Little Wang likes to wear sneakers to stroll because they are more comfortable.

2. 運動 yùndòng N/V: exercise; sport/ to exercise (M: 種、xiàng 項 item)

1) 你平常做什麼運動？打球，還是爬山？

2) 不運動的人容易老。

1) What exercise do you normally do? Playing balls or mountain-hiking?

2) People who do not exercise get old easily.

3. 保齡球 bǎolíngqiú N: bowling (M: 個、局)

小張保齡球打得很好，一局可以打一百六十分。

Little Zhang bowls very well. He can bowl 160 a game.

4. 溜冰 liū//bīng VO/N: to skate/ice skating

1) 冬天的時候我喜歡去溜冰，一個月一定要溜一次。

2) 這次的溜冰比賽，誰贏了？

1) In winter I like to go skating, I must skate once a month.

2) Who won the skating competition this time?

溜 liū V: to slip; to slide; sledding

我們住在二樓。每次下樓，媽媽要我走下去，可是我都溜下去。

We live on the second floor. When I go downstairs, Mom tells me to walk down, but I slide down every time.

冰 bīng N: ice (M: 塊)

5. 慢跑 mànǎo V/N: to jog/jogging

跑 pǎo V: to run

我每天早上去慢跑，跑一個小時再回家準備上班。

I jog for an hour every morning, then return home to get ready for work.

6. 下棋 xià//qí VO: to play chess

這盤棋已經下了一個小時了，還不知道誰會贏。

This game of chess has already lasted an hour, and it's still not known who will win yet.

7. 電動玩具 diàndòng wánjù N: video game (M: 個)

電動 diàndòng Att: electrical-controlled

這個門是電動門，你不必自己開。

This is an electric door. You do not need to open it yourself.

玩具 wánjù N: toy (M: 個)

8. 看 kàn V: to depend on

能不能參加這個旅行團，要看我的錢夠不夠，夠就去，不夠就不去。

Whether or not I can join this tour group depends on if I have enough money. If I have enough, I will go; if not, I won't go.

9. 露營 lùyíng VO/N: to go camping/camping

1) 我露過兩次營，第一次在海邊，第二次在山上。

2) 露營是一種很好的休閒活動，可是要帶的東西太多了，很麻煩。

1) I have been camping twice, the first time was at the seashore, and the second was in the mountains.

2) Camping is a very good leisure activity, but taking along so many things is really a bother.

10. 烤肉 kǎoròu VO/N: to roast or BBQ/BBQ (M: 片)

1) 我們明天要去烤肉。肉，你買了沒有？

2) 你餓不餓？吃一片烤肉吧。

1) We want to go BBQ tomorrow. Did you buy the meat yet?

2) Are you hungry? Eat a piece of BBQ.

烤 kǎo V: to roast; bake; broil

雞烤好了，可以吃了。

The chicken is roasted, you can eat it now.

11. 游泳 yóuyǒng VO/N: to swim/swimming

1) 今天下午我要跟王家明比賽游泳，看誰游得遠。

2) 我最喜歡的運動是游泳。

1) This afternoon Wang Jiaming and I are having a swimming race to see who can swim the farthest.

2) Swimming is my favorite sport.

游 yóu V: to swim

12. 健行 jiànxíng V/N: to hike/hiking

1) 海邊這條路風景很好，來健行的人很多。

2) 我們學校這個週末的活動是健行。

1) This route along the beach is very beautiful, many people come hiking here.

2) Our school's activity this weekend is a hike.

13. 約好 yuēhǎo RC: to have arranged; to have an agreement; to have made an appointment

我跟小陳打算這個週末去打籃球，我們已經約好了星期天早上八點學校見。

Little Chen and I plan to go play basketball this weekend. We have already arranged to meet at the school at 8:00 Sunday morning.

14. 網球 wǎngqiú N: tennis (M: 個)
網 wǎng N: net (M: 張)

15. 然後 ránhòu Adv: then

我們先看氣象預報，然後再決定這個週末要不要去露營。

Let's look at the weather report first, then decide if we will to go camping this weekend.

16. KTV N: karaoke singing parlor (M: 家)

17. 記得 jìdé RC: to remember

王老師，好久不見了。你還記得我嗎？

Teacher Wang, it has been a long time. Do you still remember me?

18. 記錯 jìcuò RC: to remember incorrectly

我們約的是這個星期三啊？哎呀，對不起，我記錯了。

Did we arrange to meet this Wednesday? Gash, I'm sorry. I remembered incorrectly.

19. 釣魚 diào//yú VO: to go fishing

爸爸很喜歡釣魚，可是不太會釣，常常都釣不到魚。

Dad really likes fishing, but he is not very good at it. He often does not catch any fish.

- 釣 diào V: to fish; to lure

20. 本來 běnlái MA: originally

他本來不想參加這次的露營，昨天晚上聽說王小姐也要去，他就決定去了。

Originally, he didn't plan to join this camping trip. Yesterday evening when he heard that Miss Wang wanted to go, he decided to join.

21. 後來 hòulái MA: afterwards; later

以前他說要學中文，可是後來沒學，你知道為什麼嗎？

Before, he said he wanted to study Chinese, but later he didn't study it. Do you know why?

22. 花草 huācǎo N: flowers and plants
 花 huā N: flower (M: duǒ 朵 stem)
 草 cǎo N: plant; grass (M: kē 棵 stem)
23. 樹木 shùmù N: trees
 樹 shù N: tree (M: kē 棵 tree)
24. 只好 zhǐhǎo Adv: no other alternative, the only thing to do
 我本來計畫要去花蓮玩，可是颱風要來了，只好等颱風走了再說。
 The original plan was to go to Hualian on an outing, but a typhoon is coming. I have no choice but to wait for the typhoon to pass and then we'll decide.
25. 禮拜 lǐbài N: week (M: 個)
 禮拜天 lǐbàitiān N: Sunday (M: 個)
 禮拜日 lǐbàirì N: Sunday (M: 個)
26. 晴天 qíngtiān N: clear day (M: 個)
 這個地方冬天很少下雨，差不多都是晴天。
 It does not rain much here in the winter time. The days are mostly clear.
27. 好玩 hǎowán SV: to be fun
 我要去打籃球，可是一個人不好玩，你們都跟我去吧。
 I want to go play basketball, but it's not fun to play alone. Why don't you all come with me?
28. 主意 zhǔyì N: idea; suggestion (M: 個)
 我們先去買電影票，再去吃飯，然後再回來看電影。你看這個主意怎麼樣？
 Let's go buy the movie tickets first, then go eat, then come back to watch the movie. How do you feel about this idea?
29. 集合 jǐhé V: to gather; to meet
 這個禮拜天王老師要帶我們去健行。八點在學校集合，晚來的人得自己去。
 Teacher Wang is going to take us on a hike this Sunday. We will meet at the school at 8:00. People who come late have to go by themselves.
30. 出發 chūfā V: to depart; to set out
 我們的旅行團三月二號從台北出發。
 Our tour group departs from Taipei on March 2nd.

31. 改變 gǎibiàn V/N: to change/change (M: 種、xiàng 項 item)

- 1) 你剛剛說要去釣魚，現在說要去溜冰，你的主意改變得真快。
- 2) 台北這幾年的改變很大，我都找不到我以前住的房子了。

- 1) You just said you wanted to go fishing, now you say you want to go ice skating. Your ideas change really quickly.
- 2) There have been really big changes in Taipei in recent years, I cannot even find the house where I used to live.

改 gǎi V: to change; to alter; to correct

你這個字寫錯了，怎麼還沒改？

This character of yours is written wrong. Why haven't you corrected it?

變 biàn V: to change

- 1) 他已經搬家了。地址、電話都變了。

- 2) 今天天氣變得真快。早上還是晴天，下午就下雨了。

- 1) He has already moved. His address and telephone number have all changed.

- 2) The weather changed very quickly today. This morning it was still clear, then it rained in the afternoon.

32. 聯絡 liánluò V: to contact

我好久沒跟他聯絡了，不知道他現在在做什麼。

I haven't been in touch with him for a long time. I wonder what he is doing now.

33. 大哥大 dàgēdà N: cellular phone (M: 個)

請把你大哥大的號碼告訴我，這樣，有的時候要是你不在家，我也可以聯絡到你。

Please tell me your cellular phone number, then if sometimes you are not at home, I can still contact you.

34. 號碼 hàomǎ N: number (M: 個)

你記得不記得你的電話號碼？不記得怎麼填表？

Do you remember your phone number? If you don't, how are you going to fill out the form?

Grammar

1. 沒有什麼特別的事。 Nothing special.; No special activity.

Explanation: In the “沒(VP)什麼(SV 的+) NP” sentence pattern, the “沒(VP)什麼” indicates that the speaker feels the NP is not important, or the amount is very small and not worth mentioning.

王：昨天來看球賽的人多不多？

李：因為這兩隊都沒有名，所以_____。

王：你晚飯怎麼吃這麼多？

李：我中午太忙，_____。

王：這個週末一起去看電影，好不好？

李：我不想去，最近_____。

王：你這封信寫了這麼多，寫了些什麼？

李：_____，我告訴我媽一些學校的事。

沒吃什麼東西
沒什麼人來看

沒什麼好看的電影
沒寫什麼

5

2. 那得看時間跟天氣。 That depends on the time and weather.

Explanation: The “看” here means “it is up to...” or “it depends on...,” and indicates that whether the thing mentioned previously will stand or not has to be decided by the thing following “看”. “得” or “要” can be used before “看”. “看” is followed by a short sentence. The predicate of this short sentence should be a question word or A-not-A structure; if the context is clear, the predicate can be omitted.

王：麻婆豆腐好不好吃？

李：那_____。喜歡辣的人就說好吃。

王：去銀行去辦事，一定要帶圖章嗎？

李：不一定，有的要，有的不要，_____。

王：電視上的籃球比賽，你每次都看嗎？

李：不一定，_____，如果是NBA我一定看。

王：我想租房子住，平常押金怎麼算？

李：不一定，_____。

得看你要辦什麼事
要看房東

要看是哪一隊比賽
得看你喜不喜歡吃辣的

Additional Vocabulary

不一定: not necessarily

3. 不知道你們有沒有興趣一起去？ I wonder if you are interested in going with us.

Explanation: The “不知道……” pattern is followed by a whole question, and indicates a) the speaker brings up a question indirectly, hoping the other party will answer. b) the speaker brings up something he/she is concerned or curious about, which the listener might not be able to answer. The subject of the pattern is “我”, that is the speaker, but it should not be uttered, otherwise the sentence becomes a statement, and the meaning is different.

a)

李老師：王家明，你在我辦公室外面看什麼？

王家明：噢，李老師，_____？我有幾個問題想問你。

王：小李，聽說你要搬家了。

李：是啊，你有車，_____？

王：老師今天說的這本書真的很好看。

李：你已經看過了！_____？

王：你暑假要去歐洲旅行啊？我也想出去玩玩。

李：我們這個旅行團還有位子，_____？

不知道你想不想跟我們一起去
不知道能不能借我看看

不知道你願不願意幫我搬家
不知道你現在有沒有空

b)

王：明天是你女朋友的生日啊？你買了什麼東西給她？

李：我買了一件襯衫給她，_____。

弟弟：哥哥，我餓了，你餓不餓？

哥哥：我也餓了。_____。

王：我們現在去看老陳，好不好？

李：好啊，可是我們沒先告訴他，_____。

王：小李，你在想什麼？

李：我女朋友昨天到歐洲去了，_____。

不知道她現在在做什麼
不知道他在不在家

不知道家裡有沒有東西吃
不知道她會不會喜歡

4. 我跟我女朋友約好了去打網球。

I have arranged to play tennis with my girlfriend.

Explanation: The “約好(V好)” is a resultative verb compound, with the ending “好” indicating the action has been completed and it is satisfactory. The words that have been studied which can be used in this structure are: 包, 穿, 點, 定, 放, 換, 看, 關, 領, 買, 念, 弄, 說, 算, 填, 貼, 洗, 寫, 想, 找, 租, 做, 計畫, 集合, 聯絡, etc. Most of these compounds are actual type, the potential type being useless often.

王：你們下個月要去花蓮，打算住在哪裡？

李：旅館已經_____。我們在「花蓮大飯店」訂了一個雙人房。

王：你要的東西都買了嗎？我們去算帳吧。

李：等一下，我還_____。你知道可樂在哪裡？

王：你要出國旅行，錢換了沒有？

李：昨天就_____，沒問題。

太太：下星期我們要請客，時間、地點，你都跟他們說了嗎？

先生：你放心，我已經都_____。(聯絡)

5. 我本來是要去打高爾夫球，後來孩子說……

I originally planned to play golf, then my child said...

Explanation: “本來” means originally, or at first, but the implication is that the situation has changed for some reason. Therefore the sentence with 本來 must be followed by a sentence stating the actual situation.

王：現在你的中國話說得很好了。

李：那要謝謝我的老師，我_____，現在說得跟你差不多了。

王：哎呀，你變了很多，我差一點不認識你了。

李：是啊，我_____，這兩年長高了。

王：小張現在是你的男朋友了啊？你以前說你不喜歡他。

李：我 _____，後來我覺得他還不錯。

王：你說你要拿照片給我的，帶來了嗎？

李：我 _____，可是接了一個電話就忘了。

本來覺得他很奇怪
本來很矮

本來一句話都不會說
本來記得的

Additional Vocabulary
zhǎng (長): to grow

6. 我本來是要去打高爾夫球，後來孩子說老師要他們去山上……

I originally planned to play golf, then my child said the teacher wanted them to go up into the mountains...

Explanation: The word “後來” can only be used for events which happened in the past. The time between this event and the previous one is not certain, maybe long, maybe short, and there may be something happening between these two events which need not be mentioned. On the other hand, “然後” indicates one thing happens after another, the intermission being short. It is often used for future or habitual events, however, it can be used for past events as well. E.g. 昨天晚上我們先去吃飯，然後去看電影，看完電影以後就回家了。(Last night, we went to eat first, then went to see a movie, after the movie then we went home.)

王：我們去喝酒，要不要找老趙一起去？

李：不要。有一次，他喝多了，他太太很生氣，_____。

王：這本書我現在看到一半，書裡那個女老師，後來怎麼樣了，你告訴我好不好？

李：後來_____。

王：上個禮拜你說電腦壞了，現在怎麼樣了？

李：本來壞了，_____，現在沒問題了。

王：上個週末，你們在家嗎？

李：我們出去了，先去逛街，_____。

她就不教書了，去開飯館了
後來我們就不好意思再找他了

後來去看電影了
後來小王幫我弄好了

7. 我只好先帶他們上山，下禮拜再去打高爾夫。

I can only take them to the mountains first, and play golf next week.

Explanation: The word “只好” indicates there is no other alternative and that something can only be done in a certain way. There is a tone of reluctance.

王：昨天晚上你是怎麼回來的？

李：太晚了，公車也沒有了，我_____。

王：你搬家搬好了沒有？

李：本來我想明天搬，可是颱風要來了，_____。

王：你昨天給小林打電話了，她怎麼樣？好一點了沒有？

李：我打給她的時候，沒有人接，_____。

王：我們約好了八點集合，現在已經八點半了，小高怎麼還沒來？

李：車馬上就開了，_____。

我只好今天再打

只好走路回家

只好不等她了

只好坐 jìchéngchē (計程車) 回家

只好下個週末再搬

只好我們先走了

Additional Vocabulary

開: to leave; to set out

8. 如果有什麼改變的話，我再跟你聯絡。

If there is any change, I will contact you.

Explanation: The “什麼” here does not indicate a question, rather it indicates some person, thing or place, that is not known, not clear, that can not or need not be told. Besides “什麼”, other question words can be used similarly, such as 誰 (someone), 哪裡 (somewhere), and 怎麼 (somehow).

王：我們今天一天都不在家，不知道有沒有人打電話來？

李：我已經聽過 dá (答) 錄機了，沒有_____ 打電話來。

王：逛街逛了這麼久，我們回去吧。

李：我餓了，我們先去吃點_____ 再回去吧。

王：老錢買的這個東西真特別！

李：我好像在_____ 看過這個東西。是不是在老張家？

王：小高生氣了。

李：是啊，剛剛還在跟我們說話，不知道_____ 的，她就生氣了。

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

() 你想這兩個人在哪裡說話？

a. 旅行社

b. 度假中心

c. 電話裡

() 這位先生為什麼要跟這位小姐說話？

a. 他要知道為什麼這家度假中心比較貴

b. 他要約小姐去KTV唱歌

c. 他要去那裡游泳

() 這位小姐說這家度假中心怎麼樣？哪個不對？

a. 費用一點都不貴

b. 這家度假中心在海邊，可以去海邊游泳

c. 一般度假中心有的設施他們都有

() 這家度假中心沒有什麼？

a. 露營區

b. 保齡球館

c. 高爾夫球場

() 這位先生的小孩能不能在這家度假中心的游泳池游泳？

a. 可以

b. 不可以

c. 沒有說，不知道

() 這位先生怎麼決定？

a. 他要寄信給這家度假中心

b. 他不喜歡這家度假中心

c. 跟家人談了以後再決定

Notes

1. “還好” means “Okay,” “Not so bad.” This “還” contains a tone of concession.
2. This “溜冰” means “to skate in a skating rink.” It only snows in high mountains in Taiwan, therefore there was only roller skating before. Then ice skating was brought in and named “滑冰(huábīng)”, but some people refer to “溜冰” as both ice skating and roller skating, and use “冰刀(bīngdāo, shoe with blade)” and “輪鞋(lúnxié, shoe with rollers)” to distinguish the two.
3. KTV is Karaoke TV, which means Karaoke joined with television. Karaoke is a form of entertainment begun in Japan. “Kara” in Japanese means “empty,” while “oke” is short for “orchestra.” Therefore “Karaoke” means “an orchestra without people.” It is a special tape player, which plays a music cassette with only instrumentals while the participant sings into a microphone. Both the music and the singing are emitted from the same speaker system and acoustic enhancements make the voice sound better. When Karaoke joined together, visual images can be shown on the television screen along with lyrics to the songs. The KTV businesses in Taiwan provide rooms with KTV equipment for customers to rent to sing-along. They also provide food and drinks.
4. “出去走走也好” means “It is fine to go out and to do some activity.” This “也” denotes a tone of giving in.
5. “大哥大” is the colloquial form for “行動電話(xíngdòng diànhuà)”, which means “portable telephone,” and “手機” refers to the phone set of a portable telephone. It is said that the term “大哥大” was brought in from Hong Kong. The first person who used a portable telephone was a famous movie star, and he is usually addressed as “大哥” by people around him. His portable telephone is named “大哥大”.
6. “Att” stands for “attributive.” An attributive is like an adjective but can only be put in front of a noun to modify the noun. It cannot be put after an adverb. For example, “男” is an attributive, so it is correct to say “男孩子”, but it is incorrect to say “他很男”.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

老马：小张，最近忙吗？

小张：还好，没有什么特别的事。

老马：周末你都做些什么？你喜欢运动吗？

小张：我常跟女朋友去打保龄球、溜冰、慢跑。有的时候在家下下棋，打打电动玩具。

老马：噢，你们好像不太喜欢去外面活动。

5 小张：也不是，那得看时间跟天气。我们常去爬山、露营、烤肉，有的时候去海边游泳。

老马：这个周末我跟太太、孩子要去健行，不知道你们有没有兴趣一起去？

小张：对不起，我跟我女朋友约好了去打网球，然后去KTV唱歌。我记得你要跟小钱去钓鱼的。

老马：不是，你记错了。我本来是要去打网球，后来孩子说，老师要他们去山上认识一些花草、树木，我只好先带他们上山，下礼拜再去打网球。

小张：这几天都是晴天，周末的天气应该也不错，出去走走也好。我去问问我女朋友要不要跟你们一起去。

老马：好啊，人多好玩。我太太、孩子也爱唱歌，我们下山以后，可以去KTV唱歌。

小张：这个主意不错。我女朋友一定愿意去。我们在哪里集合？几点出发？

老马：礼拜六早上七点在火车站门口集合，七点十分出发。

小张：好，就这样。如果有什么改变的话，我再跟你联络。我有你的大哥大号码，不怕找不到你。

第六課 露營

Lesson 6 Camping



6

小高：到了沒有啊？走了這麼久了，怎麼還沒到？

小張：到了，到了¹。就在前面²。別再叫了，快走吧。
kuài

老王：今天走的路線遠了一點兒，請你們忍耐一下，可是這

條路比較平，比較好走啊。

小高：我背包裡的水果好重。現在可以放下來了。

小李：我背的鍋子跟罐頭也不輕啊。嗯，這塊地方不錯。

帳篷 就搭在這兒吧³。

老王：我來搭帳篷。小張，你來幫我。小高，你不是很會生

火嗎？你去生火。小李，你去提水。怎麼樣？

小張、小高、小李：好啊。老大，都聽你的。 4

小高：我先打開收音機，聽聽看有什麼好聽的音樂，然後再
 來生火。

小張：我這兒有一卷很棒的錄音帶，聽這個吧⁵。

小高：好吧⁵。哎呀，我忘了帶火柴。

老王：沒關係，我的打火機借你。

小張：這是誰租的帳篷？怎麼這麼難弄？

小李：你別急，慢慢弄。時間還早。

老王：小李，你怎麼把水提到這裡來了？我差一點踢翻了。

小李：對不起，對不起，我馬上拿走。

小張：你拿到樹底下去，那裡比較安全。

小高：火生好了。我也已經把速食麵⁶拿出來了。現在就要
 煮嗎⁷？
 zhǔ •

老王：你先把背包裡的青菜拿出來，洗一洗。我帳篷搭好了，就來幫你⁷。小張，你可以把睡袋跟手電筒拿過來了。

Vocabulary

1. 快 kuài Adv: quickly; hurry up; make haste

車來了，快上車吧！

The car is here. Get in quickly.

2. 路線 lùxiàn N: route (M: 條)

A: 從日本飛到美國，要幾個小時？

B: 那得看你的路線。

A: How many hours does it take to fly from Japan to the USA?

B: It depends on the route.

3. 條 tiáo M: for something long and narrow

4. 忍耐 rěnnài V: to practice patience; restrain oneself

我今天穿的新鞋子很不舒服，可是沒有別的鞋子可以換，只好忍耐一下了。

The new shoes I'm wearing today are really uncomfortable, but there are no other shoes I can change into. It's best that I just be patient.

- 耐心 nàixīn N: patience

我們的老師很有耐心，要是我們不懂，他可以說好幾次都不會生氣。

Our teacher is very patient. If we don't understand, he'll say it many times without getting mad.

5. 平 píng SV/RE: to be even; flat; smooth

1) 這個地方很平，我們在這裡露營吧。

2) 這個桌子沒放平，所以會動。

1) This place is flat. Let's camp here.

2) This table has not been set up straight, so it's wobbly.

6. 背包 bēibāo N: backpack (M: 個)

7. 背 bēi V: to carry on the back

小孩：我們走了這麼久了，我真的不能再走了。

爸爸：好吧，我背你。

Child: We have been walking for so long. I really can't walk anymore.

Dad: All right. I'll carry you on my back.

8. 水果 shuǐguǒ N: fruit (M: 種、個)

9. 鍋子 guō-zi N: pot; pan; cooker (M: 個)

10. 罐頭 guàn·tou/guàntóu N: can; canned goods (M: 種、個)
罐 guàn M: for cans

11. 帳篷 zhàngpéng N: tent (M: 頂)

12. 搭 dā V: to put up; to build

1) 我現在住的地方不是一般的房子，是我自己用樹跟草搭的。

2) 你可以搭三路公車到我家來。

1) The place I am now living is not an ordinary house. I built it up with branches and straw by myself.

2) You can take the #3 bus to come to my house.

13. 生火 shēng//huǒ VO: to make a fire

火生好了沒有？可以烤肉了嗎？

Is the fire ready? Can we BBQ the meat?

火 huǒ N: fire (M: 場合 occasion)

14. 提水 tí//shuǐ VO: to carry water with a bucket

如果我們在這裡露營，要去哪裡提水？

If we camp here, where should we go to get the water?

提 tí V: to carry by a handle

我提了一籃水果去看王老師。王老師說我太客氣了。

I carried a basket of fruit to see Teacher Wang. Teacher Wang said that I was too polite.

15. 老大 lǎodà N: the eldest (child in a family); the master

1) 在我們家，我媽媽是老大，誰都要聽她的。

2) 我沒有哥哥、姊姊，我是老大。

1) In our family, my mother is the “boss.” Everybody has to listen to her.

2) I don't have any older brothers or sisters. I am the eldest.

16. 打開 dǎkāi RC: to turn on

小王回到家，一定先打開燈，再打開電腦，然後打開電視。

When Little Wang comes home, he always turns on the lights first, then the computer, then the television.

17. 收音機 shōuyīnjī N: radio (M: 個、部)

18. 好聽 hǎotīng SV: nice to listen to

這個歌很好聽，你會不會唱？教我，好不好？

This song is nice, can you sing it? Teach me, will you?

19. 音樂 yīnyuè N: music (M: 種、duàn 段 section)

20. 棒 bàng SV: to be great; excellent

小王跟電腦下棋，贏了電腦。真棒！

Little Wang played chess against the computer, and he won. He's great.

21. 錄音帶 lùyīndài N: tape cassette (M: juǎn 卷 roll)

錄音機 lùyīnjī N: tape recorder; cassette player (M: 個、部)

22. 火柴 huǒchái N: match (M: hé 盒 box、gēn 根)

23. 打火機 dǎhuǒjī N: lighter (M: 個)

24. 急 jí SV: to be impatient; to be anxious; to be urgent; in a hurry

1) A: 你好像很急。

B: 對啊！我要用洗手間。這個人進去這麼久了，還不出來！

2) 李先生要我幫他辦護照，不過這件事不急，可以下星期再辦。

1) A: You look anxious.

B: Yes, I need to use the rest room. This person has been inside for so long and hasn't come out yet.

2) Mr. Li wanted me to arrange his passport for him, but this matter is not urgent I can do it next week.

25. 踢翻 tīfān RC: to be kicked over

小林走過來的時候，沒看見我放在地上的茶杯，就踢翻了。

When Little Lin came over, he didn't see the tea cup I had put on the ground, and he kicked it over.

踢 tī V: to kick

我不要跟弟弟一起睡，我怕他踢我。

I don't want to sleep with my little brother, I am afraid that he will kick me.

翻 fān RE/V: to turn (over; up side down, etc.)

1) 弟弟拿書的時候，把桌上的可樂打翻了。

2) 這本書我以前看過，昨天晚上又翻了一下，還是覺得很好看。

1) When little brother took the book, he overturned the cola on the table.

2) I have read this book before, I leafed through it again last night, I still felt it was interesting.

26. 走 zǒu RE: to be away from here, away

A: 你昨天租的那卷錄影帶借我，好不好？

B: 對不起，小李剛剛借走了。

A: Lend me the tape you rented yesterday, will you?

B: I'm sorry. Little Li just borrowed it.

27. 底下 dǐxià PW: below; beneath; under

我把你的鞋放在床底下了。

I put your shoes under the bed.

28. 安全 ānquán SV/N: to be safe; to be secure

1) 在這個地方，晚上十二點以後出去，安全嗎？

2) 聽說這種車有安全的問題，所以買的人很少。

1) In this place, is it safe to go out after twelve o'clock at night?

2) I heard that this kind of car has a security problem, therefore few people bought it.

29. 危險 wēixiǎn SV: to be dangerous

喝了酒開車，非常危險。

It is very dangerous to drink and drive.

30. 速食麵 sùshímiàn N: instant noodles (M: 包、碗)

我喜歡吃速食麵，因為加了熱水就可以吃了，非常方便。

I like to eat instant noodles, because they can be eaten after adding hot water. It is very convenient.

速食 sùshí N: fast food (M: 種)

麵 miàn N: noodles (M: 包、碗)

31. 煮 zhǔ V: to boil; to cook in water

1) 你最好把蛋放在水裡煮三分鐘就拿出來，我覺得這樣最好吃。

2) 我餓了，我們煮飯吧。

1) You'd better take out the egg after it is has been boiled in water for three minutes. I think it tastes best like this.

2) I'm hungry, let's cook a meal.

32. 睡袋 shuìdài N: sleeping bag (M: 個)

33. 手電筒 shǒudiàntǒng N: flashlight; torch (M: 支)

Grammar

1. 別再叫了。快走吧。 Stop whining. Walk quickly.

Explanation: In the pattern “快V”, “快” indicates that the action should be sped up, or the action should be started immediately. The tone is imperative. The adverb “一點兒” can be inserted between “快” and the verb to soften the tone.

王：這麼晚了，是誰啊？

李：是我，小李。外面好冷，你_____。

王：昨天我租了兩卷錄影帶，已經看完了，可是忘了還。

李：你最好_____。三天以內，不必扣錢。

王：我還沒寫完，時間到了沒有？

李：還有五分鐘，你_____。

太太：我的事還沒做完，等一下再吃飯，好不好？

先生：不行，我已經餓了。你_____，做完了，就去吃飯。

孩子：你要我說什麼？我沒拿你的東西啊！

媽媽：真的嗎？你_____，東西在哪裡？

2. 我背包裡的水果好重。 The fruit in my backpack is so heavy.

Explanation: In the pattern “好(Adv) + SV”, the “好” is an adverb, indicating a high level. It means very or so much (this or that SV). It often has a tone of exclamation.

王：你怎麼穿了那麼多衣服？

李：我覺得今天_____，比昨天更冷。

王：昨天那場籃球賽真 jīngcǎi (精采)。

李：對啊！看的人_____，我差一點沒買到門票。

王：昨天的球賽，聽說你們隊贏了。

李：是啊，我們都_____，比完就去喝啤酒 qìngzhù (慶祝)了。

王：老闆怎麼了？我沒看過他那麼兇。

李：就是嘛，他今天_____，我們都好怕。

3. ◎我來搭帳篷。小張，你來幫我。I'll put up the tent. Little Zhang, you help me.

◎你去生火。You go make the fire.

◎小李，你去提水。怎麼樣？Little Li, you go get some water, okay?

Explanation: In the pattern “S + 來/去 + VO”, “來/去” indicates “be going to do something,” and the VO is the thing that is going to be done. “來/去” here is only pointing out whether the speaker feels that this action is far or not, it does not imply direction. If VO₁ and VO₂ appear in one sentence, the speaker is assigning work. When there is no “來/去”, it merely states the action, there is no feeling of desire.

王：你吃飽了沒有？

李：吃飽了。你 _____，我 _____。

王：我們回家吧。車在書店前面。

李：你今天喝太多酒了，我 _____。

王：今天是週末，我們請幾個朋友來吃飯。

李：好啊。你 _____，我 _____。

王：我做飯作得好累，想休息。可是衣服還沒洗呢！

李：那我 _____。

去休息—來洗碗 去外面等我—來付帳 去看電視—來煮 kāfēi (咖啡)
去買菜—來做飯 去打電話找人—去買菜 去開車 去洗

4. 小高，你不是很會生火嗎？Little Gao, aren't you good at making fires?

Explanation: The pattern “不是……嗎？” is a rhetorical question, no reply being expected. The speaker chooses to express his/her doubt in a negative question, because the speaker finds that the facts he/she is already aware of are different from the situation at hand; or the speaker wants to emphasize certainty because he/she thinks the fact is obviously so.

王：這個星期六一起去KTV唱歌，怎麼樣？

李：欸，_____？怎麼不去了呢？

王：我們明天幾點鐘出發？

李：_____？七點半！你怎麼又忘了？

王：你幫我打這封信，好不好？

李：_____？為什麼要我幫你打？

王：我們今天晚上去看電影，怎麼樣？

李：_____？怎麼有空去看電影呢？

我不是跟你說過了嗎
你不是很忙嗎

你不是要跟小錢去釣魚嗎
你不是會打電腦嗎

5. 你別急，慢慢弄。Don't worry, take your time.

Explanation: When describing a person, place, object, or an event, the speaker may repeat the single-syllable stative verb to help the listener better understand. The second syllable of a duplicated single-syllable stative verb can be pronounced with a retroflex ending 'r 兒', in the first tone. E.g. “好好兒” is pronounced as “hǎohāor”. An adverb cannot be put before a duplicated stative verb to modify it. A duplicated single-syllable stative verb can be used to: a) modify the verb. E. g. 你慢慢吃。“Take your time to eat.” The adverbial suffix “·de 地” can be put after a duplicated stative verb, but sometimes it is omitted. b) be the predicate when it is followed by “的”. E.g. 我的男朋友高高的。It means the same as “我的男朋友很高”，but is more vivid, and it may need more description to complete the whole thing. c) modify the noun with a preceding “的”. E.g. 山上有很多高高的樹。d) be the compliment followed by “的”. E.g. 我把門開得大大的。Most of these sentences have some implication, which can be understood from the context.

a) SV-SV(地) + VP

孩子：媽媽，我要跟你一起去買菜。

媽媽：不行，你 gōng (功)課還沒寫完。在家_____。
我馬上就回來。

b) Topic + SV-SV 的

王：我沒見過你的男朋友，他是什麼樣的人？

李：我的男朋友_____，yǎnjīng (眼睛)_____。

王：我好累，想睡覺。

李：哎呀，你的手怎麼_____？今天溫度這麼低，你是不是不舒服？

c) SV-SV 的 + NP

王：你想吃什麼？

李：現在這麼冷，我想喝一碗 _____ 湯。

王：我要把這雙鞋丟了。

李：那雙鞋壞了嗎？ _____ 鞋，你怎麼不要了？

d) V 得 + SV-SV 的

孩子：媽，我想搬出去住。

媽媽：那最好，你最好搬得 _____，我少一點麻煩。

王：你們為什麼不去住旅館？

李：這附近每一家旅館都住得 _____，我們只好睡帳篷了。

好好寫
熱熱的

高高的
好好兒的

大大的
遠遠的

冰冰的
滿滿的

Additional Vocabulary

gōng (功)課: homework

yǎnjīng (眼睛): eyes

6. 你怎麼把水提到這裡來了？ How come you carried the water down here?

Explanation: In the pattern “S + 把 NP + V 到 + PW 來/去”, “到 + PW 來/去” is used as the complement of the “把” sentence. “V 到” must be followed by a place word to point out the location of the NP when the action is ended.

王：電視機跟櫃子都放在客廳，好不好？

李：不好，請你 _____。(搬)

王：你回國的時候，你的東西怎麼辦？

李：我想先 _____。(寄)

兒子：爸，車借我，好不好？

爸爸：對不起，你媽 _____。(開)

太太：你說我們去看電影，孩子怎麼辦？

先生：我們可以 _____。(送)

把車開到學校去了
把櫃子搬到房間去

把孩子送到姊姊那裡去
把書寄到我媽媽那裡去

7. 對不起，對不起，我馬上拿走。 Sorry, sorry. I will take it away immediately.

Explanation: The “拿走(V走)” is a resultative verb compound, the ending “走” indicating leaving this place. The words that have been studied that can be used with this structure are: 搬, 帶, 寄, 開, 借, 弄, 送, 提, etc. Actual type resultative verb compounds with “V走” can be used as the compliments of “把” sentences.

王：洗衣機呢？

李：那個洗衣機壞了，我已經叫人 _____ 了。

王：房子已經租好了，你怎麼還不搬進去？

李：住在那裡的人還 _____，我得等他搬出去。

王：我要走了。

李：別忘了把你的東西 _____。

王：你在貼什麼廣告？

李：我要回國了，很多大的東西都 _____，只好賣了。

王：你的車呢？

李：我 tíng (停)在這裡的啊！誰把我的車 _____ 了？

王：車 tíng (停)在這裡，安全嗎？

李：沒有問題，沒有 yào-shi (鑰匙)，誰都 _____。

王：我週末要跟朋友去露營。你的帳篷能不能借我？

李：對不起，你說得太晚了。家明已經 _____ 了。

借走 沒搬走 搬走 開走 開不走 帶走 帶不走

Additional Vocabulary

tíng (停): to park

yào-shi (鑰匙): key

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

- () 這兩個人正在說什麼？
a. 怎麼生火做飯 b. 這位小姐聽音樂、唱歌的事
c. 這位先生去露營的事
- () 這位小姐去露營了嗎？
a. 跟學生去了 b. 本來要去，後來沒去 c. 沒有說，不知道
- () 這位先生說他在山上做了什麼？
a. 等這位小姐 b. 什麼都不能做 c. 生火做飯
- () 這位先生跟他的朋友為什麼不馬上下山？
a. 他們還沒有吃飯 b. 他們等的小姐還沒來 c. 雨太大了
- () 這位先生跟他的朋友在山上吃什麼？為什麼吃這個？
a. 他們吃罐頭，因為收音機沒電了
b. 他們吃水果跟罐頭，因為不能生火做飯。
c. 他們吃水果，因為山上有很多
- () 這位小姐現在要做什麼？
a. 上山去看小李 b. 打電話給小李 c. 做飯給小李吃

Notes

1. “到了” means “We are there.” This “了” indicates the action will be completed immediately.
2. “就在前面” means “It is right in front of us.” This “就” is used to emphasize that the thing is right there.
3. “帳篷就搭在這兒吧” means “Let us pitch the tent here.” This “就” is used to show consequence — since this place is nice, (then) we pitch the tent here.
4. “老大，都聽你的” means “Big brother, we’ll do whatever you say.” This is a way of making jokes. 老王 does not have to be their big brother. “聽你的” literally means “listen to your (words).” “話(words)” is understood, therefore omitted.
5. “聽這個吧” means “Let’s listen to this (tape).” This “吧” indicates suggestion. The response “好吧” means “Okay.” This “吧” indicates supposition or compromise.
6. “速食麵” means “instant noodles.” It is called “方便麵” in Mainland China. Some people in Taiwan use the term “泡麵(pàomiàn)” for the same thing. “泡(pào)” means “to soak in water.”
7. The “就” in “現在就要煮嗎” and “我帳篷搭好了，就來幫你” both mean “right away.”

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

小高：到了没有啊？走了这么久了，怎么还没到？

小张：到了，到了。就在前面。别再叫了，快走吧。

老王：今天走的路线远了一点儿，请你们忍耐一下，可是这条路比较平，比较好走啊。

小高：我背包里的水果好重。现在可以放下来了。

小李：我背的锅子跟罐头也不轻啊。嗯，这块地方不错。帐篷就搭在这儿吧。

老王：我来搭帐篷。小张，你来帮我。小高，你不是很会生火吗？你去生火。小李，你去提水。怎么样？

小张、小高、小李：好啊。老大，都听你的。

小高：我先打开收音机，听听看有什么好听的音乐，然后再来生火。

小张：我这儿有一卷很棒的录音带，听这个吧。

小高：好吧。哎呀，我忘了带火柴。

老王：没关系，我的打火机借你。

小张：这是谁租的帐篷？怎么这么难弄？

小李：你别急，慢慢弄。时间还早。

老王：小李，你怎么把水提到这里来了？我差一点踢翻了。

小李：对不起，对不起，我马上拿走。

小张：你拿到树底下去，那里比较安全。

小高：火生好了。我也已经把速食面拿出来了。
现在就要煮吗？

老王：你先把背包里的青菜拿出来，洗一洗。我帐篷搭好，就来帮你。小张，你可以把睡袋跟手电筒拿过来了。

Exercises

I. Try to guess

The teacher writes various activities on cards, one activity per card, and distributes the cards to the students. If there are not many students, one student may receive more than one card. The first student takes a card without showing it to anyone and can only say one sentence, e.g.: “This is an outdoor activity.” Then the other students start asking yes or no questions, e.g.: “Can one person play?”, “Is something needed to play?”, or “Is it played in the mountains?”. The first student answers “對” or “不對”. See who can guess the activity first. The teacher records who guesses correctly the most and gives that person a prize. Students who do not make any correct guesses or do not actively participate receive a penalty and must sing a song or do some other performance.

II. What shall we do on the weekend?

Students are divided into teams of two or three and discuss what they can do together on the weekend. First, they talk about what the individuals originally planned to do and what they usually like to do. Then they decide what to do as a group and when they will go.

III. Changes in one's life

Students think about something that has changed their lives. The teacher begins by saying something from his/her own life using, “我本來……後來……”. Then the teacher encourages students to ask questions, asking the students if they have any similar experiences and helping them with any unfamiliar vocabulary. The students then discuss the situation. Then a student tells of his/her experience. This continues until each student has talked about an experience.

IV. Story behind a photo

Each student brings a photo to class (camping, BBQ, skating, fishing, sports, etc.), and explains the photo to the class, i.e., who is in the photo, when it was taken, where it was taken, under what conditions it was taken, why it was taken, etc. The teacher can help with unfamiliar vocabulary.

V. Role play

Two students perform the roles of two friends who made a date to go out to eat and watch a movie, but A's boss wants him/her to work overtime, so he/she has no way to go out to eat and watch the movie. The dialogue should include “本來”, “只好” and “不是……嗎?” and other patterns and vocabulary already learned.

Reading Comprehension

小時候，爸爸覺得我們玩電動玩具玩得太多，沒有什麼運動，所以他一有空就帶我們出去活動。有的時候去打籃球、保齡球，有的時候去游泳、溜冰。我最喜歡跟他去露營。

記得有一次，爸爸帶我跟我的三個朋友去東部的一個山上露營。我們約好了在火車站集合，然後一起坐火車出發。時間到了，張道明還沒來。不知道他是忘了，還是晚了。我們本來不想等了，可是爸爸說要是他來了，找不到我們，一定會氣我們沒等他，我們只好等。差不多半小時以後，他來了。我們才知道他把時間記錯了。

搭好帳篷以後，爸爸看見張道明拿出來一個小電視機。就問他：「你不是到山上來休息，看看花草、樹木的嗎？怎麼把電視機也帶到山上來了？你快把這個東西拿走，我不要看電視。」張道明就說：「對啊！我應該好好兒看看山上的風景，我不看電視了。我去幫他們生火做飯。」後來，我們在山上玩得好高興，差一點不想回家了。

我想再去那裡露一次營，可是爸爸說得看他什麼時候有空。真希望爸爸不要這麼忙。

Additional Vocabulary

才: not ...until

Questions:

1. 爸爸為什麼喜歡帶我們出去活動？
2. 我跟爸爸一起做的活動有哪些？
3. 爸爸帶我們去露營，張道明去了沒有？他怎麼了？
4. 我們願意不願意等張道明？爸爸為什麼要我們等？
5. 張道明把什麼帶到山上去了？爸爸為什麼不高興？
6. 張道明覺得爸爸的話怎麼樣？
7. 為什麼我還想再去山上露營？
8. 爸爸說什麼時候可以再去山上露營？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “改天” means?
a) correct the date b) some other day c) to change the day
2. What do you think “變天” means?
a) a different day b) change of the day c) change of weather
3. What do you think “集郵” means?
a) to collect stamps b) to get together at a post office c) to get the mail

Authentic Materials

I. 活動表

10月10日至 10月12日	9月21日至 9月23日	8月16日至 8月17日	日 期	國立台北大學野外露營社活動表
銀 河 洞	新 山 夢 湖	埔 心 迎 新	活 動 項 目	
政治大學→樟山寺 →迺妙茶館→銀河 洞。	大湖公園→國軍示 範公墓→汐萬路→ 新山夢湖。	台北北門→桃園埔 心。	路 線	
10日14:00	21日08:30	16日13:30	集 合 時 間	
政治大學大門口	大湖公園	台灣汽車客運 公司 北門站	集 合 地 點	
1500	700	800	費 用	
9月30日	9月11日	8月6日	報 名 截 止 日 期	
行爬風 程山景 較健優 短行美 。 , ,	別風名大健 錯景山眾行 過極奇路露 了佳石線營 。 , , , ,	烤肉、露 營。 歡迎新生來	備 註	

1. 這是什麼？哪一個學校的？
2. 第一次的活動在什麼時候？為什麼辦這個活動？
3. 九月二十一號的活動幾點，在哪裡集合？
4. 我想參加十月的活動，我應該怎麼辦？

II. 社區活動中心活動表

大安區活動中心六月份活動				
活動名稱	時間	地點	活動內容	聯絡電話
卡拉OK比賽	6日19時	本中心大禮堂	國語唱歌比賽	2321-9874
陽明山健行	7日8~16時	陽明山	健行、烤肉	2351-7568
電影欣賞	13日19時	本中心603室	「看海的日子」	2351-7568
釣魚、釣蝦	21日14~16時	外雙溪釣蝦場	釣魚、釣蝦	2321-9874
打保齡球	28日14~16時	圓山保齡球場	男女雙打比賽	2351-7568

1. 六月分大安區活動中心有哪些活動？
2. 如果你想去健行，不清楚集合的地點，應該怎麼辦？
3. 如果你想看電影「看海的日子」，可以在六月十三日去哪裡看？
4. 喜歡唱歌的人可以參加大安區的什麼活動？
5. 要是你的保齡球打得很好，可以參加什麼活動？

第四單元 夜生活

Unit 4 Night Life

Key Study Points

Lesson 7: talking about the night market situation and activities: snack bars, stalls, games, fortune telling / talking about unchanged situations / pitiful tone / casual tone / sudden realization

Lesson 8: talking about pubs: drinking, dancing, playing pool, throwing darts / ordering drinks / chatting about popular songs / talking about a group of people in the same place and at the same time doing different things / exaggerated tone

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 7

夜生活，夜市，難得，總是，修理，
要不然，陪，小吃攤，嘗，可惜，
吃不了，炒米粉，隨便，油，旁邊，
擺地攤，攤子，流行，也許，合適，
趕快，熱鬧，那邊，原來，遊戲，
得到，獎品，管，算命，想起來，
客戶，停，接

總是
要不然
可惜
吃不了(V不了)
(S+) V+QW, (S+) 就 V + QW
原來
想起來(V起來)

Lesson 8

酒館，想到，啤酒屋，機會，西式，
考試，氣氛，輕鬆，打牌，跳舞，
在乎，撞球，丟飛鏢，調酒，雞尾酒，
酒單，帥哥，技術，調得出來，
看不懂，藍色夏威夷，生啤酒，熟，
下酒，爆玉米花，可能，連，首，紅，
樂團，太陽，同學，歌星，王菲

想到
VO₁的VO₁，VO₂的VO₂
在乎
調得出來(V得出來)
看不懂(V懂)
連……都……
不是……就是……

第七課 逛夜市

Lesson 7 Taking a Stroll in a Night Market



7

包太太：真難得！我們好久沒一起逛夜市了，¹你總是那麼忙。

包先生：電腦送去修理了，沒辦法工作，要不然還是沒空陪你。

包太太：是啊，所以我特別高興，今天一定要多逛一會兒。

包先生：我記得你最愛吃小吃，這麼多小吃攤，你要吃哪一家？

包太太：每一家我都想嘗一嘗，可惜吃不了那麼多。

先吃一點炒米粉，好不好？

包先生：隨便，你吃什麼，我就吃什麼。²不過這家炒米粉

太油，我們去對面那家。

包太太：那家小吃店旁邊有幾個人在擺地攤，都是賣衣服的，

我們吃完了，就過去看看現在流行什麼樣子的衣服，³
也許可以買到一件合適的。

包先生：那就趕快走吧。

(過了一會兒)

包太太：這裡真熱鬧，那邊怎麼那麼多人？我們過去看看。

(走過去)

包先生：原來他們在玩遊戲。我也來玩一下，看我能得到什麼獎品。

包太太：我沒興趣，我不管你了。⁴你在這裡玩，我去那邊那個攤子算命。

包先生：哎呀！我想起來了。十一點有一個美國客戶要打電話來，⁵我得回去等電話了。⁶

包太太：每次都這樣！好吧，只好下次再來了。⁷你的車停在哪裡？

包先生：前面右轉。你在路口等一下，我開過來接你。

Vocabulary

1. 夜生活 yèshēnghuó N: nightlife

我每天很早就睡覺了，所以不知道這裡的夜生活怎麼樣。

I go to sleep early everyday, so I don't know what the night life here is like.

夜 yè N: night

到花蓮去玩，最好的行程是三天兩夜。

To vacation in Hualian, the best itinerary is three days and two nights.

生活 shēnghuó N/V: life/to live (M: 種)

1) 我在台北認識了很多外國朋友，常常跟他們出去玩。我覺得我現在的生活跟以前很不一樣。

2) 沒有錢就沒有辦法生活得很舒服。

1) I know many foreigners in Taipei and often go out with them. I feel my present life is different from before.

2) Without money, you cannot live comfortably.

2. 夜市 yèshì N: night market (M: 個、chù處 site)

夜市賣的東西比較便宜，所以我喜歡逛夜市，買東西。

Things are cheaper at the night market, so I like to stroll at the night market and buy things.

3. 難得 nándé SV: to be hard to get; to be rare

你只在台北住了兩個月，中國話就說得這麼好。真難得！

You have only lived in Taipei for two months, and you speak Chinese so well. That's not easy.

4. 總是 zǒngshì Adv: always

小李去爬山的時候，總是背這個背包。

When Little Li goes hiking in the mountains, he always carries this backpack.

5. 修理 xiūlǐ V: to repair

我的電視機壞了，請你幫我修理一下。

My television is broken. Please repair it for me.

修 xiū V: to repair

我的電視機什麼時候可以修好？

When can my television be repaired?

6. 要不然 yàobùrán Conj: otherwise; or else

你一定要給我錢，要不然我不幫你。

You must give me money, otherwise I will not help you.

7. 陪 péi V: to accompany

你明天有沒有空？能不能陪我去辦簽證？

Do you have any free time tomorrow? Can you accompany me to apply for a visa?

8. 小吃攤 xiǎochī tān N: snack stall (M: 個、chù 處 site)

小吃 xiǎochī N: snack (M: 種)

9. 嘗 cháng V: to taste

你嘗嘗我做的宮保雞丁夠不夠辣。

Taste my gongbao chicken to see if it is hot enough.

10. 可惜 kěxī SV/Adv: to be pitiful; what a shame

1) 這雙鞋還沒壞，你就不要了。真可惜！

2) 爸爸買回來的糖真好吃，可惜你回來晚了，已經吃完了。

1) These shoes are still good, yet you do not want them any more. What a pity.

2) The candy Daddy bought was good. Too bad you got back late. We already ate all of it.

11. 吃不了 chī-bùliǎo RC: cannot finish eating (too much)

我們只請了三個人，你做了六個菜，怎麼吃得了？

We only invited three people. You cooked six dishes. How can we eat them all?

12. 炒米粉 chǎo//mǐfěn N: fried rice noodles (M: 盤)

如果你還覺得不夠飽，我們可以去吃一盤最有名的台灣小吃，炒米粉。

If you still do not feel full enough, we can go eat a plate of Taiwan's most famous snack, the fried rice noodles.

炒 chǎo V: to stir fry

白菜不能炒太久，大火炒兩三分鐘就夠了，要不然不好吃。

Cabbage cannot be fried too long. Fried over a high flame for two or three minutes is enough, otherwise it does not taste good.

米粉 mǐfěn N: rice noodles (M: 包、碗、盤)

13. 隨便 suíbiàn SV/Adv: as you wish; unconcerned

1) 在家裡，我總是穿得很隨便。

2) 你們隨便坐，不要客氣，我去給你們拿可樂。

3) A: 你想喝什麼？

B: 隨便，什麼都可以。

1) At home, I always dress very casually.

2) Please sit as you wish. Do not be polite. I will go get some cola for you.

3) A: What do you want to drink?

B: Whatever. Anything is O.K.

14. 油 yóu SV/N: to be oily/oil (M: pīng 瓶 bottle 、 dī 滴 drop)

1) 那家餐廳的菜很油，最好不要每天去那裡吃飯。

2) 請你炒菜的時候少放一點油。

3) 我的車沒油了，哪裡可以加油？

1) That restaurant's food is really oily. It's best not to eat there every day.

2) When you cook food, please add a bit less oil.

3) My car is out of gas. Where can I get some gas?

15. 旁邊 pángbiān N: beside; next to

張先生旁邊那個位子有沒有人坐？

Is anyone sitting in the seat next to Mr. Zhang?

16. 擺地攤 bǎi/dìtān VO: to arrange a sidewalk display

擺 bǎi V: to arrange; to put

飯做好了，你去幫我擺碗筷吧。

The food is ready. Please help me set the table.

地攤 dìtān N: sidewalk display (M: 個)

17. 攤子 tān-zi N: street stall (M: 個)

夜市裡，有的攤子有小車，可是擺地攤的人沒有小車，就把東西放在地上賣。

At the night market, some stalls are small carts, but sidewalk display vendors do not have carts. They just arrange their goods on the ground and sell them.

18. 流行 liúxíng SV: to be popular

1) 現在最流行的休閒活動是去KTV唱歌。

2) 這種紅顏色的收音機現在很流行。

1) The most popular leisure activity now is going to a KTV to sing.

2) This kind of red colored radio is very popular now.

19. 也許 yěxǔ MA: maybe

A: 小王怎麼還不打電話來？

B: 也許他改變主意了，不想跟我們去了。

A: How come Little Wang hasn't called yet?

B: Maybe he changed his mind and doesn't want to go with us anymore.

20. 合適 héshì SV: to be suitable

現在十一點了，王老師應該已經睡了。這個時候打電話找他，不合適吧？

It's 11:00 now. Teacher Wang should already be asleep. Don't you think it is unsuitable to call him at this time?

21. 趕快 gǎnkuài Adv: quickly; to hurry up
老師來了，小孩子都趕快坐下，把書拿出來。
The teacher was here. All the children hurried to their seats and took out their books.

趕 gǎn V: to hurry; to catch up
麻煩你開車開快一點，我們要趕十二點半的飛機。
Could I bother you to drive faster? We want to catch the 12:30 plane.

22. 熱鬧 rènnào SV: to be lively; to be bustling
上個週末，我們請了幾個朋友來玩。有的唱歌，有的喝酒、說話，好熱鬧。
Last weekend, we invited a few friends over for fun. Some sang songs, some drank liquor, and some chatted. It was really lively.

23. 那邊 nèibiān N: over there
你看那邊那個人是誰？好像是王老師，對不對？
Who is that person over there? He looks like Teacher Wang, doesn't he?

24. 原來 yuánlái Adv: (indicating sudden realization)
A: 你們怎麼都沒去火車站？我等了好久，都沒有人來。
B: 原來你不知道我們的活動改時間了，怎麼沒有人通知你？
A: How can it be that none of you went to the train station? I waited a long time and no one came.
B: So, you did not know that the time for our activity had changed? How come no one told you?

25. 遊戲 yóuxì N: game (M: 種、chǎng 場 round)
我的電腦裡有三種遊戲，你要玩哪一種？
There are three games on my computer. Which kind do you want to play?

26. 得到 dédào RC: to get; to obtain
A: 我為什麼要幫你？我能得到什麼？
B: 你幫我，我就給你十萬塊。
A: Why should I help you? What do I get out of it?
B: If you help me, I will give you \$100,000.

27. 獎品 jiǎngpǐn N: reward; prize (M: fèn 份 share)
A: 上次你們比賽贏了，得到什麼獎品？
B: 學校給我們一人一個錶。
A: What was the prize when you won last time?
B: The school gave each of us a watch.

28. 管

guǎn

V: to take care of; to be in charge

1) 李太太管孩子管得很兇。不可以太晚回家，不可以隨便買東西，也不可以跟朋友去玩。

2) 太太：你幾點回來？我等你。

先生：你不要管我，你累了就睡覺，不要等我。

3) 辦簽證的事情，哪一位管？我應該找誰？

4) 我不管你為什麼打人，你打了人就不對。

1) Mrs. Li is very strict with her children. They cannot come home too late, cannot freely buy things, and cannot go out with their friends.

2) Wife: What time will you come home? I will wait up for you.

Husband: Don't worry about me. When you are tired, go to sleep. Don't wait for me.

3) Who is in charge of visas? Whom should I look for?

4) I am not concerned with why you hit the person. Hitting people is not right.

29. 算命

suàn//mìng

VO: to tell someone's fortune

我認識一個算命的先生。他可以告訴你去哪裡可以找到適合你的男朋友。

I know a fortune-teller. He can tell you where to find a suitable boyfriend.

命

mìng

N: life; fate; destiny (M: 條)

1) 算命的說王太太的命很好：先生好、孩子聽話，又有錢。

2) 我上次去爬山，天氣變壞了，我找不到路下山，東西也都吃完了。第二天同學才找到我。如果同學沒有找到我，我就沒命了。

1) The fortuneteller says Mrs. Wang has a good fortune: a good husband, obedient children, and wealth.

2) Last time I went hiking in the mountains, the weather turned bad. I could not find the path down, and I had eaten all my food. My classmates didn't find me until the next day. If my classmates had not found me, I would have lost my life.

30. 想起來

xiǎngqǐlái

RC: to recall; to think of

啊，真對不起！我知道我們見過，可是我想不起來你叫什麼名字了。

Oh, I'm really sorry. I know we have met, but I cannot recall your name.

31. 客戶

kèhù

N: client (M: 位)

大千公司是我們最大的客戶，所以你跟他們說話的時候要客氣一點。

Daqian Co. is our biggest client, so when you speak with them, be a bit more polite.

客人

kèrén

N: guest; customer (M: 位)

1) 媽媽說客人馬上就來了，叫我把碗筷擺好。

2) 我們這家餐廳，每天七點到八點客人最多。

1) Mom said the guests will be here soon and she wants me to set the table.

2) Our restaurant has the most customers between seven and eight daily.

32. 停

tíng

V: to stop; to park

1) 那個歌我只唱了一半，音樂就停了，不知道為什麼。

2) 前面右邊有一個位子，我們就把車停在那裡吧。

1) I don't know why, but I had only sung half of the song when the music stopped.

2) Up ahead on the right there is a space. Let's park the car there.

停車位

tíngchēwèi

N: parking place; parking space (M: 個)

33. 接

jiē

V: to pick up; to meet

張太太每天下午四點去學校接孩子回家。

Mrs. Zhang picks up her children from school every afternoon at four o'clock and takes them home.

Grammar

1. 你總是那麼忙。 You are always so busy.

Explanation: “總是” indicates consistent action. “這麼” or “那麼” may be placed after “總是” followed by an SV, e.g. “你總是那麼忙 You are always so busy.”; or followed by a verb, e.g. “我總是在家吃飯 I always eat at home.”

王：小張怎麼還不來？我們走吧，不要等了。

李：他 _____，我們再等一下。

王：這個字你又寫錯了。

李：奇怪，為什麼這個字我 _____。

王：小林怎麼了？好像不太高興。

李：你不要管他，他 _____。

王：現在有三十度吧？什麼時候會涼快一點？

李：這裡的天氣 _____，得到秋天才會舒服一點。

總是寫錯

總是這麼熱

總是會晚一點

總是這麼不高興

總是這個樣子

Additional Vocabulary

才: not until

2. 電腦送去修理了，沒辦法工作，要不然還是沒空陪你。

The computer is being repaired and there is no way to work, otherwise, I still would not be able to accompany you.

Explanation: “要不然” means “if not this way.” A short sentence follows indicating the result or conclusion.

弟弟：你看我要不要告訴媽媽，我把她的傳真機弄壞了？

哥哥：你最好告訴她，_____。

王：晚上我們去吃日本飯，要不要先訂位子？

李：那家餐廳生意很好。你最好先打電話訂位子，_____。

王：你們先吃，別等我。

李：你快來吃，_____。

王：今天的比賽，你打得好棒。

李：因為有你們來給我加yóu(油)，_____。

要不然一定沒有位子
要不然好吃的東西都沒有了

要不然我也不會贏（打得這麼好）
要不然她會很生氣

Additional Vocabulary

生意: business

加yóu (油): cheer; to step up effort

3. 每一家我都想嘗一嘗，可惜吃不了那麼多。

I want to try each shop. It is a pity I cannot eat so much.

Explanation: “可惜” means “it is worth pity,” and can act as an adverb only if used before the subject. It can act as an SV, when the subject is usually a VP or short sentence.

王：我下個月要去義大利旅行，你要不要一起去？

李：我很想跟你去旅行，_____。

王：昨天張老師的yǎnjiǎng(演講)怎麼樣？

李：非常好，_____。

王：你們上次露營買了好多菜跟肉，一定吃得很高興吧？

李：誰說的？我們是帶了菜跟肉，_____，沒辦法生火做飯。

王：趙小姐真漂亮！

李：聽說她已經有男朋友了，_____。

王：我帶了一隻烤雞回來，快來吃。

李：我已經吃過飯了，_____。

可惜你沒來聽
太可惜了

可惜沒有錢
真可惜

可惜下大雨

Additional Vocabulary

yǎnjiǎng (演講): speech

4. 可惜吃不了那麼多。 It is a pity that I cannot eat so much.

Explanation: “吃不了 liǎo” (V 不了) is the negative form of a potential resultative verb compound. The positive form is “V 得了”. The suffix “了” indicates whether the condition allows some action or change to occur or not. There is no usage for actual type (V 了). This “了” sometimes indicates completion. The verbs we have learned that can be used with this include: 吃, 忘, 學, 搬, 拿, 幫, 辦, 做, 管, 提, 到, 走, 去, 寫, etc.

王：我幫你提水吧。

李：不必，水不重，我一個人_____。

媽媽：你管管老大，好不好？他最近都很晚回家。

爸爸：孩子已經十八歲了，我看我_____了。他不會聽我的。

王：這裡還有一個 dài(袋)子，別忘了拿。

李：我只有兩隻手，怎麼_____？

王：你不是要去海邊釣魚嗎？怎麼還在家？

李：我本來是要去釣魚，可是車子壞了，_____了。

Additional Vocabulary

dài (袋) 子: sack; bag

5. 你吃什麼，我就吃什麼。 I will eat whatever you eat.

Explanation: In the “S₁ + V₁ + QW, S₂ 就 V₂ + QW” pattern, QW indicates indefinite. When the preceding and following QWs are the same thing, it is the former decides the latter. The speaker feels “whatever, all acceptable, no particular restrictions, and only complies with the wish, demand or need indicated in the first short sentence.” The QW which can be used include: 誰, 什麼, 哪裡, 哪-M, 多少 and 幾-M. When S₁ is as same as S₂, S₂ can be omitted. V₁ and V₂ can be the same or different.

王：我要去租錄影帶，你想看什麼片子？

李：隨便，_____。

王：最近新片不少。你想看哪一部？

李：都可以，_____。

王：這個週末，要不要跟我們去海邊露營？

李：好啊，我沒有特別的計畫，_____。

太太：這個週末，我想請朋友來吃飯。你想請誰？

先生：都可以，你決定。_____。

王：我們去烤肉，要買多少肉？

李：我沒意見，_____。

王：你今天有空跟我下棋嗎？

李：有啊。_____。

你們去哪裡，我就跟你們去哪裡
你想請誰，就請誰
你要下幾盤，我就跟你下幾盤

你租什麼，我就看什麼
你看哪一部，我就看哪一部
你想買多少，就買多少

Additional Vocabulary

意見: opinion

6. 原來他們在玩遊戲。 It turns out that they are playing games.

Explanation: “原來” means a previously unknown situation has now come to be known or realized. It can be placed in front of or after the subject.

王：小美她們在洗手間，我們等她們一下。

李：我以為她們走了，_____。

王：你在找什麼？上次租的那卷錄影帶嗎？我昨天還了。

李：我一zhí(直)找不到，_____。

王：剛剛那個張小春是我妹妹。

李：我看你們很像，_____。

王：對不起，我剛剛在跟趙老師講電話。

李：難怪我打了好幾次都打不通，_____。

原來你把錄影帶還了
原來是你在用電話

原來你們是姊妹
原來她們去洗手間了

Additional Vocabulary

一zhí(直): continuously 難怪: no wonder

7. 哎呀，我想起來了。 Oh, I just remembered.

Explanation: The “想起來” is a resultative verb compound, indicating recollection has a result. The negative of “想起來了” is “沒想起來” but it is not often used. “想不起來” indicates an attempt at recollection but no result; “想得起來” is usually used in a question sentence to ask whether you can recollect or not.

太太：你還記得我們第一次出去是在哪裡吃的飯嗎？

先生：_____了，那麼久以前的事啦。

王：張老師送你的那本書誰借走了？

李：我怎麼_____？跟我借書的人那麼多。

王：「旅行」的「旅」怎麼寫？我已經想了五分鐘了。

李：想了這麼久，還沒_____嗎？

老師：這個jù(句)子少了一個字。你為什麼沒寫？

學生：我知道，可是我_____怎麼寫。

Additional Vocabulary

jù(句)子：sentence

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

() 這兩個人在哪裡說話？

a. 百貨公司裡

b. 夜市地攤

c. 皮鞋店

() 這位小姐要做什麼？

a. 買皮鞋

b. 買皮包

c. 退錢

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

包太太：真难得！我们好久没一起逛夜市了。

你总是那么忙。

包先生：电脑送去修理了，没办法工作，要不然还是没空陪你。

包太太：是啊，所以我特别高兴，今天一定要多逛一会儿。

包先生：我记得你最爱吃小吃。这么多小吃摊，你要吃哪一家？

包太太：每一家我都想尝一尝，可惜吃不了那么多。

先吃一点炒米粉，好不好？

包先生：随便，你吃什么，我就吃什么。不过这家炒米粉太油，我们去对面那家。

包太太：那家小吃店旁边有几个人在摆地摊，都是卖衣服的。我们吃完了，就过去看看现在流行什么样子的衣服，也许可以买到一件合适的。

包先生：那就赶快走吧。

(过了一会儿)

包太太：这里真热闹，那边怎么那么多人？我们过去看看。

(走过去)

包先生：原来他们在玩游戏。我也来玩一下，看我能得到什么奖品。

包太太：我没兴趣，我不管你了。你在这里玩，我去那边那个摊子算命。

包先生：哎呀！我想起来了。十一点有一个美国客户要打电话来，我得回去等电话了。

包太太：每次都这样！好吧，只好下次再来了。你的车停在哪里？

包先生：前面右转。你在路口等一下，我开过来接你。

第八課 到酒館坐坐 Lesson 8 Sitting in a Pub



3 新雨：這家酒館¹很有名，沒想到你沒來過。

書宜：是啊。我平常總是跟朋友去啤酒屋²，很少有機會來西式酒館，你常來這裡嗎？

新雨：我每次考完試就來，我喜歡這裡的氣氛，很輕鬆。你做什麼，都沒有人來管你。

書宜：是啊，我看這裡的人，喝酒的喝酒，打牌的打牌，跳舞的跳舞，一點都不在乎別人怎麼想。

新雨：那邊還有人在打撞球，丟飛鏢。³先點東西喝吧，⁴你要喝什麼？啤酒，還是調酒？

書宜：這裡有什麼雞尾酒？酒單呢？

新雨：在這兒。那邊那位調酒的帥哥技術很棒，你要喝什麼，他都調得出來。⁵

書宜：哎呀，我都看不懂。這些是什麼酒啊？我喝什麼好呢？⁶

新雨：你試試藍色夏威夷好了⁷，味道不錯！我想喝生啤酒。我們再點幾個下酒菜。

書宜：我只要爆玉米花就夠了，這是什麼歌？

新雨：你怎麼可能連這首歌都沒聽過？這是現在最紅的樂團唱的「你是我的太陽」。

書宜：噢，對啊，我想起來了，我聽我同學唱過。

新雨：最近打開收音機，不是這首「太陽」，就是另外一個歌星王非的歌，他們都唱得不錯！酒來了，喝酒吧。

Vocabulary

1. 酒館 jiǔguǎn N: pub; tavern (M: 家)

2. 想到 xiǎngdào RC: to think of

1) 我很想跟你們去玩，可是想到露營要背那麼多東西，我就不想去了。

2) 學校放三天假，別人都出去玩了，沒想到王老師還來辦公室做事。

1) I really want to go with you all, but when I think about the fact that when you go camping you have to carry so many things on your back, then I don't want to go.

2) School is off for three days, and everyone else all went to have fun. I did not expect that Teacher Wang would still come to the office to work.

3. 啤酒屋 píjiǔwū N: beer house (M: 家)

那家啤酒屋的小菜不錯，我們去那裡點幾個菜，喝點啤酒，好不好？

That beer house has good side dishes. Let's go there and order some food and drink some beer. Okay?

4. 機會 jīhuì N: opportunity (M: 個)

我的朋友都不會說日文，所以我沒有什麼機會說日文。

None of my friends can speak Japanese, so I do not have any opportunity to speak Japanese.

5. 西式 Xīshì N: Western style

中式 Zhōngshì N: Chinese style

日式 Rìshì N: Japanese style

歐式 Ōushì N: European style

美式 Měishì N: American style

在美國有的中國餐廳，菜是中式的，可是家具是西式的。

In America, some Chinese restaurants have Chinese-style food, but the furnishings are Western.

6. 考試 kǎo/shì VO/N: to test; to take an exam/ exam; test

1) 你在學開車？學了多久了？什麼時候考試？

2) 這次考試不考第三課，所以不太難。

1) You are learning how to drive? How long have you been learning? When is your test?

2) This time the test did not cover chapter three, so it was not too difficult.

7. 氣氛 qìfēn N: atmosphere (M: 種)

這家咖啡館這個時候人不多，音樂很美，氣氛不錯。

At this time, the coffee house does not have many people, the music is nice and the atmosphere is not bad.

8. 輕鬆 qīngsōng SV: to be relaxed; to be relaxing

- 1) 事情都做完了，心裡覺得很輕鬆。
 - 2) 這只是一個小比賽，你放輕鬆一點，一定沒問題。
- 1) I have finished everything, so I feel very relaxed.
 - 2) This is only a small competition, relax a little. I'm sure you won't have any problem.

鬆 sōng SV: to be loose

- 1) 這雙鞋太大，小明穿太鬆。
 - 2) 老師管得太鬆，所以學生上課的時候很吵。
- 1) This pair of shoes is too big, and they would be too loose for Xiaoming.
 - 2) The teacher manages the class too loosely, so the students are very noisy in class.

9. 打牌 dǎ/pái VO: to play cards

我不喜歡打牌，因為一定有人贏，有人輸，輸的人不高興，氣氛常常會不好。

I do not like to play cards because someone must win and someone must lose. If the losers are not happy, the atmosphere is often spoiled.

10. 跳舞 tiào/wǔ VO: to dance

小張今天很高興，每一支舞都跳了。

Little Zhang is very happy today. He has danced every dance.

跳 tiào V: to jump

你不可以從那麼高的地方跳下來，太危險了。

You cannot jump from such a high place. It is too dangerous.

11. 在乎 zàihū V: to be concerned about; to care

- 1) 我喜歡小王，我不在乎他有沒有錢。
 - 2) 老張太在乎輸贏，所以我不喜歡跟他打牌。
- 1) I like Little Wang and don't give a hoot whether he has any money or not.
 - 2) Old Zhang cares too much about winning and losing, so I do not like to play cards with him.

12. 撞球 zhuàngqiú N: pool; billiards (M: 局)

撞 zhuàng V: to bump; to crash

我的車撞到了樹，壞了，得去修理了。

My car hit a tree and was damaged. I must go have it repaired.

13. 丟飛鏢 diū/fēibiāo VO: to throw darts

我們來比賽丟飛鏢，輸的人喝酒。

Let's have a darts game. The loser has to take a drink of beer.

丟 diū V: to throw; to get rid of; to lose

- 1) 這些東西我還要，你不要丟了。
 - 2) 小張把球丟給我，可是我沒接到。
 - 3) 這個地方我沒來過，所以很快就走丟了，找不到東南西北了。
- 1) I still want to use these things. Do not throw them out.
 - 2) Little Zhang threw the ball to me, but I did not catch it.
 - 3) I have not been here before, so I lost my way very quickly and could not find which way was north, south, east, or west.

飛鏢 fēibiāo N: dart (M: 支)

14. 調酒 tiáo//jiǔ VO: to mix drinks

調 tiáo V: to mix; to adjust

- 1) 我最近在學調酒。我調一杯，你嘗嘗。
 - 2) 打火機的火太小了，你幫我調一下。
- 1) I have recently been learning how to mix drinks. I'll mix one for you to taste.
 - 2) The lighter's flame is too small. Help me adjust it.

15. 雞尾酒 jīwěijiǔ N: cocktail (M: 杯)

16. 酒單 jiǔdān N: drink menu; wine list (M: 張、fèn 份 copy)

17. 帥哥 shuàigē N: handsome young man (M: 位)

帥 shuài SV: to be handsome

我們家三個男孩，老大最帥，喜歡他的女孩好多。

Of the three boys in our family, the eldest brother is the most handsome and lots of girls like him.

18. 技術 jìshù N: skill; technique (M: 種、門)

19. 調得出來 tiáo-de chūlái RC: can achieve the result by mixing

這種顏色很特別，我想我調不出來。

This color is very special. I don't think that I can mix it right.

20. 看不懂 kànbùdǒng RC: can not understand by reading

我沒學過德文，這本書我看不懂。

I have not learned German and cannot understand this book.

21. 藍色夏威夷 Lánsè Xiàwēiyí Proper N: Blue Hawaii

藍色 lán sè N: blue

- 夏威夷 Xiàwēiyí Proper N: Hawaii
22. 生啤酒 shēngpíjiǔ N: draft beer (M: 杯)
- 生 shēng SV: to be raw; unfamiliar
- 1) 這塊肉還太生。你再烤一下吧。
 - 2) 這個孩子很少出去，所以很怕生，看到不認識的人就會跑開。
- 1) This piece of meat is still too raw. Broil it a little longer.
 - 2) This child seldom goes out so is afraid of strangers. When he sees someone he does not know, he runs away.
23. 熟 shōu SV: to be cooked; to be ripe; to be familiar
- 1) 麵還太生，不夠熟。再煮一下。
 - 2) 我跟張小姐不熟，只見過兩次。
- 1) The noodles are not yet cooked enough. Boil them a little longer.
 - 2) I am not very familiar with Miss. Zhang and have only seen her twice.
24. 下酒 xià//jiǔ VO: to go with liquor
- 我想喝酒，可是沒有菜下酒，只好去外面喝了。
- I want a drink, but do not have any food to go with it. I can only go out and drink.
- 下飯 xià//fàn VO: to go along well with rice
- 今天的菜都不夠鹹，不下飯。
- The food today is not salty enough and does not go well with the rice.
25. 爆玉米花 bào yùmǐhuā N: popcorn (M: 包、lì粒 grain)
26. 可能 kěnéng Adv: probably; maybe
- 看媽媽的樣子，她可能已經知道電腦是我們弄壞的了。
- From the way Mom looks, she probably already knew it's us who broke the computer.
27. 連 lián Adv: even
- 小陳喝了太多酒，連自己姓什麼都不記得了。
- Little Chen drank too much liquor and cannot remember even his own name.
28. 首 shǒu M: for songs and poems
29. 紅 hóng SV: to be popular
- 這首歌現在很紅，連老人、小孩子都會唱。
- This song is really popular. Even old people and little children can sing it.
30. 樂團 yuètuán N: music group; band

31. 太陽 tàiyáng N: sun (M: 個)
 月亮 yuèliàng N: moon (M: 個)
 星星 xīngxīng N: star (M: kē 顆 bead)
32. 同學 tóngxué N: classmate (M: 位、個)
 我跟小李是大學同學，我們是老朋友了。
 Little Li and I were university classmates. We are old friends.
- 同事 tóngshì N: colleague (M: 位、個)
33. 歌星 gēxīng N: singer (M: 位、個)
 電影明星 diànyǐng míngxīng N: movie star (M: 位、個)
34. 王非 Wáng Fēi Proper N: Wang Fei

Grammar

1. 沒想到你沒來過。 I did not expect you had not been here before.

Explanation: “想到” is an actual type resulative verb compound, when “得” or “不” inserted it is potential type. “想到” can have two meanings as follows: a) to predict or estimate. The object is a short sentence; b) to notice or consider something. The object is a noun phrase. “沒想到” indicates: a) something already happened that the subject did not expect; b) this thing has not yet been considered. “想不到” indicates that the subject did not think that things like this would happen.

王：現在是六月了，可是今天只有十五度，好冷。

李：是啊，_____ 六月會這麼冷。

王：昨天跟你一起去看電影的那個小姐好漂亮，是你女朋友嗎？

李：她是我妹妹。你 _____ 哪裡去了。

王：雨下得真大，路真不好走，可是你看這條路上都是來健行的人。

李：是啊，_____ 來的人這麼多。

王：小林家很有錢，可是聽說她昨天跟男朋友去qiǎng(搶)銀行了。

李：誰也 _____ 她會做這樣的事情。

王：週末去哪裡吃飯？

李：週末還早。今天晚上吃什麼，我都還 _____ 呢！

王：Gōng(恭)喜你考了一百分。

李：我也 _____ 可以得一百分。

Additional Vocabulary

qiǎng (搶): to rob

gōng (恭)喜: to congratulate

2. 我看這裡的人，喝酒的喝酒，打牌的打牌，跳舞的跳舞。

I see of the people here, the drinkers are drinking, the card players are playing, and the dancers are dancing.

Explanation: “V(O)₁ 的 V(O)₁，V(O)₂ 的 V(O)₂” means that within the scope of a certain topic, a portion is doing V(O)₁ and the other portion is doing V(O)₂. They are independent activities and do not effect each other. Sometimes, as in the example sentence, one can add V(O)₃ 的 V(O)₃.

1) 我們上次去露營， _____ ， _____ ， _____ ， hé (合) 作得很好。

2) 那個火車站好大，裡面有好多的人， _____ ， _____ ，都很 wúliáo(無聊)的樣子。

3) 我去郵局的時候，每個窗口前面都有人， _____ ， _____ ，每個人都很急，不願意等。

4) 考試以前，教室裡的學生 _____ ， _____ ，都很 jǐn(緊)張。

搭帳篷的搭帳篷，生火的生火，做飯的做飯
寫字的寫字，看書的看書 站的站，坐的坐
買郵票的買郵票，寄信的寄信

Additional Vocabulary

hé (合)作: to cooperate

wúliáo (無聊): to be bored; boring

jǐn (緊)張: to be nervous

8

3. 一點都不在乎別人怎麼想...not caring at all about what others think

Explanation: “在乎” can be modified by an adverb of degree, especially used in a negative sentence or rhetorical question. “在乎” means “keep in mind, care about, feel something is important.” A pronoun, noun phrase, or short sentence can be placed behind it. “不在乎” means “doesn’t matter, don’t care” or “feel not important”; a short sentence can be placed behind it. When someone or something is emphasized, a pronoun or noun phrase can be placed behind “不在乎”, e.g. “我不在乎

這一點錢，你要就拿走吧。I don't care about that small amount of money, you can take it if you like.” It can be omitted if the context is clear, or it can be placed at the beginning of the sentence as the topic. For example: “A: 你男朋友跟別人去看電影了，你不在乎嗎？B: 我不在乎。A: Your boyfriend is going to see a movie with somebody else. Don't you care? B: I don't care.” “錢，我不在乎，我只在乎能不能學到新東西。Money, I don't care about, I only care about whether I can learn new things or not.”

王：這個工作一個月只有一萬五千塊，你也願意做啊？

李：我_____。我剛bìyè(畢業)，先試試再說。

王：你為什麼這麼怕媽媽不高興？

李：這個shìjiè(世界)上，我最_____，我不希望她不高興。

王：新片子比較貴，你要租新的還是舊的？

李：_____。我要看最新的片子。

王：我不喜歡露營，每次都要背好多東西，好重，也好累。

李：我喜歡露營，我_____。

王：你要買什麼樣的房子？

李：買房子，我比較_____，小一點沒有關係。

貴不貴，我不在乎	我不在乎貴不貴	不在乎錢多少
在乎安全不安全（交通方便不方便）		在乎媽媽
不在乎（背東西）		

Additional Vocabulary

bìyè(畢業): to graduate

shìjiè(世界): world

4. 你要喝什麼，他都調得出來。 Whatever you want to drink, he can mix it.

Explanation: “調得出來(V得出來)” is a potential resultative verb compound, the negative is “V不出來”. The ending “出來” means a) people or things move with actions from inside to outside or from hidden to revealed, e.g., walk out, jump out, lend out, drive/open out, write out, speak out, act out. If there is an object, it should be inserted between “出” and “來”. E.g. 說出口來, 走出房間來. b) The person or thing can be learned through the action. E.g. 吃出來, 看出來, 聽出來. c) Some new or invented things may come out through the action. E.g. 想出來, 算出來, 找出來, 說出來, 做出來(這種東西). The thing can be inserted between “出” and “來”. E.g. 想出辦法來, 說出話來。

弟弟：明天房東要來拿房租。我們的錢都用完了，你有沒有什麼辦法？

哥哥：我已經想了好久了，可是_____。

王：這是什麼肉做的？

李：我剛剛吃了一塊，可是_____是什麼肉。

王：我把租來的錄影帶賣給小林了。

李：這種事，你怎麼_____？

王：你還沒有男朋友，怎麼知道今年會jiéhūn(結婚)？

李：算命先生_____的。

王：我不知道給爸爸的信裡面應該寫些什麼。

李：很容易啊，你把心裡的話_____，就可以了。

王：你怎麼去了十分鐘，還沒把車開來？

李：有人把車停在我的車旁邊，所以我_____。

王：老林mà(罵)你，你也可以罵他啊。

李：罵人的話我_____，所以我什麼都沒說就回來了。

Additional Vocabulary

jiéhūn (結婚): to get married

mà(罵): to curse; to scold

8

5. 哎呀，我都看不懂。Yikes, I do not understand any of it.

Explanation: “看不懂” is the negative of the potential type resultative verb compound. The positive is “看得懂”. The ending “懂” means understand and be clear. The only verbs that can be used with this pattern are : 聽 and 看.

王：老師剛剛說的好難，你懂不懂？

李：你沒_____嗎？哪裡不懂？我幫你。

王：我借給你的那本書，你看完了沒有？

李：看完了。有的地方很難懂，我看了好幾次才_____。

王：這是哪一國的歌？

李：我學過一點德文，聽得出來是德國歌，可是_____唱些什麼。

王：我們去看中國電影，好不好？

李：我們才學了幾個月的中文，中國電影我們_____嗎？

Additional Vocabulary
才: not until

6. 你連這首歌都沒聽過嗎？ You haven't even heard this song?

Explanation: The speaker feels that this situation is out of the ordinary. “連” indicates emphasis and can be followed by a noun phrase, verb (including verb-object structure), or short sentence. The main verb follows “都” or “也”, which follows “連”.

王：老張有麻煩，為什麼不打電話給他兒子？

李：他們很久沒聯絡了，_____，怎麼打電話？

王：我剛逛街，把錢都用完了。你能不能借我一點錢？

李：對不起，我沒帶錢包，_____。

王：這是誰的信，怎麼丟在地上？

李：小美男朋友寄來的，她在生氣，所以_____就把信丟了。

王：已經兩點了，你還沒吃飯啊？

李：我今天特別忙，_____。

王：你怎麼不找你弟弟幫你洗車？

李：他不願意。_____。

連一塊錢都沒有
連電話號碼都不知道
連我給他錢，他都不願意

連吃飯都沒有時間
連看都沒看

Additional Vocabulary
兒子: son 錢包: purse

7. 不是這首「太陽」，就是另外一個歌星王菲的歌。

If it is not this sun song, then it is another song sung by Wang Fei.

Explanation: “不是……就是……” indicates either the situation following “不是” or the situation following “就是” will definitely be the one.

王：你常常去逛夜市，你都去做什麼？

李：我_____，沒什麼特別的。

王：小張到哪裡去了？

李：今天是禮拜天，_____。

王：你常來這家餐廳吃飯，你都點什麼菜？

李：我喜歡吃辣的，_____。

王：你週末都做什麼？

李：我_____。

不是去看電影，就是去打球
不是吃小吃，就是買衣服

不是在媽媽家，就是在女朋友家
不是點宮保雞丁，就是點麻婆豆腐

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

- () 這三個人在哪裡說話？
a. 朋友家 b. 餐廳 c. pub
- () 第一位先生要做什麼？
a. 買酒回家喝 b. 請小姐喝酒 c. 酒不好喝，要換一杯
- () 聽了這位先生的話以後，小姐怎麼辦？
a. 她不要喝酒 b. 她說酒賣完了 c. 她說酒沒有問題
- () 這位小姐在乎什麼？
a. 第一位先生 b. 別的客人 c. 啤酒好不好
- () 誰可能是老闆？
a. 第一位先生 b. 小姐 c. 第二位先生
- () 第二位先生要做什麼？
a. 給第一位先生叫車 b. 送小姐回家 c. 買啤酒
- () 第一位先生覺得第二位先生的決定怎麼樣？
a. 好 b. 不好 c. 不在乎

Notes

1. There is no counterpart of a “pub” in Chinese society. Therefore, when the concept of “pub” was brought into Taiwan, many people just used its English name “pub.”
2. “啤酒屋” is a place where people drink beer and chat with friends. It is like a Chinese pub. A 啤酒屋 provides many kinds of beer as well as Chinese dishes.
3. “那邊還有人在打撞球、丟飛鏢。” means “There are other people playing billiards and throwing darts over there.” This “還” means “besides; in addition.”
4. “先點東西喝吧。” means “Let's order something to drink first.” This “吧” indicates a suggestion.
5. “你要喝什麼，他都調得出來。” means “Whatever you want to drink, he can mix it.” This “什麼” is something indefinite, translated as “whatever.”
6. “我喝什麼好呢？” means “What shall I drink?” or “What would be good for me to choose to drink?” In this sentence, “我喝什麼” is the topic, and “好呢” is the comment.
7. “你試試藍色夏威夷好了。” means “It is best for you to try Blue Hawaii.” This “好了” means that after some consideration, the speaker gives a suggestion. “你試試藍色夏威夷” is the topic of this sentence and “好了” is the comment.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

新雨：这家酒馆很有名。没想到你没来过。

书宜：是啊。我平常总是跟朋友去啤酒屋，很少有机会来西式酒馆。你常来这里吗？

新雨：我每次考完试就来。我喜欢这里的气氛，很轻松。做什么，都没有人来管你。

书宜：是啊，我看这里的人，喝酒的喝酒，打牌的打牌，跳舞的跳舞，一点都不在乎别人怎么想。

新雨：那边还有人在打撞球，丢飞镖。先点东西喝吧，喝什么？啤酒，还是调酒？

书宜：这里有什么鸡尾酒？酒单呢？

新雨：在这儿。那边那位调酒的帅哥技术很棒。你要喝什么，他都调得出来。

书宜：哎呀，我都看不懂。这些是什么酒啊？
我喝什么好呢？

新雨：你试试蓝色夏威夷好了。味道不错！我想喝生啤酒。
我们再点几个下酒菜。

书宜：我只要爆玉米花就够了，这是什么歌？

新雨：你怎么可能连这首歌都没听过？这是现在最红的乐团唱的「你是我的太阳」。

书宜：噢，对啊，我想起来了，我听我同学唱过。

新雨：最近打开收音机，不是这首「太阳」，就是另外一个歌星王非的歌。他们都唱得不错！酒来了，喝酒吧。

Exercises

I. Survey

The teacher decides how divide up the students and prepares a questionnaire for each group. Each group is responsible for one questionnaire and each group member is given a copy. Then new groups are formed, with at least one member from each of the original groups in each new group. Then everyone starts to survey the other group members and record their answers. After the survey is complete the students return to their original groups and tally the responses before reporting the results to the class. E.g. “Our class has five students who like to travel.” Or “Half the people in our class like to drink beer.” (In addition to letting the students practice speaking, this activity can help students better understand their classmates.)

Example One

問 題	Yes	No
1. 你喜歡聽流行音樂嗎？		
2. 如果是，你幾歲開始喜歡的？		
3. 如果是，你最喜歡的歌星或樂團是誰？		
4. 你自己喜歡唱流行歌嗎？		
5. 你願意別人在你旁邊聽很大 shēng(聲)的流行音樂嗎？		
6. 聽流行音樂跟看電視比起來，你喜歡哪一個？		

Additional Vocabulary

大 shēng (聲): to be loud

Example Two

問 題	Yes	No
1. 你喜歡喝酒嗎？		
2. 如果是，你喜歡喝什麼酒？啤酒嗎？		
3. 你會調雞尾酒嗎？		
4. 你吃飯的時候，常喝酒嗎？		
5. 你常去啤酒屋喝酒嗎？你常去 PUB 喝酒嗎？		
6. 你常喝 zuì(醉)嗎？		
7. 跟你一起出來玩的朋友喝 zuì(醉)了，你會不高興嗎？		

Additional Vocabulary

zuì (醉): to be drunk

Example Three

問 題	Yes	No
1. 你喜歡逛夜市嗎？		
2. 如果是，為什麼？		
3. 如果不喜歡，為什麼？		
4. 你逛夜市的時候，吃攤子上的東西嗎？為什麼？		
5. 你會在夜市裡買衣服嗎？為什麼？		
6. 百貨公司跟夜市比起來，你喜歡去哪裡逛？		

Example Four

問 題	Yes	No
1. 你算過命嗎？		
2. 如果是，算過幾次？		
3. 你相信算命嗎？		
4. 如果不，為什麼？		
5. 你有自己很難決定的事的時候，你會去問算命的嗎？		
6. 如果不，你怎麼辦？		

II. Who is the person?

Name cards are passed out to each student. The students write their biggest interest, least favorite activity, and what they cared about least on the card. The teacher also writes this information on his/her card. After the writing is done, the teacher collects the cards. Then each student picks a card and reads the information and everyone tries to guess who wrote the card. If no one guesses right, the writer stands up and explains the written topics.

III. What does the fortune-teller say?

Chinese fortune-tellers can analyze a person's character, ability, and past events, as well as predict next month's, next year's, or the next several years' fortune. The teacher will explain a bit, then the students go back and imagine someone who wants their fortune told and the students will play the fortune-teller. Write down something good that the fortune-teller would say. Use sentence patterns such as: “總是……”, “可惜……”, “連……都……”, “V+QW, 就 V+QW”, “不是……就是……”, “要不然……”, etc. After the fortunes are written down, they are then posted on the wall for the rest of the class to observe. If a student feels his/her ideal fate is written on one of the cards, he/she can write his/her name on the card and read it to the class. (If the class is designed with a writing time, the writing time can be used for this activity.)

IV. Game: Stealing the seat

Chairs are placed in the center of the room, with one less chair than there are students. The stu-

dents can sing the song from this book as they walk around the chairs. When the teacher says stop, the students hurry to sit in a chair. The student left standing loses and must use a few sentences to describe his/her favorite food or drink, then sits out the following rounds. One chair is taken out and the game continues in this manner until only one student is left.

V. Role play

1. Two students, one plays the role of a mother, the other that of a child. It is the child's birthday and the mother wants to give him/her a gift. The mother says she will buy whatever the child wants if it is not too expensive. They go shopping at the night market where the child sees something expensive and the mother bargains with the seller. The performers decide the outcome. The teacher will help with any unfamiliar vocabulary.
2. Three students, one is a bartender, two are customers. The customers have not been to the pub before and do not understand the menu. The students perform the skit and ask the teacher if they need help.

Reading Comprehension

四月十日星期五 天氣 晴

我來台北三個星期了，總是很忙，不是去上中文課，就是去教英文賺錢，要不然就是去圖書館念書。到現在我連台北人每天下了班去哪裡玩都還不知道。今天考完試以後，幾個同學帶我去逛夜市。夜市裡人好多，好熱鬧：吃小吃的吃小吃，玩遊戲的玩遊戲，買衣服的買衣服。每個人看起來都很輕鬆，很自在，想做什麼，就做什麼。我沒想到地攤上的衣服那麼便宜，很想多買幾件，可惜我帶的錢太少，買不了那麼多。

我們從夜市走出來，一左轉就看見一家啤酒屋。同學說我們進去坐坐，休息休息。啤酒屋裡也很熱鬧，原來很多台北人晚上在這樣的地方喝酒。看見他們，我就想起來美國的酒館。酒館裡的酒保看得出來有的客人只想找人說話，不在乎喝什麼酒，所以客人說什麼，他們都聽。聽說台北也有不少酒館，下次我要去看看，跟美國的一樣不一樣。

Additional Vocabulary

zhuàn (賺)錢: to earn money

看起來: to seem

圖書館: library

自在: to be at ease

帶: to lead; to take along

jiǔbǎo (酒保): bartender

Questions:

1. 為什麼我總是很忙？
2. 你想我工作完了以後晚上都去哪裡玩？
3. 我今天晚上去哪裡了？為什麼有空去？

4. 我看見夜市的人都在做什麼？
5. 我想在夜市做什麼？我做了沒有？為什麼？
6. 原來很多台北人晚上做什麼？
7. 我在啤酒屋裡想起什麼來了？
8. 我下次要去哪裡看看？為什麼？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “獎金” means?

a) gold	b) money award or bonus	c) golden prize
---------	-------------------------	-----------------
2. What do you think “丟人” means?

a) throw someone out of the window	b) someone is lost	c) to be shameful
------------------------------------	--------------------	-------------------
3. What do you think “式樣” means?

a) style	b) same kind	c) looked similar
----------	--------------	-------------------
4. What do you think “口試” means?

a) mouth examine	b) oral exam	c) to taste
------------------	--------------	-------------

Authentic Materials

兩首歌

1=Do, 2=Re, 3=Mi, 4=Fa, 5=So, 6=La, 7=Ti

I. 少年的我

||: 1 1·2 | 3·5 | 5·4 3 2 | 3 — | 5 1·3 | 2·4 | 4·3 2 6 |
 春天的 花 是 多 麼 的 香， 秋天 的 月 是 多 麼 的

| 1 — | 1̇ 1·7 | 6·7 | 1̇·7 1̇·6 | 5 3 0 | 0 1 4 6 | 5 5 4 |
 亮， 少年 的 我 是 多 麼 的 快樂， 美麗 的 她 不知

Fine

┌ I ─┐ ┌ II ─┐
 | 3·1 | : 2 — : || 3 2 | 1 || 0 3 3 3 | 1̇ — | 7 2 | 6 — | 0 2 2 2 |
 怎 麼 樣？ 怎 麼 樣？ 寶 貴 的 情 像 月 亮 甜 蜜 的

| 6 — | 7 1̇ | 5 — | 0 3 5 6 | 3̇ — | 2̇ 3̇ 2̇ | 1̇ — | 0 2 3 4 | 5̇·6̇ 7̇ 6̇ |
 愛 像 花 香。 少年 的 我 不 努 力， 怎 能 夠 使 她

| 5 6 7 1 | 2 0 ||
 快樂 歡 暢？

Additionalary Vocabulary

shào (少)年: youth

xiāng (香): to be fragrant

liàng (亮): to be bright

快lè (樂): to be happy

美lì (麗): to be beautiful

能gòu (夠): to be able to

bǎo (寶)貴: to be precious

qíng (情): feelings

xiàng (像): to resemble

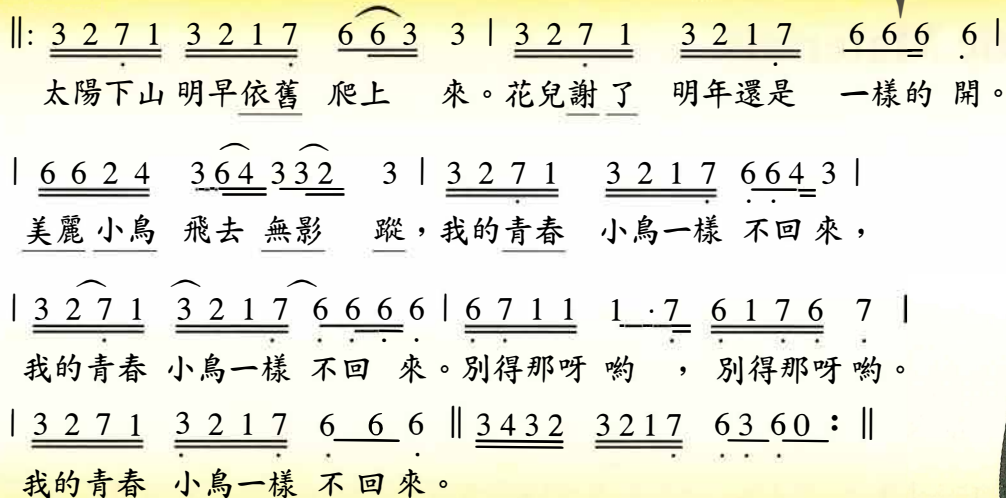
tiánmì (甜蜜): to be sweet

nǔlì (努力): to endeavor; to work hard

歡chàng (暢): to thoroughly enjoy oneself

1. 你想這是誰唱給誰聽的歌？
2. 你覺得這首歌怎麼樣？
3. 這首歌說「春天的花」怎麼樣？「秋天的月」怎麼樣？
4. 歌裡面說「我」應該怎麼樣？

II. 青春舞曲



Additionalary Vocabulary

yī (依)舊: still

謝: wilted

開: to blossom

美lì (麗): to be pretty

niǎo (鳥): bird

wú (無): not (have)

影zōng (蹤): trace

qīng (青)春: youth

別得那呀 yō (啲): tra la la (sound)

1. 你想這首歌有什麼意思？
2. 你覺得這首歌怎麼樣？

第五單元 文化和藝術¹

Unit 5 Culture and Art

Key Study Points

Lesson 9: ordering tea in a tea house / the names for various tea / suggestion after consideration / exaggerating something to the extreme / ordering foods or drinks / talking about doing two things at the same time

Lesson 10: talking about performances: ballet, drama, time, seats, and buying tickets / how long since not doing something / feeling a dilemma / exaggerating something to the extreme / emphasis on a very small amount / talking about something to be finished / worried tone

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 9

文化，和，藝術，半天，渴，
泡沫紅茶，茶藝館，安靜，還是，
出門，就，渴死了，烏龍茶，清茶，
奶茶，加味茶，香片，蜂蜜，甜，
苦，清淡，濃，來，茶食，花生，
瓜子，各，份兒，茶具，茶葉，
一邊，聊天，享受，同意

還是……吧
就(only)
渴死了(SV 死了)
一-M₁-N+ Nu-M₂ -N
來(to order)
各 V
一邊……一邊……

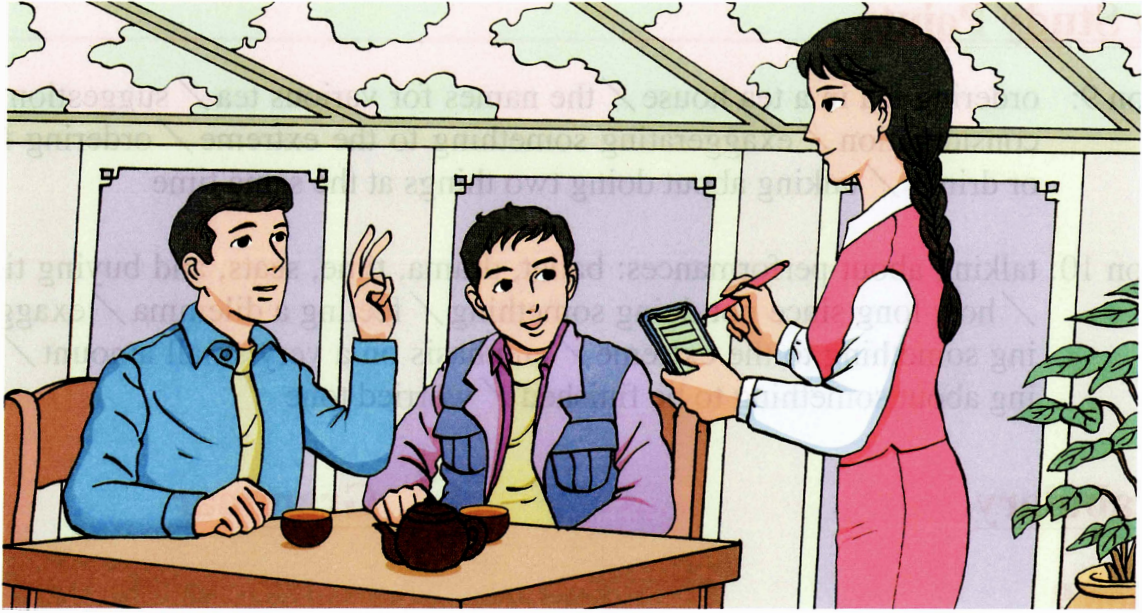
Lesson 10

表演，嗨，瘦，胖，關心，俄羅斯芭蕾舞團，實在，抽不出來，精彩，觀眾，不得了，賣座，排隊，才，最後，場，錯過，欣賞，下下禮拜三，當代劇場，國家劇院，舞台劇，哈姆雷特，齣，演員，主角，演技，一流，當然，戲劇，報紙，開始，中間，恐怕

MM
Time-duration + Neg. + VO
實在
SV 得不得了
才(only)
V/SV 得差不多了
恐怕

第九課 我們去喝茶吧

Lesson 9 Let's Go Have Some Tea



小林：走了半天，又累又渴。我們去喝點什麼吧。²

小陳：好啊，前面有一家泡沫紅茶店³，我們去那裡，好不好？

小林：茶藝館⁴比較安靜，氣氛好，我們還是去茶藝館吧。

小陳：好吧。

(到了茶藝館)

服務生：兩位想喝什麼茶？

小陳：出門前就喝了一杯水，逛了一下午，什麼都沒喝，現在真的渴死了。(對服務生)請先給我們一人一杯水，好嗎？

服務生：好，沒問題。(走開)

小林：我們喝烏龍茶，還是清茶？這裡也有最新流行的水果
茶、奶茶、加味茶，你大概比較有興趣。

小陳：那麼我喝香片加蜂蜜，不知道他們有沒有。

小林：應該有，我不喜歡甜茶，也不喜歡太清淡的茶，我喝
烏龍吧。

服務生(拿水來)：請問要喝什麼茶？決定了嗎？

小陳：一個香片加蜂蜜，一個烏龍。

服務生：要不要來點兒茶食⁵？

小林：花生、瓜子，各來一份兒好了。

服務生：好，謝謝。我馬上送茶具、茶葉跟茶食來。(走開)

小林：我覺得一邊喝茶，一邊聊天是最大的享受⁶。

小陳：嗯，我同意⁷。

Vocabulary

1. 文化 wénhuà N: culture (M: 種)
2. 和 hé/hàn Conj: and
語言和文化不能分開，學語言就是在學文化。
Language and culture cannot be separated, studying the language is studying the culture.
3. 藝術 yìshù N: art (M: 種、門)
很多人都說教書是一種藝術。
Many people say that teaching is an art form.
4. 半天 bàntiān N: half a day; a long time
我覺得我等了半天了，看看時間，只過了五分鐘。
I feel I have been waiting half the day, looking at the time, it has only been five minutes.
- 半夜 bànyè N: middle of the night
已經半夜了，弟弟怎麼還沒回來？
It is already the middle of the night. How come little brother isn't home yet?
5. 渴 kě SV: to be thirsty
你半天沒喝水了，渴不渴？
You have not had drunk any water in a long time. Are you thirsty?
6. 泡沫紅茶 pàomò hóngchá N: foamy black tea (M: 杯)
- 泡沫 pàomò N: bubbles and foam
水裡還有泡沫，所以我覺得衣服還沒洗乾淨。
There are still some suds in the water, so I feel that the clothes are not yet clean.
- 紅茶 hóngchá N: black tea (M: 杯)
7. 茶藝館 chāyìguǎn N: tea house (M: 家)
- 茶館 chāguǎn N: tea house (M: 家)
8. 安靜 ānjìng SV: to be quiet
家裡的人都在睡覺，很安靜，我可以好好兒地念書。
Everyone at home is asleep and it is very quiet, so I can really concentrate on my studies now.
9. 還是 hái shì Conj: it's best to
我看你這麼不舒服，你還是在家休息吧。
I see you are feeling so bad. You had better stay home and rest.

10. 出門 chū//mén VO: to go out; to leave

我今天早上八點出門上班，出了門才知道沒帶錢。

I left the house at eight this morning to go to work. Only after I had left did I realize that I hadn't brought any money.

11. 就 jiù Adv: only; nothing else

我今天早上就喝了一杯茶，別的什麼都沒吃。

I only drank a cup of tea this morning, and did not have anything else.

12. 渴死了 kě sǐ ·le RC: dying of thirst

天氣這麼熱，家裡沒有水，我渴死了，我要去買水。

It is so hot and there's no water in the house. I am dying of thirst. I'm going to buy some water.

死 sǐ V/SV/RE: to die/to be dead

1) 老張的太太已經死了三年了，他還很想她。

2) 那邊有死人，我怕，我不要過去。

3) 火太大，把房子裡的人都燒死了。

1) Old Zhang's wife has been dead for three years, and he still misses her a lot.

2) There are dead people there. I am frightened and do not want to go over there.

3) The fire was very big and all the people inside the house were burned to death.

活 huó V/SV: to live/to be alive

1) 我們都想他死了，沒想到一個小時以後他又活了。

2) 王老師什麼都懂，是我們的活字典。

1) We all thought he had died and did not think he would come back to life after one hour.

2) Teacher Wang understands everything, and is our living dictionary.

13. 烏龍茶 wūlóngchá N: oolong tea (M: 杯、包、罐)

14. 清茶 qīngchá N: green tea (M: 杯)

15. 奶茶 nǎichá N: milk tea (M: 杯)

牛奶 niúǎi N: (cow) milk (M: 杯、píng瓶 bottle、hé盒 box)

16. 加味茶 jiāwèichá N: scented or flavored tea (M: 杯、包)

17. 香片 xiāngpiàn N: jasmine tea (M: 杯、包、罐)

香 xiāng SV: to be fragrant; having good smelling

好香啊！太太，你今天做了什麼菜，這麼香？

It smells so good. Wife, what did you cook today that smells so good?

香水 xiāngshuǐ N: perfume (M: 種、píng瓶 bottle、dī滴 drop)

18. 蜂蜜 fēngmì N: honey (M: 罐、píng 瓶 bottle)

19. 甜 tián SV: to be sweet

- 1) 這種糖太甜，我不太喜歡。
- 2) 你說話真甜，誰聽了都好高興。

- 1) This kind of candy is too sweet. I do not like it very much.
- 2) You speak really sweetly. Whoever listens is very happy.

*20. 苦 kǔ SV: to be bitter

- 1) 這種菜味道有一點苦，喜歡的人不多。
- 2) 爸爸媽媽死了以後，小王的生活很苦。

- 1) This kind of vegetable is a bit bitter. Not many people like it.
- 2) After his mother and father died, Little Wang's life was very bitter.

21. 清淡 qīngdàn SV: to be simple; to be sluggish; to be dull

我今天不太舒服，不能吃太油的。我們點清淡一點的。

I do not feel very well today and cannot eat anything too oily. Let's order something simple.

淡 dàn SV: to be weak or thin; to be tasteless

這個湯太淡了，不夠鹹。

This soup is tasteless. It is not salty enough.

*22. 濃 nóng SV: to be thick (in colors, tastes, smells, etc.)

- 1) 今天的玉米濃湯加了太多水，一點都不濃。
- 2) 這杯烏龍茶太濃了，爸爸喜歡喝淡一點的。你再加一點水吧。

- 1) Today's corn soup has too much water and is not at all thick.
- 2) This cup of oolong tea is too thick. Dad likes to drink it a bit weaker. Please add some water to it.

23. 來 lái V: to bring me...

小姐，我們的啤酒喝完了。再來兩杯，快一點啊！

Miss, we have finished our beer. Bring two more. Hurry up.

24. 茶食 cháshí N: tea snacks (M: 種)

25. 花生 huāshēng N: peanut (M: kē 顆 grain、包)

26. 瓜子 guāzǐ N: watermelon seeds (M: lì 粒 grain、包)

27. 各 gè SP: each; every

- 1) 這裡有兩本書，你們兩個人各拿一本。
- 2) 各位同學，現在上課，請打開書。

- 1) There are two books here. You two each take one.
- 2) Students, it is class time now. Please open your books.

28. 份(兒) fènr M/N: share; set
 老師帶來了兩份獎品。每份獎品包括一本書、一枝筆。
 The teacher brought two sets of prizes. Each set included a book and a pen.

29. 茶具 chájù N: tea set (M: tào 套)
 餐具 cānjù N: tableware (M: tào 套 set)
 工具 gōngjù N: tool (M: tào 套 set、zǔ 組 set)

30. 茶葉 chá yè N: tea leaves (M: 種、片)
 葉子 yèzi N: leaves (M: 片)
 樹葉 shù yè N: tree leaves (M: 片)

31. 一邊 yìbiān Adv: concurrently
 一邊開車，一邊打大哥大，很危險。
 To talk on a cell phone while driving is very dangerous.

32. 聊天 liáo/tiān VO: to chat
 沒事的時候，我喜歡到朋友家去聊天，常常聊到很晚，忘了時間。
 When I have nothing to do, I like to go to my friend's place and chat. We often chat until late at night, losing track of time.

33. 享受 xiǎngshòu V/N: to enjoy; enjoyment (M: 種)
 1) 事情都做完了。我可以喝杯茶、聽聽音樂，享受一下了。
 2) 我覺得一個人坐在海邊釣魚是一種享受。
 1) I have finished everything so I can have a cup of tea, listen to music, and enjoy myself for a while.
 2) I think sitting by the sea and fishing alone is a form of enjoyment.

34. 同意 tóngyì V: to agree
 你還太小，如果媽媽不同意，你就不可以住在朋友家。
 You are still too young, if your mother does not agree then you cannot stay at your friend's house.

意見 yìjiàn N: opinion (M: 個)
 我跟弟弟的意見總是不一樣，我沒有辦法同意他的意見。
 My little brother and I always have a different opinion. There is no way I can agree with his opinion.

Grammar

1. 茶藝館比較安靜，氣氛好，我們還是去茶藝館吧。

The tea house is quieter and has a good atmosphere. Let's go to a tea house.

Explanation: The “還是……吧” indicates that the speaker makes the decision following “還是” after considering and comparing various alternatives. The “吧” indicates a suggestion.

哥哥：這個週末，我們去釣魚，還是爬山？

弟弟：海邊風太大。_____。

哥哥：今天想吃什麼？

弟弟：宮保雞丁跟麻婆豆腐都太辣。_____。

哥哥：我們把電腦弄壞了，誰去告訴爸爸？

弟弟：爸爸比較喜歡你。_____。

哥哥：現在加味茶真流行。這裡加味茶的種lèi(類)好多，我們喝哪一種？

弟弟：這裡的加味茶都太甜。_____。

Additional Vocabulary

種lèi (類): kind; category

2. 出門前就喝了一杯水。

Before leaving home, I only had a glass of water.

Explanation: Here, the “就” stresses “只有這個，沒有別的 only this, nothing else” and is used to make the limitation. An NP follows such as: “這件事就王先生知道，別人都不知道。Only Mr. Wang knows about this situation, no one else knows.” It can also be used when followed by a V +Nu-M-N, indicating that the speaker feels the amount is not much. E.g. “我出門前就喝了一杯水，現在渴死了。I only drank a glass of water before I left, now I am really thirsty.”

王：明天要考試，你怎麼還在看電視？

李：我_____，半個小時以後我就去看書。

王：街上都是日文，我們都看不懂，不知道火車站怎麼走？

李：我們三個人_____，你去問吧。

先生：你今天逛了一下午，買了什麼東西？

太太：我沒看到喜歡的東西，_____。

王：你怎麼每天都吃炒飯？

李：別的我都不會做，_____。

3. 現在真的渴死了。Now I am really thirsty.

Explanation: “死” can be used as a resultative compound verb ending, however “SV-死-了” indicates an extreme level in an exaggerated tone. It is usually used in the negative implication. A few state verbs can also be used in this way, the structure being “V/SV-死-O-了”, such as “想死我了 I’m dying of it,” “餓死我了 starving me to death.”

小孩：媽，我打球回來了。嗯，好香！我吃一塊。

媽媽：不要用手！你的手_____，先去洗手，再來吃。

王：你那麼不喜歡你的房東，為什麼不搬家？

李：搬家_____。我最怕麻煩，所以不想搬家。

姊姊：你剛爬山回來，身上都是 hàn(汗)，去洗澡吧！

妹妹：我_____，不想動，等一下再洗。

王：看你那麼不高興，你在氣什麼？

李：昨天看的，今天考試都沒考。_____。

Additional Vocabulary

hàn (汗): perspiration

4. 請先給我們一人一杯水，好嗎？

Please first give us each a glass of water, okay?

Explanation: There are two forms to describe each individual’s portion when the amount is distributed: “一-M₁-N+ Nu-M₂ -N” and “Nu- M₁- N + 一-M₂- N.” E.g. “一人兩本” indicates “everyone has two books,” and “兩人一本” indicates “two people share one book.” When a noun can also function as a measure word and the meaning won’t be misunderstood, the measure word can be omitted, e.g. “五人一車”, where the measure 輛 is omitted. Similarly, when the context is clear, the noun can be omitted, e.g. “兩人一本(書)”.

王：今天晚上我們怎麼睡？

李：我們有八個人，兩個帳篷，所以_____。

孩子：媽媽，我要吃 dàngāo(蛋糕)。

媽媽：好，還有兩塊，你跟弟弟_____。

王：你常常去旅行嗎？每年都去嗎？

李：不常，_____。

王：到火車站的公車多不多？多久一班？

李：很多，_____。

Additional Vocabulary

dàngāo (蛋糕): cake

5. ㊟ 要不要來點兒茶食？

Do you want some tea snacks (brought to you)?

㊟ 花生、瓜子，各來一份兒好了。

(Then) I'll have peanuts and watermelon seeds, one order of each.

Explanation: “來” has a commanding tone. It is usually used in a restaurant when ordering, or in a shop when buying goods.

李：先生，要吃什麼？

王：我們都很渴，先_____。

王：小姐，我們這裡的牛肉麵很有名，你們要不要嘗嘗？

李：好啊，我們一人_____。

王：先生，要買什麼郵票？五塊的？十塊的？

李：每種_____。

王：小姐，這兩種顏色的襯衫，你都要嗎？

李：是啊，紅的_____，白的_____。

來壺茶

來杯水

來一碗

來兩張

來兩件

來三件

6. 花生、瓜子，各來一份兒好了。

Peanuts and watermelon seeds, one order of each is fine.

Explanation: “各” indicates “每一個each.” It can be used to refer to an individual person, place, situation or object. The verb following “各” indicates to do or to have individually, and the verb is followed by a number-measure phrase, e.g. “這兩種襯衫我各買一件”. When the verb is “有”, a noun follows it, e.g. “各有特色”.

王：我想去歐洲旅行，去哪一國好呢？義大利還是法國？

李：義大利人熱情，法國人浪漫。_____。

王：你跟小陳比賽釣魚，誰贏了？

李：沒有輸贏，因為我們_____。

王：你跟你女朋友下次放假的時候要一起去外國旅行嗎？

李：不是，我們_____。我要去看我媽媽，她要去南部看朋友。

王：我喜歡文藝愛情片，你喜歡功夫片，我們租什麼帶子好？

李：那我們就_____吧。

各有特色

各有計畫

各租一卷

各釣了五條魚

Additional Vocabulary

熱情: to be passionate 外國: abroad; foreign countries

7. 我覺得一邊喝茶，一邊聊天是最大的享受。

I think chatting while drinking tea is the greatest enjoyment.

Explanation: “一邊……一邊……” indicates two things are in process at the same time. These two things must be actual movements, not situations or conditions. The two “一” can be omitted. “一邊” is placed before the VP.

王：美國大學學費很貴。很多人沒有錢念大學。

李：對啊，所以我_____，要不然我的錢也不夠念書。

王：今天的報zhǐ(紙)，你看了沒有？

李：看了。今天早上我_____的。

王：你看那個人是不是喝zuì(醉)了？

李：一定是喝醉了。你看，他_____。

王：你昨天見到王老師了沒有？

李：見到了。我去的時候，他在接電話，所以他_____。我等了一會兒，他才跟我說話。

一邊吃早餐，一邊看
一邊念大學，一邊工作

一邊走路，一邊唱歌
一邊聽電話，一邊請我坐下

Additional Vocabulary

報zhǐ(紙): newspaper zuì(醉): to be drunk 才: not until

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

- () 這兩個人在哪裡說話？
a. 第一個小姐家 b. 第二個小姐家 c. 茶藝館
- () 她們在做什麼？
a. 在茶葉店買茶葉 b. 在家泡茶 c. 在茶藝館喝茶
- () 誰會泡茶？
a. 第一位小姐 b. 第二位小姐 c. 賣茶的小姐
- () 這壺茶放了多少茶葉？
a. 一壺 b. 半壺 c. 比半壺再少一點
- () 第一泡茶味道怎麼樣？
a. 不喝 b. 太濃 c. 太淡
- () 第二位小姐喝的這杯茶，泡了多少時間？
a. 一分鐘 b. 一分半鐘 c. 不知道，沒有說

Notes

1. The “和” in “文化和藝術” means “and.” Most people pronounce it as “hàn” in Taiwan, but it is pronounced as “hē” in Mainland China. This character is a 破音字, and can be pronounced in several ways with different meanings.
2. “我們去喝點什麼吧” means “Let’s go drink something.” This “吧” indicates a suggestion.
3. “泡沫紅茶店” is a new kind of tea house developed in Taiwan. There are many ways of making black tea. The reason why it is called “泡沫紅茶店” is that there are bubbles when the tea is made. The black tea is shaken in a bottle like a cocktail. Because black tea is not a traditional Chinese drink, people feel freer to use it in new ways. The most popular tea in these tea houses is “珍珠奶茶 (zhēnzhū nǎichá),” which is black tea with milk and tiny balls made from sweet potato starch. “珍珠 (zhēnzhū)” means “pearl,” and those tiny starch balls are like pearls.
4. “茶藝館” is the kind of tea house serving traditional Chinese tea. The decorations are usually more Chinese. Most people in a 茶藝館 have tea in the traditional way, which means to drink 老人茶 or 蓋杯 (gàibēi). To make 老人茶 requires a set of utensils and some knowledge of preparing certain kinds of tea. Drinking 蓋杯 is easier, since everyone drinks with a bigger cup with tea

leaves in it.

5. “茶食” refers to snacks that go with tea, including: peanuts, watermelon seeds, dried plums, many kinds of rice cake, etc.
6. “享受” means “to enjoy” when it is used as a verb. It means “enjoyment” when it is used as a noun. It can only be applied to certain kinds of enjoyment, which tend to be material or physical. When it is said of someone that they “只知道享受”, that means they only want ease and comfort, and do not like things that are difficult. Since the application is limited, the object of “享受” is limited.
7. “同意” means “to agree with someone.” It is incorrect to say “我跟你同意。” It should be “我同意。” or “我同意你的意見（看法）”.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

小林：走了半天，又累又渴。我们去喝点什么吧。

小陈：好啊。前面有一家泡沫红茶店，我们去那里，好不好？

小林：茶艺馆比较安静，气氛好。我们还是去茶艺馆吧。

小陈：好吧。

(到了茶艺馆)

服务生：两位想喝什么茶？

小陈：出门前就喝了一杯水。逛了一下午，什么都没喝，现在真的渴死了。(对服务生)请先给我们一人一杯水，好吗？

服务生：好，没问题。(走开)

小林：我们喝乌龙茶，还是清茶？这里也有最新流行的水果茶、奶茶、加味茶。你大概比较有兴趣。

小陈：那我喝香片加蜂蜜。不知道他们有没有。

小林：应该有，我不喜欢甜茶，也不喜欢太清淡的茶，我喝乌龙吧。

服务生(拿水来)：请问要喝什么茶？决定了吗？

小陈：一个香片加蜂蜜，一个乌龙。

服务生：要不要来点儿茶食？

小林：花生、瓜子，各来一份儿好了。

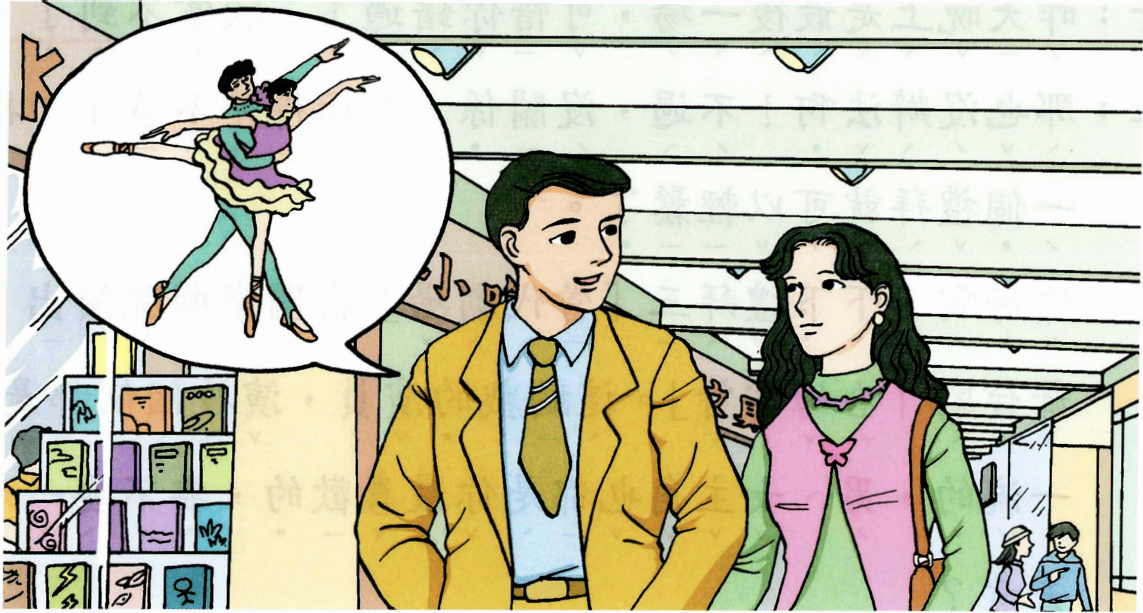
服务生：好，谢谢。我马上送茶具、茶叶跟茶食来。(走开)

小林：我觉得一边喝茶，一边聊天是最大的享受。

小陈：嗯，我同意。

第十課 去看表演

Lesson 10 Going to See a Performance



趙奇：嗨！李紅，好久不見，你好像瘦了。¹

李紅：是啊，謝謝你的關心。我最近工作很忙，天天都很晚回家。

趙奇：昨天晚上的表演好棒，可惜你沒來看。

李紅：什麼表演？我一個月沒看表演了。

趙奇：俄羅斯芭蕾舞團來了好幾天了，你還不知道啊？

李紅：我知道，可是實在抽不出時間來。他們的表演怎麼樣？票好買嗎？

趙奇：就因為表演精采，非常賣座，觀眾多得不得了。我

排了三個小時的隊才買到票。²

李紅：你才等了三個小時，我聽說有人等了五個小時呢！³

趙奇：昨天晚上是最後一場，可惜你錯過了，欣賞不到了。⁴

李紅：那也沒辦法啊！不過，沒關係，我忙得差不多了，再一個禮拜就可以輕鬆了。⁵

趙奇：那好啊，下下禮拜三「當代劇場」在國家劇院演出舞台劇「哈姆雷特」。這齣戲的演員，演技個個都是一流的，男、女主角也都是你最喜歡的，要不要一起去看？

李紅：當然要去，這麼有名的戲劇我一定不會錯過。

趙奇：好，我去買票。你有沒有報紙？我看看哪天開始賣票。

李紅：報紙給你。

趙奇：我想買前排中間的位子，你覺得怎麼樣？

李紅：都可以。恐怕票也不好買，能買到就不錯了。⁶

趙奇：買到了我就給你打電話。

李紅：好，謝謝。麻煩你啦！

Vocabulary

1. 表演 biǎoyǎn V/N: to perform/a performance (M: 場)

- 1) 你剛學過調酒，要不要表演一下？
- 2) 昨天那個樂團的表演不錯。他們一邊唱歌，一邊跳舞，很熱鬧。
1) You have just learned how to mix cocktails. Do you want to show us?
2) Yesterday, that band gave a good show. They sang and danced along. It was really exciting.

演 yǎn V: to act; to perform

老陳在連續劇裡總是演壞人，所以他的孩子不願意跟他一起出門。

Old Chen always acts the roles of bad guys in soap operas, so his children do not want to go out with him.

2. 嗨 hài I: Hi; Hello

嗨。你好。

Hi. Hello.

3. 瘦 shòu SV: to be thin; to be skinny

我最近瘦了不少，衣服都鬆了。

Recently I have lost much weight and my clothes are loose.

*4. 胖 pàng SV: to be fat

我怕胖，所以很少吃糖。

I'm afraid of getting fat, so I do not eat much candy.

5. 關心 guānxīn V/N: to be concerned/concern

- 1) 王先生太忙，所以沒有時間關心他孩子心裡想些什麼。
- 2) 謝謝老師的關心，我已經找到工作了。

1) Mr. Wang is too busy, so he has no time to be concerned about what is in the mind of his children.

2) Teacher, thank you for your concern. I have already found a job.

6. 俄羅斯芭蕾舞團 Éluósī Bālěi Wǔtuán Proper N: Russian Ballet Dance Troupe

俄羅斯 Éluósī Proper N: Russia

芭蕾舞 bālěiwǔ N: ballet (M: 支、場)

7. 實在 shízài Adv/SV: really; truly/to be real; solid; concrete, realistic

- 1) 我實在不願意跟你借錢，可是我身上連一塊錢都沒有，實在沒有辦法，請你一定要幫忙。
- 2) 小王說話很實在，心裡想什麼就說什麼，常常沒有想到別人可能聽了會生氣。

3) 你放心！我們店裡的東西價錢都很實在，應該賣多少錢，就賣多少錢，不會貴的。

1) I really don't want to borrow money from you, but I don't even have a dollar with me and there is really no way out. Please, you must help me.

2) Little Wang talks frankly, he says whatever comes to his mind and is often not aware that his words may irritate others.

3) Rest assured, the prices in our shop are all realistic. We sell at the price the goods should sell for. They won't be expensive.

8. 抽不出來 chōubùchūlái RC: cannot take out; unable to draw out; unable to pull out

小王從書裡抽出來一張照片，原來是他女朋友。

Little Wang pulled out a photo from the book. It turned out to be the photo of his girlfriend.

抽 chōu V: to draw out; to pull out; to smoke

1) 參加這次活動的人有十個，可是我們只有三份獎品，所以現在我們要從十個裡面抽三個來領獎品。

2) 對不起！先生，這裡不可以抽煙。

1) There are ten people participating in this activity this time, but we only have three prizes, so now we will draw three of the ten, and give them prizes.

2) I am sorry, sir. Smoking is not allowed here.

9. 精采 jīngcǎi SV: to be wonderful; to be brilliant

昨天的籃球比賽很精采，我們球隊只贏了一分。

Yesterday's basketball game was really wonderful. Our team won by only one point.

10. 觀眾 guānzhòng N: audience (M: 位)

各位電視機前的觀眾，如果你有什麼意見，請你跟我們聯絡。

Ladies and gentlemen of the television audience, if you have any opinion, please contact us.

聽眾 tīngzhòng N: listening audience (M: 位)

收音機旁邊的聽眾看不見在節目裡說話的人是什麼樣子。

The people listening to the radio cannot see what the performers are like.

11. 不得了 bùdéliǎo SV: to be serious/extremely; exceedingly

1) 不得了了！你太太開車撞到人了，你快去看看。

2) 我走了五個小時，累得不得了，一坐下就站不起來了。

1) Good heavens! Your wife's car hit someone. You hurry up and go check on it.

2) I walked for five hours, and I was extremely tired. Once I sat down, I could not stand back up.

12. 賣座 màizuò SV: to draw large audiences for a performance

聽說那部電影很賣座，上個月在台北就賣了五千萬元。

I heard that movie was very popular, and last month it earned \$50,000,000 in Taipei alone.

13. 排隊 pái//duì VO: to line up

要領包裹的人請到三號窗口排隊。

People wanting to pick up packages, please line up at window number three.

排 pái V/M: to line up; to arrange in order/line; row

1) 各位同學，等一下排隊的時候，高的人排在前面。

2) 我買的票是第八排第五號的位子。

1) Students, in a moment when we line up, tall people stand in the front.

2) The ticket I bought is for row 8 seat 5.

前排 qiánpái N: the front row

看球賽的時候，我喜歡坐在前排，可是看電影坐在後排比較舒服。

I like to sit in the front row when watching ball games, but sitting in back is more comfortable when watching movies.

14. 才 cāi Adv: only

小張才學了一個月的中文，已經會唱三首中文歌了。

Little Zhang has only studied one month of Chinese and already can sing three Chinese songs.

15. 最後 zuìhòu SP/Adv: the last; finally

1) 太好了，今天是最後一天上課，下了課就放假了。

2) 我們昨天約好了在火車站集合，別人都到了，老張最後才來。

3) 小張先說要吃日本菜，後來又說要吃中國菜，說了半天，最後我們去啤酒屋喝酒了。

1) It's wonderful. It is the last day of school, we'll have holidays after class.

2) We arranged to meet at the train station yesterday, and Old Zhang was the last to come after everybody else was there.

3) First, Little Zhang said that he wanted to have Japanese food, then he said he wanted to have Chinese food. After a long discussion, we finally went to have beer at a beer house.

16. 場 chǎng M: for events

1) 今天早上那場雨下了兩個鐘頭才停。

2) 有的卡通影片不太長，所以每天可以演八場。

1) The rain this morning lasted for two hours before stopping.

2) Some cartoons are not very long, therefore there can be eight showings a day.

17. 錯過 cuòguò V: to miss; to let slip

我昨天去朋友家玩，錯過了最後一班公車，身上也沒有錢，只好走路回家。

I went to my friend's house yesterday to have a good time, and missed the last bus. I didn't have any money on me, so I had no choice but to walk home.

18. 欣賞 xīnshǎng V: to enjoy; to appreciate; to admire

1) 台灣東部海邊的風景很漂亮，我們可以一邊開車，一邊欣賞風景。

2) 王老師最欣賞小李，因為小李總是能想出別人想不到的意見。

1) The scenery on the east coast of Taiwan is beautiful, we can enjoy the scenery while driving.

2) Teacher Wang appreciates Little Li the most, because Little Li can always think of some ideas that others cannot think of.

19. 下下禮拜三 xià xià lǐbàisān N: the Wednesday after next

下下個月 xià xià ge yuè N: the month after next

20. 當代劇場 Dāngdài Jùchǎng Proper N: The Contemporary Theater, a theater group

21. 國家劇院 Guójiā Jùyuàn Proper N: National Theater

電影院 diànyǐng yuàn N: movie theater (M: 家)

22. 舞台劇 wǔtái jù N: stage play (M: 齣)

舞台 wǔtái N: stage (M: 個)

小王一上了舞台就忘了自己本來是什麼樣子的人。

Little Wang forgets what kind of person he originally was as soon as he gets on stage.

23. 哈姆雷特 Hāmǔléitè Proper N: Hamlet

24. 齣 chū M: for dramas

老林演的第一齣舞台劇就是「爸爸的男朋友」。

The first stage play Old Lin acted in was "My Father's Boyfriend."

25. 演員 yǎnyuán N: actor or actress (M: 位、個)

功夫片裡面男演員比女演員多。

There are more actors than actresses in Kong Fu movies.

26. 主角 zhǔjiǎo/zhǔjué N: leading actor/actress

我們剛剛看的那個電影，男主角我認識，女主角是誰演的？

In the film we just saw, I know the leading actor, but who is the leading actress?

27. 演技 yǎnjì N: acting skill

小王第一次演電影，演技不太好。他在演什麼，別人都看不出來。

It's the first time Little Wang acted in the movies. His skill was not very good, and others could not tell what he was acting.

28. 一流 yìliú Att: first-rate

1) 老王是一流的演員，他演的電影都非常賣座。

2) 雖然我們學校很有名，可是一流的學校裡面也有二流的學生。不是每個人都很棒。

1) Old Wang is a first-rate actor. His movies are all hits.

2) Even though our school is famous, there are also second-rate students in first-rate schools. Not everyone is excellent.

29. 當然 dāngrán Adv: naturally; of course

你沒有念書，當然考得不好。

You did not study, so of course you didn't do well on the test.

30. 戲劇 xìjù N: drama; play (M: 場、齣)

戲 xì N: play; drama; theatrical performance (M: 齣)

我還沒有男朋友，我媽媽很急，等一下我媽媽來了，我們演一齣戲給她看。你演我的男朋友，好不好？

I don't have a boyfriend yet, and my mom is worried. When my mom comes in a while, let's put on a play for her. You act as my boyfriend, o.k.?

劇本 jùběn N: script (M: 本)

我昨天去看了一部電影，叫「我的爸爸」。我覺得劇本寫得很好，演員也演得不錯。

I went to see a movie yesterday, it was called "My Dad." I think the script was good, and the actors did a good job.

31. 報紙 bàozhǐ N: newspaper (M: 份、張)

報 bào N: newspaper (M: 份)

紙 zhǐ N: paper (M: 張)

32. 開始 kāishǐ V: to begin; to start

從今年三月開始我就不抽煙了。

From this March on, I quit smoking.

33. 中間 zhōngjiān N: middle

1) 坐在小張跟小王中間的那個人是誰啊？

2) 我的英文課跟中文課中間休息十分鐘，我可以打電話給你。

1) Who is the person sitting between Little Zhang and Little Wang?

2) I have a ten-minute break between my English class and my Chinese class, so I can call you then.

34. 恐怕 kǒngpà MA: I'm afraid; perhaps

- 1) 明天恐怕會下雨，我們還要去爬山嗎？
- 2) 恐怕媽媽已經知道我考試考壞了，怎麼辦？

- 1) I'm afraid it will rain tomorrow. Are we still going to go hike in the mountains?
- 2) I'm afraid Mother already knows that I didn't do well on my exam. What should I do?

Grammar

1. ⊙我最近工作很忙，天天都很晚回家。

My work has been very busy lately, everyday I return home very late.

⊙這齣戲的演員，演技個個都是一流的。

The actors in this play, every one of them has first-rate acting skills.

Explanation: MM is a duplicated measure word. It can only be a subject or modify the subject; if it is a duplicated measure of time, it can modify verbs. For example: 我天天走路到學校去。(I walk to school everyday.) “MM” indicates “every individuality involved is the same, nothing is exceptional”; it emphasizes the whole, so usually is followed by “都” or “全”. The differences from 「每M」 are: a) 「每M」 means the involved individuality is not necessarily all the same, it emphasizes individuality. For example “我們家的人，每個人喜歡吃的東西都不一樣。” You cannot say “我們家的人，個個喜歡吃的都不一樣，我爸爸喜歡吃甜的，我跟我媽媽喜歡吃辣的。” however, “我們家的人，個個都喜歡吃烤肉。” means the same as “我們家的人，每個都喜歡吃烤肉。” b) “MM” can only modify subject, but 「每M」 can modify subjects and objects. For example, “他聽見了我說的每一句話。” but you cannot say “他聽見了我說的句句話。”

王：我們去哪裡吃飯？哪家便宜？

李：我們現在在學校附近。這附近的餐廳 _____ 都不貴，去哪一家都一樣。

王：你喜歡看王老師寫的書嗎？

李：喜歡。他寫的書我quán(全)看過了，_____ 都好看。

王：小陳這次演的戲賣座不賣座？

李：非常賣座，_____ 都客滿。

王：我要喝冰一點的啤酒。哪一罐最冰？

李：Bīngxiāng(冰箱)裡的啤酒都已經冰了一天了，_____ 都很冰。

Additional Vocabulary

quán(全): completely; entirely

bīngxiāng(冰箱): refrigerator

2. 我最近很忙，一個月沒看表演了。

I have been very busy lately, and have not seen a performance in a month.

Explanation: Usually Time-duration is placed after the Verb, but with negative “不” or “沒”, Time-duration is placed before the Verb. That is “Time-duration + Neg. +VO”, indicating for how long an action has not been performed.

孩子：媽，我今天可以不可以不洗澡？

媽媽：不可以。天氣這麼熱，_____就chòu(臭)死了。

王：你怎麼在家？沒跟女朋友出去？

李：她生我的氣，已經_____。不知道她什麼時候才願意跟我說話。

太太：我說了半天了，你聽見了沒有？

先生：你說的都一樣，我已經聽了好幾年了。你能不能_____？
ràng(讓)我安靜一下。

王：要是你能不抽煙，我就請你吃飯。

李：好啊。我已經_____了，我們現在去吃飯吧。

三天沒跟我說話了
一天不洗澡

一分鐘不說話
一星期沒抽煙

Additional Vocabulary

chòu(臭): smelly; stinking

ràng(讓): to allow; to let

3. 我知道，可是實在抽不出時間來。

I know, but I really cannot spare any time.

Explanation: “實在” has three common usages: a) it is an adverb, meaning “indeed,” e.g. “這次考試實在很難”. The speaker uses “實在” to express a feeling that the thing is not happening as he/she expected, but the fact is actually like this. If the speaker feels that the other party has doubts, he/she will use “真的” to emphasize it is like this indeed. Example: “我真的很想去看，可是實在抽不出時間來。I really want to go, but I cannot spare any time indeed.” b) it is an adjective, meaning “honest”, as in “這個人賣東西很實在，不隨便要價錢。This man is honest in selling things, he won't ask for prices as he likes. c) it is an adjective, meaning “firm; sturdy; durable,” example, 這輛車做得很實在。This car is made very durable.

王：再吃一塊 Pizza 吧。

李：不行。我真的很想吃，可是我 _____，我已經太胖了。

王：這個電影才演了一半，你怎麼就要走了？

李：我 shòu(受)不 liǎo(了)了，這個電影 _____。

王：你幫我看看我這封中文信有沒有錯。

李：對不起，你的字寫得太 luàn(亂)了，我 _____。

王：你為什麼常常來這家餐廳吃飯？

李：因為這裡的 _____。

王：來考試的人那麼多，你為什麼 lùqǔ(錄取)張大年？

李：我看他 _____。

王：你這雙鞋，穿了兩年了，還沒壞。

李：對啊，這雙鞋 _____。

王：這張桌子比較貴，你為什麼買這張？

李：因為這張桌子的 cáiliào(材料) _____。

實在太難看了
說話很實在

實在看不懂
比較實在

實在不能再吃了
價錢很實在 做得很實在

Additional Vocabulary

shòu(受)不 liǎo(了): cannot stand
lùqǔ(錄取): to recruit; to admit

luàn(亂): to be messy
cáiliào(材料): material

10

4. 就因為表演精彩，非常賣座，觀眾多得不得了。

It was because the show was wonderful that the audience was extraordinarily large.

Explanation: “多得不得了(SV得不得了)” indicates the degree of the SV is extremely high, cannot be higher, and there is no tone of exaggeration. Compared to “SV死了”, “SV死了” is more exaggerated.

王：小林怎麼不在？還沒下班，他就走了啊？

李：他接到電話說他家房子燒起來了。他 _____，放下電話就走了。

王：那個演員長得不太好看，可是他演的電影都很賣座。

李：當然啦！他的演技 _____，誰都愛看他的電影。

王：小張今天怎麼了？那麼高興。

李：今天他是他的生日，他媽媽送了他一輛車，所以_____。

爸爸：今天真奇怪，你們怎麼沒看電視？

哥哥：都是弟弟，他跟我qiǎng(搶)。媽媽_____，就把電視關了。

高興得不得了
急得不得了

好得不得了
棒得不得了

氣得不得了

Additional Vocabulary

qiǎng(搶): to grab; to compete for

5. 你才等了三個小時。 You only waited three hours.

Explanation: Here, 「才」 indicates the speaker feels the quantity is too little and the level is too low.

Fill the blank with “就” or “才”.

王：奇怪！我_____喝了一杯牛奶，怎麼這麼飽？

李：你是不是吃了什麼別的東西？

王：這麼晚了，該睡覺了。

李：不行，明天要考試。我_____看了兩課，還不能睡。

王：你明天不是要考試嗎？怎麼沒看你看書？

李：明天_____考一課，不看也沒關係。

王：要不要看中文報？給你。

李：不要。我_____學了一年中文，怎麼會看報紙呢？

王：你為什麼不看早一點的電影？比較便宜啊。

李：今天不是週末，_____演一場，沒有早一點的。

王：先生，對不起！你過期了，要扣錢。

李：_____過一天，就要扣錢嗎？

6. 我忙得差不多了。再一個禮拜就可以輕鬆了。

My busy life is about to finish. I can relax in one more week.

Explanation: “V得差不多了” indicates something is in process and is going to reach the expected goal.

王：這家餐廳的菜，上得真快。

李：是啊。菜 _____，我們吃吧。

王：露營烤肉要用的東西，你都買好了嗎？

李：只有肉還沒買，別的都 _____。

王：明天考試，要考五課，你看完了嗎？

李：我已經 _____。還有一課沒看完。

王：球賽還沒打完啊？要吃飯了。

李： _____，再過十分鐘就jiéshù(結束)了。

Additional Vocabulary

jiéshù(結束): to finish

7. 恐怕票也不好買，能買到就不錯了。

I am afraid that the tickets are not easy to buy. It will be good if you can get them.

Explanation: “恐怕” may be placed either in front of or after the topic. It indicates the speaker's guess. There are two situations: a) The speaker is worried or scared something may happen. b) The speaker estimates the likely quantity or situation. Although both are the speaker's meanings, “我” cannot be uttered.

王：小張今天晚上會不會來看表演？

李：他 _____。我剛剛看見他，他說他頭tòng(痛)。

王：從這兒到文化中心半個小時到得了嗎？

李：現在是下班時間，車多， _____。

王：這杯茶給你，你看好喝不好喝。

李：好苦啊！ _____。

王：週末我們去山上露營，怎麼樣？

李：剛剛氣象預報說這幾天天氣都不好， _____，我們最好等天氣好一點再去。

恐怕到不了
週末恐怕會下雨

恐怕要四十分鐘才到得了
你恐怕放了太多茶葉了

恐怕不會來了

Additional Vocabulary
頭 tòng(痛): headache

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

- () 這兩個人在哪裡說話？
a. 看電影的地方 b. 賣票的地方 c. 賣電腦的地方
- () 這位先生打算做什麼？
a. 買票看戲 b. 買電腦 c. 定時間約會
- () 四月十六到十九號有什麼活動？
a. 最近要演出 b. 國家劇院要表演 c. 台北劇場要表演
- () 這位先生要什麼？
a. 兩張星期六晚上的戲票
b. 下下禮拜四、五、六、日各買一張
c. 電腦的 (jìlù) 記錄
- () 這位先生的問題是什麼？
a. 他的錢不夠買票 b. 他不知道星期天有沒有票。
c. 星期六只有兩千塊的跟後排的位子。
- () 這位先生決定怎麼辦？
a. 買後排的票 b. 不買了 c. 買兩千塊的票

10

Additional Vocabulary
jìlù(記錄): record

Notes

1. “你好像瘦了。” means “It seems that you have lost some weight.” This “了” indicates a change of status—you are thinner than you used to be.
2. “我排了三個小時的隊才買到票。” means “I didn’t get the ticket until I had been in line for three hours.” This “才” indicates that it took more time than expected. Please refer to L.10, Vol. I.
3. “我聽說有人等了五個小時呢。” means “I heard that some people waited for five hours (to get the tickets).” This “有人” refers to someone or some people, which is not specific.
4. “可惜你錯過了，欣賞不到了。” means “Too bad that you missed it. You won’t be able to watch it now.” The last “了” indicates a change of status—you had a chance to watch it but you missed it, there are no more chances for you to watch it now.
5. “再一個禮拜就可以輕鬆了。” means “(I) can relax in one more week.” This “了” indicates an anticipated future change of status — I am busy now, but I can relax in a week.
6. “恐怕票也不好買，能買到就不錯了。” means “(I’m afraid that) the tickets are not easy to get. It’ll be good if I can get one.” This “了” indicates a change of status — I may not get the ticket, but it would be good if I get one.
7. “胖” means fat, chubby. In general, Chinese are not very sensitive to being fat. Even though westernized young people like to be skinny, the older generations think being a little fat is not a bad thing. It is a symbol of being able to afford a good life. If someone is very skinny, older people would think there may be something wrong with this person’s health.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

赵奇：嗨！李红，好久不见，你好像瘦了。

李红：是啊，谢谢你的关心。我最近工作很忙，天天都很晚回家。

赵奇：昨天晚上的表演好棒，可惜你没来看。

李红：什么表演？我一个月没看表演了。

赵奇：俄罗斯芭蕾舞团来了好几天了，你还不知道啊？

李红：我知道，可是实在抽不出时间来。他们的表演怎么样？票好买吗？

赵奇：就因为表演精采，非常卖座，观众多得不得了。我排了三个小时的队才买到票。

李红：你才等了三个小时。我听说有人等了五个小时呢！

赵奇：昨天晚上是最后一场。可惜你错过了，欣赏不到了。

李红：那也没办法啊！不过，没关系，我忙得差不多了，再一个礼拜就可以轻松了。

赵奇：那好啊，下下礼拜三「当代剧场」在国家剧院演出舞台剧「哈姆雷特」。这出戏的演员，演技个个都是一流的，男、女主角也都是你最喜欢的，要不要一起去看？

李红：当然要去。这么有名的戏剧我一定不会错过。

赵奇：好，我去买票。你有没有报纸？我看看哪天开始卖票。

李红：报纸给你。

赵奇：我想买前排中间的位子，你觉得怎么样？

李红：都可以。恐怕票也不好买，能买到就不错了。

赵奇：买到了我就给你打电话。

李红：好，谢谢。麻烦你啦！

Exercises

I. Brain storm

The entire class may be one group or may be divided into smaller groups. The students think about two things which can be done at the same time, e.g. “Many people like to sing when they take a shower.”, “Many people like to listen to the radio when they drive.”, “Some people like to watch TV while they eat.”, etc. Two students go to the blackboard and write down what the other students say. Then the class discusses whether the behavior is good or not, safe or unsafe. In the end, students offer advice such as “It is best that we do not watch TV while we eat.”

II. Get to know Chinese tea

The teacher brings some Chinese tea and prepares it for the students, giving them a simple introduction to various Chinese teas and how to drink them. Then the students express their feelings about the tea, the tea's special characteristics, which flavor they like, etc. A videotape can also be used to introduce Chinese tea culture.

III. Write a skit

Students can be divided into groups of four or five. Each group prepares a script for a ten minute skit. The teacher can help with any problems. After a month, the script should be given to the teacher for corrections. Then roles are assigned and lines memorized, and the skit is performed the following week.

IV. Association

The students sit in a circle. The game starts when the teacher says a word. The student next to the teacher then says a word associated with the first word, e.g. 游泳→喝水→泡沫紅茶→流行→. If a student is not clear or does not understand, an explanation of the word may be given.

V. Role play

Two students: one is selling tickets for a dance performance, the other is buying tickets. The buyer wants to buy two tickets and will give one to his/her friend. The friends have already decided the tickets are for which day and which performance, but the tickets for that performance have already sold out, so the buyer must buy tickets for another performance. The seller mentions other performances, but none are suitable for the two friends. What should be done? The students act out the situation.

Reading Comprehension

家明:

兩個星期沒給你寫信了，你還好吧？上個禮拜學校考試，天天考，考了五天。我每天念書、考試，沒有時間休息，差一點累死了，實在沒有辦法跟你聯絡。昨天晚上終於考完了，我跟幾個同學去輕鬆一下。學校附近新開了一家泡沫紅茶店，氣氛很不錯，有很多特別調出來的加味茶。我們決定各來一壺，一人一種，試試味道怎麼樣。我叫的那種甜得不得了，我只好加一點水再喝。我們一邊喝茶，一邊聊學校的事，大家都說得很高興。小王問我們要不要去國家劇院看莎士比亞的戲劇，他想去買下星期六晚上那場的票。沒想到就我一個人有興趣。報上說這次演出的都是一流的演員，演技都很棒，很賣座。我說我們現在才去買票，恐怕票已經賣得差不多了。小王說我們才買兩張，問題不大，還是去試試吧，說不定就買到了。好吧，那就等我看過了，再來告訴你他們演得怎麼樣吧。祝

快樂

書宜

四月八日

Additional Vocabulary:

zhōngyú(終於): finally; at last

說不定: probably; maybe; perhaps

Shāshìbǐyà(莎士比亞): Shakespeare

演出: to perform; performance

快lè(樂): to be happy

Questions:

1. 這封信是誰寫給誰的？
2. 這兩個人多久沒聯絡了？為什麼？
3. 信裡說我昨天晚上去哪裡了？為什麼去？
4. 那個地方有什麼特別？我們在那裡做什麼？
5. 我們在那裡點了什麼特別的東西？
6. 小王下星期六要去做什麼？誰要跟他一起去？
7. 我們買得到票嗎？為什麼？
8. 信是哪天寫的？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “蜜蜂” means?
a) honey bees b) beehive c) honeycomb
2. What do you think “角色” means?
a) a corner with color b) a colorful horn c) a role in a play

3. What do you think “彩色” means?

a) a wonderful color

b) colorful

c) multicolor

4. What do you think “抽獎” means?

a) to draw lots

b) to find something to be the prize

c) to pull out the gift

Authentic Materials

I. 泡沫紅茶店價目表

清涼泡沫紅茶店									
桌號：		外帶：		費用：					
飲料類 (冷熱均可)						茶 點			
紅茶類		小	大	奶茶類		小	大		
泡沫紅茶		25	50	珍珠奶茶		30	60	荷包蛋 10	
檸檬紅茶		35	70	花生奶茶		35	70	毛豆 30	
蜂蜜紅茶		35	70	椰子奶茶		35	70	甜不辣 30	
百香烏龍		35	70	珍珠奶綠		40	80	炸薯條 30	
蜂蜜綠茶		35	70	巧克力奶		45	90	豆干 25	
蜂蜜香片		35	70					珍珠丸 30	
								花生土司 25	
特別冷飲			咖啡類			商業簡餐			
青梅茶		35	70	泡沫咖啡		40	80	蠔油牛肉 85	
鮮桔茶		40	80	特調咖啡		70		黑胡椒肉片 85	
果汁類						雞腿飯 90			
木瓜牛奶		60		柳丁汁		50		排骨飯 85	
檸檬汁		60		西瓜汁		50		義大利肉醬麵 85	
特別熱飲						牛肉麵 85			
青梅茶		65		桂花茶		80		宮保雞丁 90	
鮮桔茶		65		花果茶		80		奶油玉米雞 90	




謝謝您的光臨！

最低消費每人25元

請勿觸摸、打碎、大聲喧嘩

II. 節目單

 月份節目 February Program			
日期	場地	國家戲劇院	國家音樂廳
1	日	義大利歌劇《度藍朵》	台北樂團音樂會
2	一	義大利歌劇《度藍朵》	台北樂團音樂會
3	二	義大利歌劇《度藍朵》	台北樂團音樂會
4	三		
5	四		青少年音樂會
6	五	王世文歌劇《馬可波羅》	青少年音樂會
7	六	王世文歌劇《馬可波羅》	青少年音樂會
8	日	王世文歌劇《馬可波羅》	好萊塢電影音樂
9	一		好萊塢電影音樂
10	二		好萊塢電影音樂
11	三		好萊塢電影音樂
12	四	俄羅斯芭蕾舞	好萊塢電影音樂
13	五	俄羅斯芭蕾舞	
14	六	俄羅斯芭蕾舞	葉綠娜鋼琴獨奏會
15	日	俄羅斯芭蕾舞	葉綠娜鋼琴獨奏會
16	一	俄羅斯芭蕾舞	
17	二		
18	三		
19	四		
20	五	當代舞展《羅生門》	
21	六	當代舞展《羅生門》	中國歌獨唱會《王明》
22	日	當代舞展《羅生門》	中國歌獨唱會《王明》
23	一		
24	二		
25	三		
26	四	京劇《紅娘》	當代名家管弦樂
27	五	京劇《紅娘》	當代名家管弦樂
28	六	京劇《紅娘》	當代名家管弦樂

1. 這是什麼樣的節目單？
2. 如果你想看歌劇，二月有哪些不同的歌劇節目？
3. 你想看跳舞的表演，二月有哪些節目可以看？是什麼時候？
4. 你喜歡電影音樂，二月什麼時候可以去國家音樂廳聽？
5. 你想聽中國歌，二月什麼時候可以去國家音樂廳聽？

第六單元 找工作

Unit 6 Job Hunting

Key Study Points

Lesson 11: job information: job description, schedule, pay / saying a number is so small it almost doesn't exist / change of tone / only one condition before reaching the goal / way of doing a certain thing

Lesson 12: at the job interview: experience, education, language ability, salary / tone of to go further / talking about past experience / reaching a certain level

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 11

學期，學費，漲，跌，存，繳，著急，
打工，賺錢，經驗，學歷，需要，
只要，學會，老闆，請，簡單，複雜，
準備，帶位，收，擦，打烊，打掃，
整理，按，情況，安排，清楚，
見面，談，運氣，碰到，談成，祝

沒多少
VP/SV 是 VP/SV，可是……
只要……就……
學會
這樣 V
把 + O + V 一下
按 NP + V
V 成

Lesson 12

應徵，徵求，祕書，305 室，經理，
面談，敲門，自傳，履歷表，外文系，
畢業，既然，趁，年輕，世界，
跨國企業，業務，完全，而且，制度，
待遇，福利，將來，發展，外語，
能力，重要，除了，以外，曾經，
德文，休假，薪水，接受，條件

既然
趁
而且
VV 看
除了……以外，還……
曾經
滿 Nu-M

第十一課 找工作嗎？

Lesson 11 Looking for a Job?



小周：下學期學費又要漲了¹。我算算存在銀行裡的錢，
繳了學費就沒多少了²，生活費怎麼辦？

老吳：別著急，我來想想。³你想不想打工賺錢？

小周：想是想，可是我沒有什麼經驗，學歷也不夠高。
不知道能做什麼。

老吳：沒經驗沒關係，有的工作也不需要高學歷。只要你願意學，很快就學會了。

小周：希望老闆也都能這樣想。

老吳：欸，⁴我想起來了。我們老闆昨天說他想再請一個服務

生⁵，你有沒有興趣啊？

小周：服務生要做哪些事？

老吳：很簡單：客人來以前，準備一下。客人來了，給客人帶位，送菜，收碗盤，擦桌子，還有打烊⁶以後把餐廳打掃一下，整理整理。

小周：這些事我都可以做，工作時間呢？

老吳：每個星期十二個小時。一個星期兩次或三次，可以按你的情況安排。

小周：一個小時多少錢？

老吳：我不太清楚，你最好自己跟老闆見個面⁷，談一談。我把我們餐廳的地址跟電話給你。

小周：太好了！我的運氣真不錯，想找工作就碰到你。工作談成了，我一定請你吃飯，好好謝謝你。

老吳：別客氣啦！祝你好運，再見。

Vocabulary

1. 學期 xuéqī N: semester; term of study (M: 個)
2. 學費 xuéfèi N: tuition fee (M: 筆)
3. 漲 zhǎng V: to increase in price
房東說下個月房租要漲五百塊。
The landlord said that next month the rent will increase by \$500.
- *4. 跌 diē V: to stagger; to fall
最近買房子的人很少，所以房子的價錢跌了一點。
Recently very few people have been buying apartments, so the price of apartments has dropped a bit.
5. 存 cún V: to deposit; to save
1) 你工作好幾年了，應該存了不少錢了吧？夠不夠買房子？
2) 我把錢存在台灣銀行，應該很安全吧？
1) You have been working for many years and must have saved quite a bit of money. Is it enough to buy a house?
2) I deposited the money in the Bank of Taiwan. I suppose it should be very safe.
- 提 tí V: to withdraw
我的錢用完了，得去銀行提錢了。
I have used up all of my money, and I must go to the bank to withdraw some.
6. 繳 jiǎo V: to pay
這個月的水電費，你繳了沒有？
Have you paid this month's electric and water bill?
7. 著急 zháojī SV: to be anxious or worried
我看小張很著急的樣子，就問他有什麼問題，原來他的信用卡丟了。
I noticed how worried Little Zhang was, so I asked him what the problem was. It turns out he lost his credit card.
8. 打工 dǎ//gōng VO: to work part-time
我今天下課以後，要去「天天來餐廳」打兩個小時的工。
When I get out of class today, I will go to the "Tiantianlai Restaurant" and work for two hours.
9. 賺錢 zhuàn//qián VO/SV: to earn money
1) 我賣一件襯衫可以賺一百塊錢，還不錯吧？
2) 夏天賣冰的東西比較賺錢。

- 1) I can earn \$100 selling a shirt. Not bad, huh?
- 2) In the summer, selling ice cold things can make more money.

賺 zhuàn V: to earn

10. 經驗 jīngyàn N: experience

我沒有交女朋友的經驗，跟女孩子出去的時候，常不知道應該說些什麼。

I do not have any experience making for a girlfriend. When going out with a girl, I usually do not know what I should talk about.

11. 學歷 xuélì N: educational background

我沒念什麼書，只有高中的學歷，恐怕不容易找到工作。

I have not studied very much, I only have a high school education. I'm afraid it will not be easy to find a job.

經歷 jīnglì V: to experience

我聽說你上次去爬山，找不到路下山，在山上過了三天。這樣的事，我沒有經歷過。

I heard the last time you went hiking you could not find a road going down and spent three days on the mountain. I have not had this kind of experience.

12. 需要 xūyào V/N: to need/need

- 1) 這次爸爸叫我做的事，我可以一個人做，不需要別人幫忙。
- 2) 因為每個學生的需要不一樣，老師不能總是用一樣的辦法教學生。

- 1) I can do by myself the things Dad told me to do this time. I do not need anyone to help me.
- 2) Since every student's needs are different, teachers cannot always use the same method to teach them.

13. 只要 zhǐyào Adv: provided only, so long as

肉、水果都買好了，只要這個週末不下雨，我們就去烤肉。

The meat and fruit have both been bought. So long as it doesn't rain this weekend, we can go for a barbecue.

14. 學會 xuéhuì RC: to have learned

王先生學開車，學了很久才學會。

It takes a long time for Mr. Wang to learn how to drive.

15. 老闆 lǎobǎn N: boss; business owner (M: 位)

16. 請 qǐng V: to hire; to invite

我們公司不大，老闆只請了三個人。可是最近很忙，我覺得他應該再請一個人。

Our company is not big and the boss has only hired three people, but recently we've been very busy. I think he should hire one more person.

17. 簡單 jiǎndān SV: to be simple

我這次旅行帶的東西很簡單，只帶了一件襯衫、一雙鞋。

On this trip I brought simple things, just a shirt and a pair of shoes.

*18. 複雜 fùzá SV: to be complicated

你的問題真複雜。我聽了半天，還不清楚怎麼會有今天這種情況。

Your problem is very complicated. I have listened a long time and am still not sure how we can have this kind of situation today.

19. 準備 zhǔnbèi V: to prepare

今天我不跟你們去打球了，我要準備明天的考試。

I will not go play ball with you today. I have to prepare for tomorrow's test.

20. 帶位 dàiwèi V: to lead to a seat; to usher

我們去的那家餐廳沒有帶位的服務生，得自己找位子。

The restaurant we are going to does not have a waiter to lead us to the table. We must find a place ourselves.

帶 dài V: to lead

我剛搬來，還不認識路，不知道台灣銀行在哪裡。能不能麻煩你帶我去？

I just moved here and am not yet familiar with the roads. I do not know where the Bank of Taiwan is. Could I trouble you to take me there?

21. 收 shōu V: to receive

今天一號，房東要來收房租。你準備好了沒有？

Today is the first and the landlord wants to come collect the rent. Have you prepared it?

22. 擦 cā V: to wipe

小王把桌上的茶打翻了，地上都是水，快把地擦擦。

Little Wang spilled the tea that was on the table. The floor is wet. Hurry and wipe it up.

23. 打烊 dǎyáng V: to close a shop after business hours

我們學校對面的餐廳九點打烊。現在已經九點半了，不必去了。

The restaurant across from our school closes at nine o'clock. It is already nine thirty, so it's not necessary to go.

24. 打掃 dǎsǎo V: to sweep

我每個星期六打掃房間，先把房間裡的髒東西都丟出去，再擦地。

Every Saturday, I sweep my room. First, I throw out all the dirty things in my room and then wipe the floor.

掃 sǎo V: to sweep

地上好髒，多久沒掃地了？

The floor is dirty. How long since it was swept?

25. 整理 zhěnglǐ V: to tidy up

我明天搬家，今天晚上一定要把東西整理好。

I am moving tomorrow and must have my things straightened up by tonight.

整 zhěng Att: orderly; exactly; entire

1) 我們八點整在學校門口見。

2) 我今天整天都沒看見你，你到哪裡去了？

1) We will meet at 8:00 sharp at the school gate.

2) I have not seen you all day. Where did you go?

26. 按 àn V: to press; to follow; according to

1) 在我們公司打電話，如果要打到外面去，要先按「九」。

2) 按報上寫的，那齣舞台劇的票都賣完了。

1) When calling from our office, if you want to call an outside line, you need to press 9 first.

2) According to the newspaper, tickets to that performance are sold out.

27. 情況 qíngkuàng N: situation (M: 種)

颱風來的時候，風雨都很大，路上的情況很不好。

During a typhoon it is very windy and rainy. The road conditions are very bad.

28. 安排 ānpái V: to arrange

你想什麼時候去旅行？行程、旅館都安排好了沒有？

When do you plan to travel? Have the itinerary and hotels been arranged?

29. 清楚 qīngchǔ SV/V: to be clear/to make clear

1) 你這個字寫得不清楚，好像「己」又好像「巳」，我看不懂。

2) 我不清楚這兒附近的房子房租一個月多少錢。

1) You did not write this character clearly. It looks like “己” and also like “巳”. I cannot tell what it is.

2) I am not clear about the monthly rent for an apartment in this area.

30. 見面 jiàn//miàn VO: to meet with

我跟小張明天七點見面，一起去看電影。

I am meeting Little Zhang at seven tomorrow, and we'll go to a movie together.

31. 談 tán V: to talk

我心裡有一件事。你有沒有空？能不能跟你談談？

I have something on my mind. Do you have any free time? Can I talk with you?

32. 運氣 yùnqì N: luck (M: 份)
 小張最近運氣很壞，做什麼事都有麻煩。
 Little Zhang's luck has been very bad recently. He has had trouble doing everything.
- 好運 hǎoyùn N: good luck (M: 份)
 我的好運什麼時候才會來啊？為什麼我的生活裡有這麼多麻煩？
 When will my good luck come? Why is there so much trouble in my life?
33. 碰到 pèngdào RC: to encounter; to bump into
 昨天我碰到一個幾年沒見的朋友，我們就到一個茶館去聊了一會兒。
 Yesterday I bumped into a friend I had not seen for several years. We then went to a tea house and chatted for a while.
- 碰見 pèngjiàn RC: to meet unexpectedly
- 碰 pèng V: to collide; to hit; to touch
 我女朋友用手碰了我一下，叫我看車外面一個樣子很奇怪的人。
 My girlfriend tapped me with her hand and told me to look at a strange person out of the car.
34. 談成 tánchéng RC: to reach an agreement; to conclude talks
 我們公司跟萬美公司簽約的事談了三次才談成。
 Our company talked with Wanmei Company three times about the contract before concluding the talks.
35. 祝 zhù V: to wish someone happiness
 我上飛機的時候，我朋友祝我一路平安。
 When I boarded the plane, my friend wished me a safe trip.

Grammar

1. 繳了學費就沒多少了，生活費怎麼辦？

There will be little left after I pay tuition. What will I do for living expenses?

Explanation: “沒多少(+NP)” indicates that the speaker feels the NP amount is very small. Compared with “沒什麼+NP”, “沒多少+NP” points out that the amount is small and concrete, while “沒什麼+NP” indirectly says the amount is almost nothing, e.g. “我沒多少錢” means that I only have a little bit of money. “我沒什麼錢。” means that I do not have much money to use.

Use “沒多少+NP” or “沒什麼+NP” to complete the following dialogues.

王：這次台北劇團的表演賣座嗎？

李：門票太貴，_____。

王：我渴死了，我要喝水。

李：水壺給你，可是別喝那麼多，已經_____。

王：你為什麼買那麼多書？可以去圖書館借啊？

李：我去找過了。我覺得那裡面_____，我只好自己買。

王：你為什麼要去台灣學中文？

李：這裡中國人太少，我覺得_____。

王：你的錄音帶放在哪裡？我們來聽音樂。

李：我_____，就這幾卷，你自己 xuǎn(選)吧。

弟弟：哥，球賽開始了，快來看！

哥哥：你還在看電視！明天要考試，_____。去看書吧！

沒多少水了

沒什麼書

沒什麼機會說中文

沒多少錄音帶

沒多少人來看

沒多少時間準備了

Additional Vocabulary

圖書館: library

xuǎn (選): to choose

2. 想是想，可是我沒有什麼經驗……

I want to, but I do not have any experience....

Explanation: In the “A₁是A₂，可是……” sentence structure, A can be VP or SV. Before “可是” the speaker repeats the question, after “可是” the speaker states his real opinion or feeling. This expression is a kind of indirect denial.

王：我跟我妹妹明天晚上要去看芭蕾舞，你要不要一起去？

李：_____。

王：這雙鞋很便宜，你要不要買？

李：_____，所以我不想買。

王：你上個週末去健行了？累不累？

李：_____。

王：老師今天上課說的東西你都聽懂了嗎？

李：_____，所以考試的時候可能還有問題。

便宜是便宜，可是樣子不好看
聽是聽懂了，可是大概很快就忘了

去是想去，可是恐怕沒有時間
累是累，可是玩得很高興

3. 只要你願意學，很快就學會了。

As long as you are willing to learn, then you will learn very quickly.

Explanation: In the “只要……就……” sentence pattern the condition follows “只要”. If the situation is in accordance with the condition, the result follows “就”. This pattern can only be used with a typical or future situation, not with something that has already occurred. Since the speaker feels there is only one condition, it should not be difficult to fulfill.

王：我下個月想去歐洲旅行，要不要跟我一起去？

李：不知道我那時候有沒有假，_____。

王：這個電影這麼賣座，我怕我們會買不到票。

李：別怕，我有電話號碼。_____。

王：你想下禮拜的考試會不會很難？

李：不管難不難，_____。

王：簽約的事怎麼樣了？決定了沒有？

李：_____。

只要老闆放我假，我就可以跟你去
只要好好準備，就一定沒問題
只要早一點打電話訂票，就一定買得到
只要老闆同意，我們就可以簽約了

4. 只要你願意學，很快就學會了。

As long as you are willing to learn, then you will learn very quickly.

Explanation: “學會” is the completed action of a resultative compound verb. It represents ability to do a certain thing after study.

王：這首歌你還不會唱啊？你已經學了好幾天了。

李：沒辦法。有些地方很難，我_____，每一次都唱錯。

王：你會不會用電腦？

李：當然會啊。很容易，一學就 _____ 了。

老師：今天中文考試的時候，最後那個問題，你有一個字沒有寫，你為什麼不寫？

李：那個字，我還 _____ 怎麼寫，所以我只好不寫。

王：聽說你上個禮拜開始學游泳，現在會游了吧？

李：時間這麼短，怎麼 _____ ？

5. 希望老闆也都能這樣想。 I hope the boss also thinks this way.

Explanation: “這樣 V” indicates a way of doing something. It has the same meaning as “這麼 V”.

王：你怎麼可以把車停在百貨公司的前面？

李：別人都 _____ ，為什麼我不可以？

王：欸，現在是紅燈，你怎麼過馬路？

李：你別 _____ ，你一說別人都看我。

王：你這個字好像寫錯了？

李：真的嗎？我每次都 _____ 。

王：去火車站，能不能走信一路？

李：可以啊，_____ 五分鐘就到了。

Additional Vocabulary

馬路: road; street

6. 打烊以後把餐廳打掃一下，整理整理。

After closing time, you have the restaurant cleaned and straightened up.

Explanation: In the “把 + O + V + 一下” pattern “一下” acts as the compliment of “把”. This kind of sentence can also use a repetitive verb as a compliment.

王：青椒牛肉怎麼做？你會不會？

李：先 _____ ，再把青椒放進去一起炒。

店員：書跟錄影帶一共七百塊。要不要包？還是要袋子？

客人：請你 _____ ，我要送人。

王：我餓了，可以吃了嗎？啊，這裡有一塊肉還沒烤。

李：噢，我_____。等都烤好了就可以吃了。

王：明天要考試，可是我一點都不想看书，連翻都不想翻。

李：這樣不行。你最少也要_____，再去考試吧。

7. 可以按你的情況安排。 ... can arrange it according to your own situation.

Explanation: The “按” in the “按 NP+V” pattern is a preposition and is followed by a noun or noun phrase. “按 NP+V” means to follow a certain standard or request.

王：我們下個月去旅行，最好有人先安排一下旅館、機票的事。

李：好，你說得對，就_____，我叫小張去辦。

王：你們去歐洲的團，旅費是怎麼算的？

李：是_____，十天的、十五天的價錢都不一樣。

王：聽說老張的情況改變了，我們的計畫要改嗎？

李：不必，我們還是_____，應該沒有問題。

王：你們這幾個班，為什麼有的教得快，有的教得慢？

李：因為我們是_____。學生學得快，我們就教得快。

按學生的能力教
按天算

按我們的計畫做
按你說的辦

8. 工作談成了，我一定請你吃飯，好好謝謝你。

After the job is settled, I must treat you to a meal to thank you.

Explanation: “V 成” is a resultative verb compound in the perfect tense. If “得” or “不” is included, it is then a probability. The “成” ending indicates 成功, 完成, or 實現 (to succeed, to complete, to realize) and can be used with the following previously studied verbs: 談, 去, 來, 辦, 買, 搬, 錄, 睡, 吃, 借, 租, 看, etc.

王：你昨天租的錄影帶還沒看啊？

李：對啊，我本來晚上要看，可是朋友找我出去，就_____了。

王：我有一件很麻煩的事，想請你幫我辦。

李：可以啊！如果_____了，你要怎麼謝謝我？

王：你不是昨天去買鞋了嗎？怎麼又要去？

李：昨天去得太晚，鞋店打烊了，所以_____。

王：跟我們一起去KTV唱歌吧。

李：老闆要我加班，你想我_____嗎？

王：下學期學費要漲嗎？

李：學校想漲，可是學生kàngyì(抗議)，所以就_____。

Additional Vocabulary

加班: to work overtime

kàngyì (抗議): to protest

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

() 這兩個人可能在哪裡說話？

a. 家裡

b. 餐廳裡

c. 辦公室

() 這兩個人可能是什麼關係？

a. 餐廳老闆跟服務生

b. 先生和太太

c. 服務生跟客人

() 這位先生為什麼很生氣？

a. 老闆說他不對

b. 客人說他不對

c. 朋友說他不對

() 老闆要扣這位先生錢因為他做了什麼？哪個不對？

a. 桌子沒擦乾淨，碗盤沒擺好

b. 送錯菜

c. 跟客人說話不夠客氣

() 這位先生覺得老闆找他麻煩是因為

a. 他學歷太低

b. 他最有經驗，不會做錯事

c. 他不清楚他應該做什麼事

() 小姐覺得先生應該做什麼？

a. 去找新工作

b. 跟老闆說明天不做了

c. 不要生氣了，去洗澡、睡覺

Notes

1. “下學期學費又要漲了” means “The tuition is going to rise again next semester.” This “了” indicates a change of status — the tuition will be higher than it is this semester.
2. “我算算存在銀行裡的錢，繳了學費就沒多少了” means “I count the money I put in the bank, there will be little left after I pay the tuition.” The first “了” in “繳了學費” indicates the completion of the action of paying the tuition. The “了” at the end of the sentence indicates a change of the status — not much money will be left then. Another point is the difference between “繳” and “付”. Both “繳” and “付” means “to pay,” but “付” is to pay for things one buys, such as food, clothes, a house, stocks, etc., while “繳” is used to pay for things that one benefits from and is obligated to pay, such as tuition, taxes, utilities, gas, registration fees, insurance fees, etc.
3. “別著急，我來想想” means “Don't be anxious. Let me think (what we can do about it).” This “來” was introduced in Ch. 3. It denotes that some action is about to be taken by the subject of the sentence.
4. “欸，我想起來了” means “Oh, yeah, now I remember.” This “欸” should be pronounced as “ei,” indicating that the speaker has suddenly thought of something. When it is pronounced with a fourth tone, it is used to attract the attention of the listener.
5. “我們老闆昨天說他想再請一個服務生” means “Our boss said yesterday that he wanted to hire one more waiter.” The “請” here means “to hire.” It is used in a polite way. Another word used in business for “to hire” is “雇 (gù)” or “雇用”.
6. “打烊” means “to close the door of a shop.” Although “關門” means “to close the door,” Chinese choose to say “打烊” to mean closing the shop door every night. Since “關門” also implies that the business is shut down, both business owners and customers avoid using it.
7. “你最好自己跟老闆見個面” means “You'd better meet the boss (once) yourself.” The word “個” is usually used as the measure word for nouns, but here the “個” is used with a verb. “見個面” means “to meet once.” However, it is not really about the number of times of the action, it just gives a tone of casualness, making it less formal. If the number of times of the action is important, “次” should be the measure word.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

小周：下学期学费又要涨了。我算算存在银行里的钱，缴了学费就没有多少了，生活费怎么办？

老吴：别着急，我来想想。你想不想打工赚钱？

小周：想是想，可是我没有什么经验，学历也不够高。不知道能做什么。

老吴：没经验没关系，有的工作也不需要高学历。只要你愿意学，很快就学会了。

小周：希望老板也都能这样想。

老吴：欸，我想起来了。我们老板昨天说他想再请一个服务生，你有没有兴趣啊？

小周：服务生要做哪些事？

老吴：很简单：客人来以前，准备一下。客人来了，给客人带位，送菜，收碗盘，擦桌子，还有打烊以后把餐厅打扫一下，整理整理。

小周：这些事我都可以做。工作时间呢？

老吴：每个星期十二个小时。一个星期两次或三次，可以按你的情况安排。

小周：一个小时多少钱？

老吴：我不太清楚，你最好自己跟老板见个面，谈一谈。我把我们餐厅的地址跟电话给你。

小周：太好了！我的运气真不错，想找工作就碰到你。工作谈成了，我一定请你吃饭，好好谢谢你。

老吴：别客气啦！祝你好运，再见。

第十二課 應徵工作

Lesson 12 Responding to a Job Offer



小林：對不起。你們公司是不是徵求一位秘書？我是來應徵的。

A：噢，你去305室找張經理面談，前面右邊第一間。

(小林 敲門)

經理：請進。

小林：張經理，你好，我是來應徵秘書的。

經理：好，請坐，請把你的自傳、履歷表給我。

小林：是。(把表拿給張經理)

經理：嗯，你是台灣大學外文系畢業的，在貿易公司做了一年秘書了。¹既然你已經在貿易公司工作了，為什麼

還想到我們公司來呢？

小林：我想趁年輕多學些東西。貴公司²是世界有名的跨國企業，業務跟我以前的公司不完全一樣，而且貴公司有制度，待遇、福利都好，將來一定有發展，所以我想來試試看。

經理：我們現在需要的祕書，外語能力很重要。你除了英文以外，還會別的外語嗎？

小林：我曾經學過兩年德文、一年法文，還會一點日文。

經理：我們公司的祕書，沒經驗的，第一年一個月兩萬五，有保險，服務滿一年以後，每年可以休假十天。你覺得怎麼樣？

小林：薪水低了一點，³但是如果有發展的機會，我也願意接受。

經理：你的條件不錯。我們決定了以後再通知你。

小林：謝謝。

Vocabulary

1. 應徵 yìngzhēng V: to respond to a job offer

我們公司只要請一位工程師，可是有十幾個人來應徵，不知道老闆喜歡哪一個。

Our office only wants to hire one engineer, however over ten people responded to our offer. I wonder which one the boss liked.

2. 徵求 zhēngqiú V: to offer a job

報上有個廣告說，大千公司在徵求電腦工程師，你有沒有興趣試一試？

There is an advertisement in the newspaper for a computer programmer for Daqian Co. Are you interested in applying?

3. 祕書 mìshū N: secretary (M: 位、個)

4. 305室 sān líng wǔ shì N: Room 305

教室 jiàoshì N: classroom (M: 間)

5. 經理 jīnglǐ N: manager (M: 位、個)

6. 面談 miàntán V/N: to interview; interview (M: cì次 time)

1) 祕書說老闆在跟來應徵的人面談，今天大概沒辦法跟我們見面。

2) 你昨天面談的情況怎麼樣？談了些什麼？

1) The secretary said the boss is interviewing the job applicants and probably will not be able to see us today.

2) How did the interview go yesterday? What did you talk about?

7. 敲門 qiāo//mén VO: to knock on a door

你怎麼沒敲門就進來了？下一次不可以這樣！

How can you come in without knocking? You cannot do this next time!

敲 qiāo V: to knock

媽媽說吃飯的時候不可以用筷子敲碗盤。

Mom said that you cannot knock on the bowl with chopsticks when eating.

8. 自傳 zìzhuàn N: autobiography (M: piān篇 article)

9. 履歷表 lǚlìbiǎo N: resume (M: 份)

大千公司在徵人，你要應徵的話，把履歷表填好，寄給張小姐就可以了。

The Daqian Co. is seeking employees. If you want to apply, send your completed resume to Ms. Zhang.

10. 外文系 wàiwénxì N: foreign language department

外文 wàiwén N: foreign language (M: 種)

系 xì N: department

外國 wàiguó N: foreign country (M: 個)

我不要去外國，因為我不會說外國話。

I do not want to go abroad, because I cannot speak a foreign language.

11. 畢業 bìyè V: to graduate

我是一九九六年台灣大學畢業的。

I graduated from National Taiwan University in 1996.

12. 既然 jìrán MA: since; because

1) 既然已經買了，就吃吧。不好吃，下次別買就行了。

2) 你既然沒事，就跟我們一起去游泳吧。

1) Since you already bought it, just eat it. If it doesn't taste good, then next time just don't buy it.

2) Since you do not have anything to do, come swimming with us.

13. 趁 chèn V/Adv: to take advantage of; avail oneself of/while

趁湯還是熱的，快喝吧！冷了就不好喝了。

Eat the soup while it is still hot. It is not good when it is cold.

14. 年輕 niánqīng SV: to be young

小王才二十五歲，還很年輕，就已經是老闆，有自己的公司了。

Little Wang is only twenty-five, still very young and is already the head of his own company.

15. 世界 shìjiè N: world

這個世界上，對我最好的人就是我媽媽。

In this world, the person who is best to me is my mother.

16. 跨國企業 kuàguó qǐyè N: international company (M: 家、個)

我們公司在美國、日本、德國都有辦公室，不但是跨國企業，也是跨洲企業。

Our company has offices in the USA, Japan, and Germany. We are not only an international company, we are an intercontinental company.

企業 qǐyè N: business enterprise (M: 種、家)

跨 kuà V: to straddle

我在房間裡換衣服，妹妹在外面叫我。我說等一下，可是她已經跨進來了。

I was changing clothes in my room when my little sister called me. I told her to wait a minute, but she had already half entered the room.

17. 業務 yèwù N: business activities (M: xiàng 項 item)

我剛進這個公司，因為不清楚公司的業務，老闆給我的工作不多。

I just entered this company and since I am not very clear on the business functions, my boss has not given me much work.

18. 完全 wánquán Adv: completely

老師今天上課說的我完全聽不懂。從開始到最後，我一點都沒聽懂，怎麼辦？

I did not understand anything the teacher said today in class. From the beginning to the end, I did not understand anything. What should I do?

全 quán Adv: all; totally

客人全走了，我們可以休息了。

The guests have all gone. We can rest.

19. 而且 érqiě Conj: moreover

這件襯衫樣子不太好看，而且價錢也不便宜，你別買吧。

This shirt is not very good looking. Moreover, it's expensive. Don't buy it.

20. 制度 zhìdù N: system (M: xiàng 項 item、tào 套 set)

每個學校、公司都有自己的制度。新來的人不知道，就應該先問一問。

Every school and company has its own system. If someone new does not know, then he/she should ask first.

21. 待遇 dàiyù N: salary; pay (M: 份)

老闆一個月只給我一萬五千塊，別的都沒有。請假還要扣錢，待遇真不好，我很想換工作。

The boss only gives me \$15,000 a month and nothing else. There are deductions for days off. The pay is really bad. I really want to change jobs.

22. 福利 fúlì N: fringe benefits; welfare (M: xiàng 項 item)

我們公司的福利不錯：有保險，每年去旅行一次，工作一年以上的人每年可以休息七天。

Our company's benefits are not bad: insurance, an annual outing, and seven days of annual vacation for workers who have worked over one year.

23. 將來 jiānglái MA: in the future

我現在大學還沒畢業，將來可能去外國念書、工作。

I have not yet graduated from the university. In the future I will probably go abroad for study and work.

24. 發展 fāzhǎn N/V: development; to develop

1) 我們公司的發展很快，才三個月業務已經比以前多了一半。

2) 我在劇團工作了一年，覺得沒辦法發展，就不做了。

1) Our company has developed very quickly. In only three months, the business has already increased by 50%.

2) I have worked with the acting group for one year and feel there is no way to develop it further, so I will not work there anymore.

25. 外語 wàiyǔ N: foreign language (M: 種)

26. 能力 nénglì N: ability (M: 種)

我覺得小王好棒，不管你有什麼不高興的事，跟他談談就會覺得好多了，我希望也能有小王這種能力。

I think Little Wang is great. No matter what unhappy situation you have, talking it over with him makes you feel much better. I wish I also had this kind of ability.

聽力 tīnglì N: listening ability; hearing

1) 我覺得我左邊的聽力比右邊的好，所以站在我右邊的人說話我常聽不清楚。

2) 我學日文才學了兩個月，所以聽力很不好，日本人說的話，我大概都聽不懂。

1) I think I hear better on my left than my right, so I often do not hear clearly when people speak on my right.

2) I have only studied Japanese for two months, so my listening ability is not very good. I am probably not able to understand anything Japanese say.

27. 重要 zhòngyào SV: to be important

我爸媽覺得學生最重要的事就是念書。

My parents feel that the most important thing for students to do is to study.

28. 除了 chú.le Adv: other than; besides

我會兩種外語，除了英文，我還會說日文。

I can speak two foreign languages. Other than English, I can also speak Japanese.

29. 以外 yǐwài Adv: outside of

我只把辦公室裡面弄乾淨，辦公室以外我就不管了。

I only clean the inside of the office. I am not responsible for the outside.

30. 曾經 céngjīng Adv: to have the experience; to have done
 我曾經在美國住過兩年。那兩年的生活很特別，我到現在還記得。
 I have lived in the United States for two years. My life during those two years was very special, and even now I still remember it.
31. 德文 Déwén Proper N: German language
 法文 Fǎwén Proper N: French language
 日文 Rìwén Proper N: Japanese language
32. 休假 xiū//jià VO: vacation
 我一年可以休七天假，今年已經休了三天了。
 I can take seven days of vacation each year. This year I have already taken three days.
33. 薪水 xīnshuǐ N: salary (M: 份)
 我們公司給的薪水是月薪，不是週薪。
 Our company pays salaries monthly, not weekly.
34. 接受 jiēshòu V: to accept; to receive
 現在我沒辦法接受你的意見，我們還需要再談談。
 At present, there is no way I can accept your opinion. We still need to discuss it.
35. 條件 tiáojiàn N: condition; requirement (M: xiàng 項 item)
 你的條件太高了。要漂亮，又要會賺錢，還要浪漫。這樣的人哪裡找得到？
 Your requirements are too high. You want a beauty who can earn money, and should also be romantic. Where can such a person be found?

Grammar

1. 既然你已經在貿易公司工作了，為什麼還想到我們公司來呢？

Since you are already working in a trade office, why do you want to come work for us?

Explanation: Phrases with “既然” indicate an action has already occurred. The following phrase indicates the speaker’s conclusion based on it, and may include “就”, “也” and “還”. Compared with “因為”, “因為……所以……” sentences show actual cause and effect and are not subjective; while “既然……” sentences emphasize the presumption of the second phrase and are subjective.

王：我 hūrán(忽然)不太舒服，不跟你們去 KTV 了。

李：_____。

服務生：對不起，先生。我們馬上就打烩了。

客 人：_____。

王：那女孩又漂亮又聰明。我好欣賞她。

李：_____。

王：我好累，看了一個小時的書，剛剛差一點就 shuìzháo(睡著)了。

李：_____？

既然你這麼累，為什麼還不休息
既然你不舒服，我們就下次再去吧
既然你不去，我們也不去了
既然你那麼欣賞她，就約她出去玩啊
既然你們要打烩了，我們就去別家吧

Additional Vocabulary

hūrán (忽然): suddenly

shuìzháo (睡著): to fall asleep

2. 我想趁年輕多學些東西。 I want to learn more while I am young.

Explanation: “趁” means “利用” and indicates doing something by making use of a certain condition or opportunity. It can be followed by a noun, SV, a verb phrase or a short sentence.

王：今天你要做什麼？要出去嗎？

李：不出去。我想 _____，把房間整理整理。

王：下個月又要考試了，這次要考五 kē(科)。

李：要考這麼多科，那你最好 _____，要不然時間恐怕不夠。

王：唉，今天事好多。忙了一天，連一分鐘都沒休息。

李：現在 _____，你可以休息一下了。

王：你常常出國，你很喜歡旅行，對嗎？

李：對啊！我也常 _____，買一些外國東西。

王：天好 hēi(黑)，好像要下雨了。

李：是啊，_____ 趕快走吧！要不然就走不了了。

趁早準備
趁今天有空

趁老闆不在
趁還沒下雨

趁到外國旅行的機會

Additional Vocabulary

kē (科): subject

出國: to go abroad

hēi (黑): to be dark

3. 貴公司是世界有名的跨國企業，業務跟我以前的公司不完全一樣，而且貴公司有制度，待遇、福利都好……

Your esteemed company is a renowned international enterprise and the business is not completely like my old company. Moreover, your esteemed company's system, pay, and benefits are all good....

Explanation: “而且” indicates additional conditions. It is used to connect two SV, verb phrases, prepositional phrases, or short sentences. When connecting two short sentences, it is often followed by adverbs such as “還”, “也”, “又” or “更”.

王：你不想買這雙鞋嗎？

李：不想，因為樣子不太好看，_____。

王：加薪水的事，你跟老闆說了沒有？

李：我們老闆很小qì(氣)_____，所以我很怕他。加薪水的事，我還沒說。

王：你跟小張現在怎麼樣了？

李：昨天他請我吃飯，_____，不知道他是什麼意思。

王：樓下的人知道我們要搬家了嗎？

李：他們都知道了。我跟小張說過了，_____。

而且很兇
而且也跟老陳說過了

而且還送我東西
而且價錢也不便宜

Additional Vocabulary

小qì (氣): to be stingy

4. 貴公司有制度，待遇、福利都好，所以我想來試試看。

Your esteemed company's system, pay, and benefits are all good, so I want to try.

Explanation: “The “看” in the “V V 看” pattern following a repetitive verb indicates “嘗試做該V，看有什麼想法”. The verb here is usually a monosyllable and can be followed by an O.

王：我今天做了一盤糖醋魚，不知道味道怎麼樣。

李：我來_____。嗯，不錯，很好吃。

王：你幫我想個辦法！我現在這個房客總是不打掃房間，髒死了！跟他說了好幾次都沒有用。

李：好，我來_____。

王：王非最近錄的這卷錄音帶很不錯，你買了沒有？

李：還沒，你這卷先借我_____，好聽我再買。

王：這件襯衫還很新，你為什麼要送人？

李：我最近胖了，不能穿了。你_____，合適的話，就送你。

5. 你除了英文以外，還會別的外語嗎？

Besides English, can you speak another foreign language?

Explanation: “The “除了” in the “除了……以外，還……” pattern indicates “不算在裡面 not included” and can be followed by a noun, verb, SV, or short sentence. This pattern means: In addition to the situation just mentioned, there is more. For this reason it is connected by “還”. Either “除了” or “以外” can be omitted. The subject can be placed before the first phrase or before the second phrase.

王：小林好像每年都去旅行。美洲那麼遠，他都去過了。

李：對啊，_____呢。

王：李經理，我去面談的時候，應該帶什麼去？履歷表，對嗎？

李：對，_____。

王：你平常有什麼休閒活動？喜歡唱歌嗎？

李：喜歡，_____。

王：我看你每次都點泡沫紅茶。你只喝泡沫紅茶嗎？

李：不是，_____。

除了唱歌以外，我還喜歡跳舞
除了美洲以外，她還去過歐洲

除了履歷表以外，還要帶自傳
除了泡沫紅茶，我還喝咖啡

12 6. 我曾經學過兩年德文、一年法文，還會一點日文。

I have studied two years of German, one year of French, and can also speak a little Japanese.

Explanation: “曾經” indicates a previous behavior or situation. It's followed by “V/SV”, and then by “過” or “了” to indicate that it is not a recent action or situation and is over now. Compared with “已經”: “已經” indicates the action has been recently completed and that the action or situation might still continue.

王：這個連續劇我好像看過了，gù(故)事我知道啊。

李：這個連續劇去年 _____。你忘了嗎？

王：小林是不是在外國住過？她有一些特別的xíguàn(習慣)。

李：她 _____，去年才搬回來。

王：你一直在電腦公司工作嗎？

李：不是。我 _____，上個月才換工作的。

王：今年天氣好奇怪，已經五月了，溫度還這麼低。

李：不會啊！ _____，星期天才又冷的。

曾經在義大利住過三年
曾經在貿易公司做了幾年

上星期曾經熱過一兩天
曾經演過一次

Additional Vocabulary

gù (故)事: story

xíguàn (習慣): habit

7. 服務滿一年以後，每年可以休假十天。

After working one year, they have ten days of annual leave.

Explanation: “滿 Nu-M” indicates that the “Nu-M” has been fully reached.

王：你這píng(瓶)香水在哪裡買的？

李：不是買的，是萬美百貨公司送的。只要買東西 _____，他們就送一瓶香水。

王：我做多久以後可以加薪？

李：新來的人，工作 _____，做得不錯，就加薪。

王：你會不會開車？

李：不會，因為我還沒 _____，還不能開車。

王：這個團什麼時候出國？

李：還不一定，現在人還不夠，一定要 _____ 才能出去。

滿三個月

滿十八歲

滿十五人

滿一千塊

Additional Vocabulary

píng (瓶): bottle

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

- () 這兩個人在哪裡說話？
a. 辦公室 b. 電話裡 c. 公司外面
- () 他們在談什麼？
a. 世界的情況 b. 公司的制度 c. 王小姐加薪的事
- () 王小姐的問題是什麼？
a. 公司的制度不好 b. 來了三年還沒有加薪 c. 公司的業務不好
- () 這位先生聽了王小姐的問題以後，他說什麼？
a. 業務不好是因為王小姐做得不好
b. 等情況好了，就給王小姐加薪
c. 王小姐應該換工作
- () 王小姐最後的決定是什麼？
a. 別的公司條件好，她要到別的公司去
b. 在幾個月以內幫公司把業務作好
c. 加薪的事，她願意再等幾個月

Notes

1. “(你)在貿易公司做了一年祕書了” means “(You) have been working as a secretary at a trade company for a year.” The “了” in “做了” combined with the “了” at the end of the sentence indicates “up to now.”
2. “貴公司” refers to “Your company.” When “貴” is put in front of a noun, it is a polite way to mention something concerning the other party, such as “貴姓”, “貴校”, “貴國” and “貴公司”.
3. “薪水低了一點” means “The salary is a little bit lower (than I expected).” This “了” is introduced in Ch.12, Vol. I.(12.1-2) “SV 了一點” denotes that the actual situation differs slightly from what the speaker originally expected.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

小林：对不起。你们公司是不是征求一位秘书？我是来应征的。

A：噢，你去305室找张经理面谈。前面右边第一间。

(小林敲门)

经理：请进。

小林：张经理，你好。我是来应征秘书的。

经理：好，请坐。请把你的自传、履历表给我。

小林：是。（把表拿给张经理）

经理：嗯，你是台湾大学外文系毕业的，在贸易公司做了一年秘书了。既然你已经在贸易公司工作了，为什么还想到我们公司来呢？

小林：我想趁年轻多学些东西。贵公司是世界有名的跨国企业，业务跟我以前的公司不完全一样，而且贵公司有制度，待遇、福利都好，将来一定有发展，所以我想来试试看。

经理：我们现在需要的秘书，外语能力很重要。你除了英文以外，还会别的外语吗？

小林：我曾经学过两年德文、一年法文，还会一点日文。

经理：我们公司的秘书，没经验的，第一年一个月两万五，有保险，服务满一年以后，每年可以休假十天。你觉得怎么样？

小林：薪水低了一点，但是如果有发展的机会，我也愿意接受。

经理：你的条件不错。我们决定了以后再通知你。

小林：谢谢。

Exercises

I. The job I want to do most

Students are divided into groups of two, and then ask each other questions, e.g.: What kind of work do you most want to do? Why? What conditions are required for this kind of work? Do you meet the conditions now? What do you need to do to meet these conditions? In the end, each student writes a simple conclusion to give to the teacher.

II. How to get to know someone?

Students are divided into groups of four or five. Each group appoints a recorder and a group leader to ensure everyone has a chance to speak. In a limited time, the students discuss the following: When someone wants to make friends or find a job, he/she must find a way to understand the other party. What methods do you use to understand someone? What questions do you ask? Why? (e.g., Which school did you graduate from? What did you study? This will probably explain the other party's interests and abilities.) When time is up, write the conclusions on a sheet of paper and put it on the wall for everyone to see. If time allows, each group can make a report and the entire class can discuss it.

III. How to learn a foreign language?

Students are divided into groups of four or five. Each group appoints a recorder and a group leader to ensure everyone has a chance to speak. First find out what languages have been studied by group members and how long they were studied. Each student should tell about his/her learning experience, special ways of studying, which personal study methods were useful, etc. How is studying Chinese different from studying other languages? Results can be given to the class.

IV. Game: Supporting the front

First, choose a student to represent the front line, then students divide into two competing teams. The front line is fighting and the situation is bad. Students want to help supply what is needed. The front line representative says: “我們需要……”, and the students find someone who meets the conditions. The representative then says something else that is needed, and the students look for it, etc. The team who offers the most needed supplies wins.

The people or things the front line may be looking for:

我們需要十本書。

我們需要一個會說法國話的人。

我們需要一個會用電腦的人。

我們需要一個會唱歌的人。

.....

V. Role play

1. Two students: one answers a want ad, the other is the manager doing the hiring. The teacher can decide the kind of work and conditions. The students role play the interview. (A new job and conditions can be used for each team.)
2. Two students: one is the boss, the other an employee. The employee asks the boss for a raise. The students perform the scene.

Reading Comprehension

張台生的自傳

我叫張台生，民國六十三年十月五日在台北出生。爸爸是中學老師，媽媽是家庭主婦。我是老大，所以很小就學會了幫媽媽做家事。我小學、中學成績都不錯，後來進了台北大學國際貿易系。因為爸爸的薪水不高，我們家沒有多少錢，而且我已經念大學了，應該自己去賺錢了，我就開始打工。我曾經送過報，做過餐廳服務生。做得最久的是Pizza Hut速食店。我每個星期打十個小時的工。除了一般服務生的工作擦桌子、掃地以外，經理還叫我打烊以後幫忙把帳算一下。大學畢業以後，我想既然學的是貿易，就進了傳利貿易公司工作。到今年六月就滿一年了。我學了很多，公司經理、同事都對我很好，待遇、福利也都不錯。我的工作情況好是好，可是我覺得應該趁年輕進跨國企業多學一些，將來才會有更好的發展。我看見 貴公司的廣告，就決定來試試看。我知道你們一定是按能力、經驗來決定錄用誰。我的經驗雖然不多，可是只要我有機會進貴公司，我一定好好學，把業務做得更好。希望 貴公司給我這個機會完成我的理想。

Additional Vocabulary

mín (民) 國 X 年: Republic of China year

中學: middle school

成 jī (績): grade

錄 yòng (用): to hire

理想: ideal

出生: to be born

家 tíng (庭) zhǔfù (主婦): housewife

國 jì (際): international

完成: to complete

Questions:

1. 這個自傳是誰寫給誰看的？
2. 張台生今年幾歲？
3. 張台生書念得怎麼樣？

4. 張台生為什麼去打工？什麼時候開始打工？
5. 張台生有什麼工作經驗？
6. 張台生大學畢業以後為什麼進貿易公司工作？
7. 張台生在貿易公司工作情況怎麼樣？
8. 張台生為什麼要進這家公司？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “工錢” means?
 - a) labor fee
 - b) payment for odd jobs
 - c) work for money
2. What do you think “休學” means?
 - a) school is in recess
 - b) take a break during study
 - c) a leave of absence from school
3. What do you think “碰運氣” means?
 - a) to try one's luck
 - b) run into someone by chance
 - c) unexpected luck
4. What do you think “整人” means?
 - a) to rectify someone's error
 - b) to give someone a hard time
 - c) the whole body

Authentic Materials

I. 徵才廣告

※ 績優貿易商 ※

誠 徵

國貿專員
男三十五歲以下，熟電腦操作，二年以上經驗

英文助理
英文書寫流利，一年以上經驗

業務員
通英文較好，會電腦打字更佳。
工作地點：台北、大陸

待遇優、福利佳

意者請附履歷照片寄至台北市金山南路一段六十號8F萬利貿易公司張經理收

1. 林金水今年二十五歲，英文不錯，沒學過電腦，有一年工作經驗，你想他可以應徵哪一個工作？
2. 李台生三十歲，英文、電腦都不錯，有三年的工作經驗，你想他可以應徵哪一個工作？
3. 王月美今年二十歲，會電腦打字，你想她可以應徵哪一個工作？
4. 如果對這個公司的工作有興趣，應該怎麼辦？
5. 你想「貿易商」是什麼意思？
6. 你想「寄至」是什麼意思？

II. 履歷表

姓名	年齡	出生地	學歷	通訊處	曾任職務
林春生	25歲	台灣省台南市	台灣大學外文系畢業	台北市金門街八巷十號	貿易公司秘書一年
性別	1972年7月4日生				
男					
身分證字號					
F123456789					
應徵職務		電話			
秘書		2232-5319			
希望待遇					
貼照片處					

1. 你想「性別」是什麼意思？
2. 你想「年齡」是什麼意思？
3. 你想「出生地」是什麼意思？
4. 你想「通訊處」是什麼意思？
5. 你想「曾任職務」是什麼意思？

第七單元 別忘了繳費

Unit 7 Don't Forget to Pay

Key Study Points

Lesson 13: overdue bills / arranging transfer of funds / opening a bank account / passive voice / manner of the action / to complain / tone of judgment / determined tone / to laugh at someone

Lesson 14: A: fee notice / practice written language 本, 於, 未, 由, 將, etc. / forms of a notice

B: notice for automatic transfer / practice written language 之, 即將, 如下 / reading forms

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 13

開戶，戶頭，轉帳，春生，美月，被，
停話，老是，糊塗，手續，自動，
擔心，罵，句，堆，討厭，懶，著，
順便，或，收據，用戶，聽起來，
自動提款卡，拜託，時代，網路，稅，
購物，過分，笑，哭，通

S + 被 + NP + V + C
老是
V 過了
V 起 O 來
V 著(O)+VP
順便
是 + Adv + SV
用……來……

Lesson 14

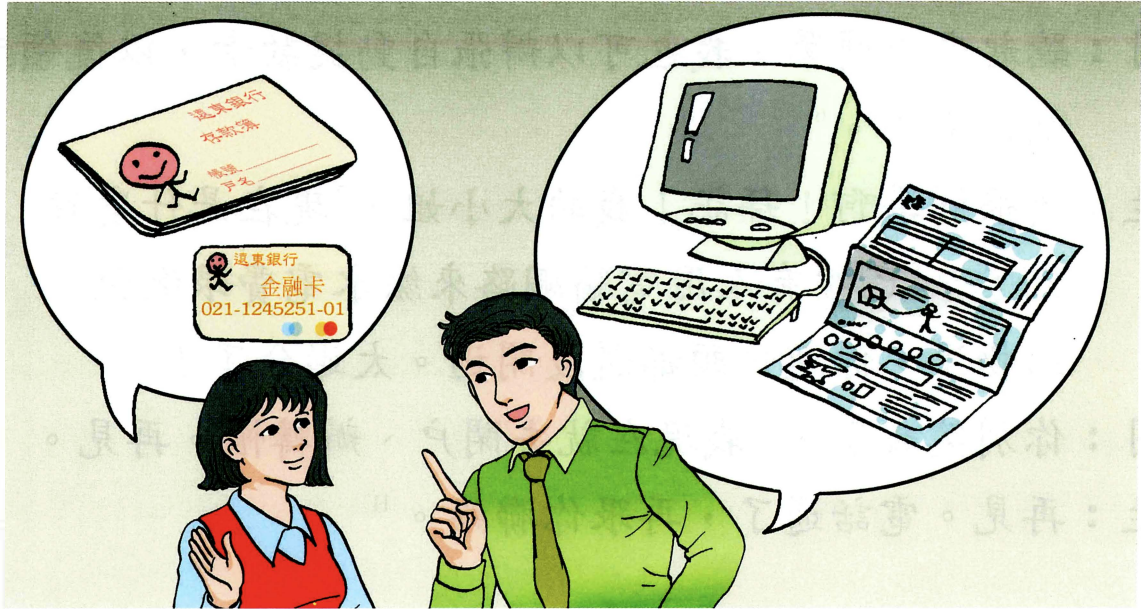
A: 住戶，催，各位，本，月分，
管理費，於，交，尚，未，儘快，由，
代繳，瓦斯，月底，月初，將，合作，
台安大樓，委員會，敬啓

B: 敬愛，女士，支持，之，即將，
如下，日期，保單，次數，金額，
變更，背面，申請書

於
未
由
將
之
即將
如下

第十三課 可以開戶轉帳

Lesson 13 You Can Open a Bank Account and Transfer Funds



春生：哎呀！美月，原來你在這裡。這幾天打電話找你，都找不到。

美月：噢，對不起。我忘了繳電話費，被停話了。找我有什麼事？

春生：沒有什麼特別的事。只是好久沒見了，¹想找你聊聊。你怎麼老是這麼糊塗，又忘了繳費？我不是跟你說過了嗎？去銀行辦個手續，以後他們每個月會自動轉帳，你就不必擔心過期了。²

美月：好了，好了。你怎麼罵起人來了？我才說一句，你就說了一大堆⁴。真討厭！³我連戶頭都沒有，怎麼轉帳？

春生：那你就去開個戶頭啊！別那麼懶，很簡單的⁵：你帶著圖章、身分證跟錢到銀行去，填填表，就行了。

美月：我可以順便辦轉帳嗎？

春生：你得帶著繳費通知單或收據才可以，他們要知道你的用戶號碼。

美月：聽起來很簡單，我也可以辦張自動提款卡，以後領錢就方便了。⁶

春生：是很簡單啊！拜託！我的大小姐，⁷現在是什麼時代了？⁸已經有人用電腦網路來繳水電費跟繳稅、購物了，你連戶頭都還沒開過。太過分了！⁹

美月：你別笑我了，¹⁰我現在就去開戶、辦轉帳。再見。

春生：再見。電話通了，再跟你聯絡。¹¹

Vocabulary

1. 開戶 kāi//hù VO: to open a bank account

我沒在銀行開過戶，不知道開戶需要哪些東西。

I have never opened a bank account before, and wonder what is needed to open one.

2. 戶頭 hùtóu N: bank account (M: 個)

我今天去銀行領錢，才知道戶頭裡沒有多少錢了。

Only when I went to the bank to withdraw some money today, did I learn that there was not much money in my account.

- 帳戶 zhàngù N: account (M: 個)

3. 轉帳 zhuǎn//zhàng VO: to transfer funds

你不必領錢繳電話費，可以請銀行幫你轉帳。

You do not need to withdraw money to pay the telephone bill. You can ask the bank to help transfer it from your account.

- 轉 zhuǎn V: to turn; to transfer

1) 如果你怕寄的錢會丟，可以請銀行把錢轉到那邊的戶頭去。

2) 這封信是從我以前住的地方轉來的。

1) If you are worried that the money sent will get lost, you can ask the bank to transfer the funds into that account.

2) This letter was forwarded from my previous residence.

4. 春生 Chūnshēng Proper N: a person's name

5. 美月 Měiyuè Proper N: a person's name

6. 被 bèi CV: indicating passive voice

我的電腦被弟弟弄壞了，我好生氣。

My computer was broken by my little brother. I am so angry.

7. 停話 tíng//huà VO: to cut off the telephone line

趕快去繳電話費，要不然會被停話。

Hurry and pay the telephone bill, otherwise the line will be cut.

- 停水 tíng//shuǐ VO: to cut off the water supply

- 停電 tíng//diàn VO: to cut off the electricity supply

颱風來了以後，又停水，又停電，真不方便。

When the typhoon comes, both the water and electricity were cut off. It is really inconvenient.

8. 老是 lǎoshì Adv: always

小張老是來借東西，為什麼他不自己買啊？

Little Zhang always comes to borrow things. Why doesn't he buy them himself?

9. 糊塗 hūtú SV: to be confused

我真糊塗，忘了跟小王約好了兩點見面。

I am really confused. I forgot that Little Wang and I had agreed to meet at two o'clock.

10. 手續 shǒuxù N: procedure (M: 道)

我開戶的手續已經辦好了，可以存錢、轉帳了。

The procedure for opening my bank account is completed. Now I can deposit and transfer money.

11. 自動 zìdòng Att/SV/Adv: voluntary/to do automatically/automatically

1) 我新買的洗衣機是全自動的，很好用。

2) 這個學生很自動，他什麼都自己做，不必老師叫他做。

3) 我一走到門口，門就自動開了。

1) My newly-bought washing machine is completely automatic and very easy to use.

2) This student is very pro-active. He does everything by himself and does not need the teacher to tell him to do it.

3) As soon as I walked toward the door, it would open automatically.

被動 bèidòng SV: to be passive

我妹妹很被動，做什麼都要別人叫她，她才做。

My little sister is really passive. Whatever it is, she only does it if someone tells her to.

12. 擔心 dān//xīn VO/SV: to worry/to be worried

1) 十二點了，孩子還沒回家，媽媽擔心孩子在外面有麻煩。爸爸就跟媽媽說：「孩子大了，自己會管自己，你擔什麼心呢？」

2) 我第一次去外國旅行的時候，我媽媽擔心得不得了。

1) It was twelve o'clock and their child had not yet returned home. The mother was worried that the child was in trouble. The father said to the mother, "The child is grown up and can take care of himself. What are you worried about?"

2) The first time I traveled abroad, my mother was really worried.

13. 罵 mà V: to scold, tell off

我忘了把媽媽的信用卡放在哪裡了，媽媽罵我糊塗。

I forgot where I put Mother's credit card and she scolded me for being muddle-headed.

13 14. 句 jù M: for sentences

你說的每句話都對，我就按你說的去做吧。

Every word you said was right. I will do like you said.

句子 jù·zi N: sentence (M: 個)

15. 堆 duī M: for a pile of something

門口那堆東西是誰的？怎麼還不拿走？

Whose pile of things is that in the doorway? Why hasn't it been taken away?

16. 討厭 tǎoyàn SV/V: to be annoying; to dislike

1) 王家的小孩真討厭！吵死了。

2) 我最討厭別人夜裡十二點以後給我打電話。

1) The Wang family's children are really annoying! They are so noisy.

2) I really do not like people calling me after midnight.

17. 懶 lǎn SV: to be lazy

我男朋友很懶，髒衣服一個月都不洗。

My boyfriend is really lazy. He doesn't wash his laundry for a month.

18. 著 ·zhe P: an adverbial particle

你帶著我的介紹信去找王先生，他一定會幫你的。

Take my letter of introduction and find Mr. Wang. He will definitely help you.

19. 順便 shùnbìan Adv: at one's convenience; to do something while on one's way to perform a major work

你來法國旅行的時候可以順便來看我。我請你吃最好吃的法國菜。

When you travel to France you can come to see me at the same time, and I will invite you to eat the best French food.

順 shùn V/SV: to follow; to be in accordance; to be smooth

1) 你要去郵局，順著這條路往前走，大概五分鐘就到了。

2) 我搬來以後，麻煩很多，做什麼都不順。不知道為什麼。

1) To get to the post office, follow this road and go straight, and you will get there in about five minutes.

2) After I moved here, there was a lot of trouble and nothing went smoothly. I wonder why.

20. 或 huò Conj: or

從這裡去台中，坐火車或是公車都很快，兩個多小時就到了。

From here to Taichung, whether you take the train or bus — both are quick. It takes just over two hours to get there.

21. 收據 shōujù N: receipt (M: 張)

你說你已經付了團費了，收據在哪裡？你付了多少錢？

You said you already paid the fee, but where is the receipt? How much did you pay?

22. 用戶 yònghù N: user; consumer (M: 位、個)
我是一家大哥大公司工作，我們的業務發展很快。這個月又多了三萬個新用戶。

I work in a mobile phone company. Our business has developed very quickly. This month we gained 30,000 new customers.

23. 聽起來 tīngqǐlái V: to sound (like)
你剛剛說的辦法聽起來很容易，我們可以試試看。

The method you just mentioned sounds easy. We could give it a try.

24. 自動提款卡 zìdòng tíkuǎnkǎ N: automatic teller machine card (M: 張)

提款卡 tíkuǎnkǎ N: cash card (M: 張)

提款 tí//kuǎn VO: to withdraw money

存款 cún//kuǎn VO: to deposit money

我開戶以後，只存過一次款，可是已經提過四次款了。戶頭裡的錢越來越少了。

After opening the account, I only made one deposit, but have already made four withdrawals. The balance is getting lower and lower.

25. 拜託 bàituō V: a polite way to ask for something; Give me a break.

1) 我週末要搬家，能不能拜託你把車借給我？

2) 拜託！這麼簡單的事還要我說好幾次。說一次你就應該懂啦！

1) I want to move on the weekend. Could you do me a favor and lend me your car?

2) Give me a break! Such a simple thing and you still want me to repeat it several times. You should be able to understand after I say it once.

26. 時代 shídài N: era; generation (M: 個)

我爸爸媽媽那個時代，沒有電視機，當然也沒有電腦啊。

My parents' generation did not have television and, of course, it did not have computers.

27. 網路 wǎnglù N: network; Internet; short for World Wide Web

你要找工作，可以上網路去看看，很快就可以知道誰在徵求什麼樣的人。

You can search the Web if you are looking for work. You can quickly see who is hiring for what kind of position.

28. 稅 shuì N: tax (M: 筆)

在我們這裡，買東西除了東西的價錢，還要付百分之五的稅。

When buying things here, you pay not only the price of the object but also five percentage tax.

29. 購物 gòuwù VO: to shop; go shopping

- 1) 住在市區，購物、上班都很方便。
- 2) 我要去購物中心買東西，你要不要一起去？
 - 1) Living in the city is convenient for shopping and working.
 - 2) I want to go to the shopping center to buy something. Do you want to go together with me?

30. 過分 guòfèn SV: to be excessive; going too far

你太過分了！我幫你忙，你不謝我，還說我做得不好。

You have gone too far! I helped you, yet you didn't thank me and even said I did a bad job.

31. 笑 xiào V: to laugh

- 1) 我跟王小姐說她很漂亮，她就笑了，然後說：「真的嗎？謝謝。」
- 2) 我三天做一次飯。你別笑我懶，我實在沒有時間每天做飯。
 - 1) When I told Miss Wang she was very pretty, she laughed and then said, "Really? Thank you."
 - 2) I cook every three days. Don't laugh at me for being lazy. I really don't have time to cook every day.

*32. 哭 kū V: to cry

我姊姊小時候很愛哭。別人一罵她，她馬上就哭了。

My elder sister really was a crybaby when she was a child. When someone told her off, she would burst straight into tears.

33. 通 tōng V: to get through; to go; to communicate

- 1) 有一輛車在路上壞了，停在路中間，路就不通了。
- 2) 我昨天給你打電話都打不通，你們家電話壞了嗎？
 - 1) A car has broken down in the middle of the road, so other cars cannot get through.
 - 2) I called you yesterday, but couldn't get through. Is your telephone broken?

Grammar

1. 我忘了繳電話費，被停話了。

I forgot to pay the telephone bill and my line was cut.

Explanation: "NP₁+被+NP₂+V+C" is a passive sentence. NP₁ is the object of the action, NP₂ is the instigator of the action, and C is a complement. The instigator can be omitted if obvious. The complement indicates a completion or result. This kind of sentence is usually used to describe things that the speaker doesn't want to happen.

It can be used in a warning but cannot be used when asking or ordering. The negative should be placed before “被”.

王：你怎麼沒開車來？

李：_____。

王：下班啦？你怎麼這麼不高興？

李：我今天送錯了菜，_____。

王：現在才十一點你就要回家啊？你怕什麼？

李：我怕我跟你們出來喝酒的事 _____，她會罵我。

弟弟：要不要抽一支煙？

哥哥：你又抽煙！小心 _____，要不然她一定會扣你的零用錢。

被老闆罵了半天
別被媽媽看見

車被我太太開走了
被我太太知道了

Additional Vocabulary

小心: to pay attention to; to be careful of

零用錢: pocket money

2. 你怎麼老是這麼糊塗，又忘了繳費？

How come you are always confused and forgot to pay your bill again?

Explanation: “老是” means always; again and again. A verb phrase or “這麼/那麼+形容詞” can be placed behind it. “是” can be left out. Compared with “總是”: “總是” has several meanings; when it means “持續不變，每一次都一樣 consecutively, every time is the same,” it means the same as “老是”. But “老是” is more often used in negative situations.

王：最近天氣不好，出門不方便。

李：對啊，最近 _____，想去哪裡都不方便。

王：李先生，我姓王，不姓張，你記錯了。

李：真對不起，你姓什麼我 _____。

王：我說你又忘了擦桌子，你怎麼不理我？

李：我不想跟你說話，因為 _____。

王：我烤的肉最好吃，你不管吃多少都覺得還沒吃飽。

李：你說話 _____，我真不知道你說的話哪一句是真的。

王：你去銀行幫我辦一下轉帳，好不好？

李：我沒空。你別_____，自己去辦一下，不麻煩的。

老是想不起來
老是那麼懶

老是記錯
老是下雨

你老是罵我
老是這麼誇張

Additional Vocabulary

理: to pay attention to

3. 我不是跟你說過了嗎？ Didn't I tell you before?

Explanation: In the “V 過了” construction, “過” and “了” both indicate that the action is completed. They are both placed after the verb to emphasize the completion of the action, normally in the recent past. “V 了” indicates completion, though perhaps in the future and not necessarily in the past; “V 過” indicates a previous experience.

王：我要你打電話給張小姐，你打了沒有？

李：_____，她說她會再跟我們聯絡。

媽媽：老大最近都十二點才回來，你罵罵他，好不好？

爸爸：我_____，沒有用的，他有他自己的想法。

先生：我們下星期出國的時候，能不能拜託樓下的林太太幫我們收信？

太太：我已經_____，她說沒問題。

王：這個月的電費繳了沒有？

李：放心，我_____。

Additional Vocabulary

想法: way of thinking

4. 你怎麼罵起人來了？ How come you started to scold me?

Explanation: Some of the “V 起來” phrases are placed in the second half of the sentence, indicating a change of status; starting to do something. For example, “小王聽說我們下個週末要去露營，就高興得叫起來了。 When Little Wang heard that we are going to camp next week, he was so glad that he started to scream.” (The V 起來 introduced in Chapter two are placed in the first part of the sentence.) Verbs can be used with this structure include: 打, 忙, 唱, 笑, 哭, 吃. If there is an object, it can be inserted between “起” and “來”, e.g. 下起雨來, 說起話來, 寫起字來, 喝起酒來, 唱起歌來, etc.

王：你不記得我了？我們去年一起去花蓮露過營的。

李：你這樣說，我就_____。你是小王的同學。

爸爸：兩個孩子在哭什麼？打架了？

媽媽：對啊。一個要電視遙控器，一個不給，就_____了。
已經哭了半天了。

王：下雨了！今天的天氣好奇怪啊。

李：是啊。早上出太陽，天氣那麼好，下午就_____。

姊姊：你在想什麼？怎麼不說話？

妹妹：聽到這首歌，我就_____。

Additional Vocabulary

打jià (架): to fight (physically)

5. 你帶著圖章、身分證跟錢到銀行去，填填表，就行了。

Take your name chop, ID card, and money to the bank and fill out the forms. That's all.

Explanation: The “著” in the “V₁著(O)+V₂” pattern is a verb complement and “V₁” is the way “V₂” is done. “V₁” is generally a single-syllable verb; “V₂” can be a verb phrase.

王：小張怎麼了？她去哪裡了？

李：老闆罵她，她就_____。

王：老李，你好，好久不見，最近怎麼樣？

李：請進，請進，進來坐吧。別在外頭_____。

王：你請張小姐去看電影，她願意去嗎？

李：我問她的時候，她_____：「對不起，我已經跟別人有約了。」

王：今天的報，你看過了沒有？

李：看過了，我每天早上_____。

站著說話

哭著跑出去了

看著報吃早飯

笑著對我說

3

6. 我可以順便辦轉帳嗎？Can I transfer the funds at the same time?

Explanation: The part of the sentence preceding “順便” is the original intention, at the same

time as which the action following “順便” can also conveniently be done.

王：時間不早了，我走了。

李：好，再見。你出去的時候，_____。

王：我的履歷表填得差不多了，等一下就可以寄了。

李：你去寄履歷表的時候，_____。

王：李經理，我的事做完了。我要回家了。

李：王小姐，我也要走了。我可以_____。

王：我把這封信打完了，就上網路去看看今天有什麼大事。

李：你上網路看新聞，能不能_____？

順便幫我寄這封信
順便幫我繳稅

順便送你回家
順便把門關上

7. 是很簡單啊！ It's easy indeed!

Explanation: The “是” in the “是(+ Adv) + SV” construction indicates the speaker's emphasis or approval. It is thus different from the general descriptive “SV”, where you cannot have a “是”.

哥哥：你的老闆一個月才給你兩萬塊，這麼低啊！

弟弟：是啊。我的薪水_____，可是老闆對我很好，我可以學到很多東西啊。

王：陳小姐條件不錯，你怎麼不追她？

李：她的條件_____，可是她已經有男朋友了。

王：我的室友真討厭，每次吃完飯都不收碗盤，也不洗碗。

李：_____。那你打算怎麼辦？

王：今天的宮保雞丁好像不太辣，你尝尝。

李：_____，連我這麼怕辣的人都覺得不辣。

Additional Vocabulary

zhuī (追): to chase

室友: roommate

8. 現在已經有人用電腦網路來繳水電費、繳稅、購物了。

There are already people using the Internet to pay their utility bills, pay taxes and buy things.

Notes

1. “好久沒見了。” means “Long time no see.” or “It has been a long time that we haven’t met.” This “了” indicates “up to now.”
2. “你就不必擔心過期了。” means “(Then) you don’t have to worry about being overdue.” This “了” indicates a change of status — you don’t need to worry after you have done the thing previously mentioned.
3. “你真討厭！” means “You are disgusting!” Here, “討厭” does not really express annoyance or dislike. When a Chinese woman is teased by a close friend, she might say “討厭” to show her embarrassment. But she is not really upset. Since they are close friends, the other party of the conversation won’t get upset either. Please note that this expression is feminine.
4. “一大堆” means “a big bunch of.” This phrase can be used to describe many things, such as: 人, 東西, and 話 etc. It contains a tone of exaggeration.
5. “很簡單的” means “It is simple.” The particle “的” is used to indicate a tone of certainty.
6. “以後領錢就方便了。” means “It will be convenient to withdraw money in the future.” This “了” indicates a change of status — it will be more convenient than it was before.
7. “拜託！我的大小姐。” means “Come on, Her ladyship.” or “Come on, My Lady.” It contains a tone of sarcasm and exaggeration. “拜託”, here, means “Please, give me a break.” “大小姐” means a lady from a family of higher social and official ranks.
8. “現在是什麼時代了？” means “What is the generation we are in now?” This “了” indicates a change of status — it is a different era now.
9. “太過分了！” means “That’s too much.” This expression is used when people feel the situation is beyond expectation. Many young people in Taiwan would say “太誇張了”. “誇張 (kuāzhāng)” means “to exaggerate.” Some people would say “太離譜了”. “離譜 (lípǔ)” means “beyond the rule book.” However, these phrases would be considered impolite by anyone other than close friends. In the situation of this dialogue, some people would say “你太落伍了”. “落伍 (luòwǔ)” means “to fall behind the time.” This is more direct.
10. “你別笑我了。” means “Stop laughing at me.” the usage of “別” is introduced in Unit 1, L. 2, Grammar 7. This “了” indicates a change of status — you are laughing at me, you should stop it.
11. “電話通了，再跟你聯絡。” means “I’ll contact you when the telephone is connected.” The complete sentence should be “等電話通了，我再跟你聯絡。” therefore “等” and “我” are omitted. The “了” in “通了” indicates a change of status — the phone is not working, when it is working, I will call you.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

春生：哎呀！美月，原来你在这里。这几天打电话找你，都找不到。

美月：噢，对不起。我忘了缴电话费，被停话了。找我有什么事？

春生：没有什么特别的事。只是好久没见了，想找你聊聊。你怎么老是这么糊涂，又忘了缴费？我不是跟你说过了吗？去银行办个手续，以后他们每个月会自动转账，你就不必担心过期了。

美月：好了，好了。你怎么骂起人来了？我才说一句，你就说了一大堆。真讨厌！我连户头都没有，怎么转账？

春生：那你就去开个户头啊！别那么懒，很简单的：你带着图章、身分证跟钱到银行去，填填表，就行了。

美月：我可以顺便办转账吗？

春生：你得带着缴费通知单或收据才可以，他们要知道你的用户号码。

美月：听起来很简单。我也可以办张自动提款卡，以后领钱就方便了。

春生：是很简单啊！拜托！我的大小姐。现在是什么时代了？已经有人用电脑网路来缴水电费跟缴税、购物了，你连户头都还没开过。太过分了！

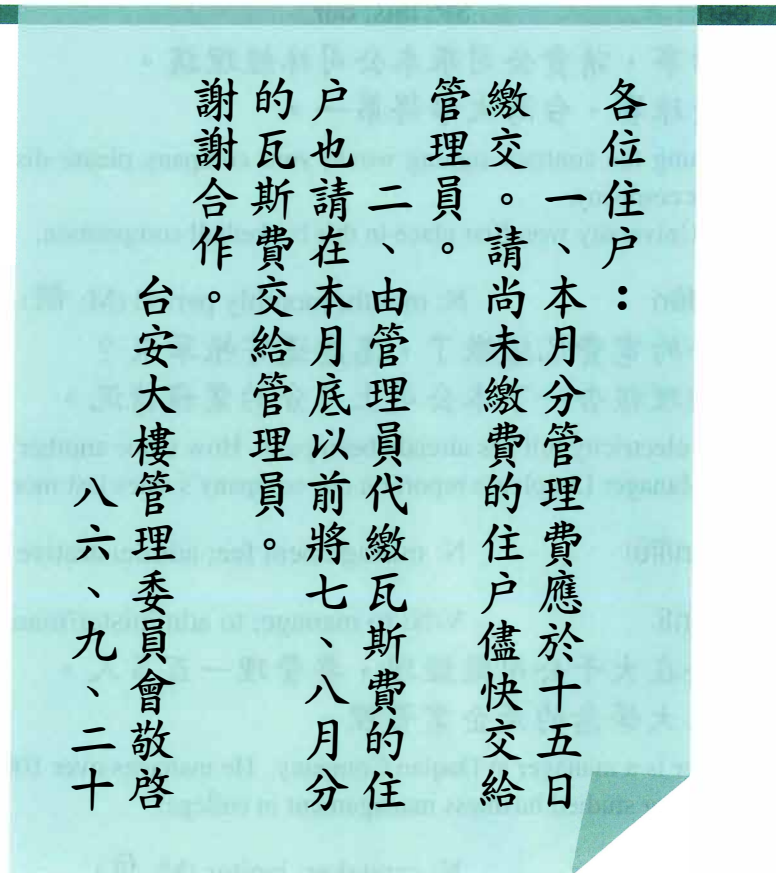
美月：你别笑我了，我现在就去开户、办转账。再见。

春生：再见。电话通了，再跟你联络。

第十四課 繳費通知

Lesson 14 Notice for Payments

A. 住戶¹催繳通知²



Vocabulary

1. 住戶 zhùhù N: resident; household (M: 位、家)
這個大樓的住戶一共有八十家，每戶都有一個停車位。
Altogether there are eighty households in this building, and each has a parking place.
2. 催 cuī V: to press; push; to rush
先生：太太，你快一點，好不好？我已經等了半個小時了。
太太：你別催我了。我好了，馬上就可以出門了。

Husband: Hurry up, darling, can you? I have been waiting for half an hour already.

Wife: Don't rush me. I'm ready. We can leave right now.

3. 各位 gèwèi SP-M: each person

各位先生、各位小姐，請坐好，表演馬上就要開始了。

Ladies and gentlemen, please take your seats. The performance is about to begin.

4. 本 běn SP: this; our

1) 簽約的事，請貴公司跟本公司林經理談。

2) 本次籃球賽，台灣大學得第一。

1) Concerning the contract signing would your company please discuss it with Manager Lin from our company.

2) Taiwan University won first place in this basketball competition.

5. 月分 yuèfèn N: month; monthly period (M: 個)

1) 三月分的電費已經繳了，怎麼還寄帳單來？

2) 請林經理報告一下本公司上月分的業務情況。

1) March's electricity bill has already been paid. How come another bill has been sent?

2) Would Manager Lin please report on our company's sales last month?

6. 管理費 guǎnlǐfèi N: management fee; administrative fee (M: 筆)

管理 guǎnlǐ V/N: to manage; to administer/management

1) 我爸爸在大千公司做經理，要管理一百多人。

2) 小張在大學念的是企業管理。

1) My father is a manager at Daqian Company. He manages over 100 people.

2) Little Zhang studied business management in college.

管理員 guǎnlǐyuán N: caretaker; janitor (M: 位)

我們大樓的管理員很好，每個客人都說他很客氣。

Our building's caretaker is really good. All our guests say he is very polite.

7. 於 yú CV: at; on; by; from

今年大學籃球賽於四月一日開始賣票，請早購票。

This year the university basketball game tickets go on sale on April 1. Please buy your tickets early.

8. 交 jiāo V: to hand over; to exchange

交給 jiāogěi V: to hand to

各位同學，你們的報告一定要在星期五以前交來，交給王老師。

Classmates, your reports must be handed in by Friday. Hand them in to Teacher Wang.

9. 尚 shàng Adv: still; yet

我問萬美公司什麼時候談簽約的事，他們回信說：「時間尚早，下月再談。」

I asked Wanmei Company when they wanted to talk about the contract and they wrote back, "It is still early, we'll talk about it next month."

10. 未 wèi Adv: not yet

我們去看電影的時候，廣告上說：「未滿十八歲，不可看本片。」

When we went to see the movie, the advertisement said, "Children under 18 are not allowed."

11. 儘快 jǐnkuài Adv: as quickly as possible

錄影帶店的人說，你借的錄影帶已經過期三天了，請你儘快拿去還。

The video store clerk said the tape you borrowed is already three days overdue and asked that you return it as quickly as possible.

12. 由 yóu CV: from; up to; by

我們去旅行，要住哪個旅館，由你決定。

It is up to you to decide which hotel we stay in when we travel.

13. 代繳 dàijiǎo V: to pay in place of

要是你沒有時間，你的學費可以請同學代繳。

If you don't have time, you can ask a classmate to pay your tuition for you.

代 dài V: to substitute

張老師有事，他的課由李老師來代。

Teacher Zhang is busy, and Teacher Lee will substitute for him in class.

14. 瓦斯 wǎsī N: natural gas (M: 筒 tǒng)

15. 月底 yuèdǐ N: end of the month

今天是七號，小張是上個月底出國的。他已經走了十天了。

Today is the seventh. Little Zhang went abroad at the end of last month, so he's been gone for ten days.

年底 niándǐ N: end of the year

俄羅斯芭蕾舞團去年年底才來表演過，今年會再來嗎？

The Russian Ballet Troupe came to perform just at the end of last year; will they come again this year?

*16. 月初 yuèchū N: beginning of the month

年初 niánchū N: beginning of the year

17. 將 jiāng CV: (indicates a direct object, like “把” but more formal and more written-style)

保險公司已將通知單寄出，收到後請到銀行繳費。

The insurance company has already sent out the letters of notification. On receiving your letter, please go to the bank to remit payment.

18. 合作 hézuò V/N: to cooperate / cooperation

1) 我跟張台生合作的經驗很不錯。那是大學的時候，我們都上新聞系的課，學期最後我們一起寫了一份報告。

2) 張經理說：「謝謝各位同事的合作，公司的業務才能發展得這麼好。」

1) My experience of working with Zhang Taisheng is very good. At college, we were both in the Department of Journalism, and at the end of the term we wrote a report together.

2) Manager Zhang said: "Thanks entirely to the cooperation of all my colleagues, our company's sales have been able to develop so well."

19. 台安大樓 Tái'ān Dàilóu Proper N: name of a building

20. 委員會 wěiyuánhùi N: committee (M: 個)

委員 wěiyuán N: committee member (M: 位)

21. 敬啓 jìngqǐ V: to respectfully address to

是誰寄的通知單，只要看通知最後寫的是誰敬啓就知道了。

To know who sent the letter of notification, just see the end of the letter where it says who addressed it.

敬 jìng Adv: respectfully (generally not translated)

敬請各位跟我們合作，在飛機上不要用大哥大或手提電腦。

I ask for everybody's cooperation in not using mobile telephones or portable computers on the plane.

啓 qǐ V: to address (to)

這個信封上寫的是「張老師 啓」，可是我先生出國了，我只好代他打開看看。

It says "Addressed to Teacher Zhang" on the envelope, but my husband has gone abroad; I'll just have to open and read it for him.

Grammar

A-1 本月分管理費應於十五日繳交。

This month's administrative fee should be paid on the 15th.

Explanation: “於” is used in written Chinese. It is sometimes placed in front of the verb, and sometimes behind it, depending on the verb. This lesson only introduces the former case. “於” can be followed by a time phrase, indicating the time at which the verb occurs, or a place phrase, indicating the place at which the verb occurs. The verb follows at the end. “於” means the same as the spoken “在”, but “在” is often omitted when speaking about time.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 本大樓管理費請於每月十五日前交給管理員。

→

2. 大千公司來信於上週末收到。

→

3. 本公司於一九九五年成立(立)。

→

4. 世界杯籃球賽於二月五日開始賣票。

→

Additional Vocabulary

成立(立): to establish

Please change the following sentences to the “於” written style.

1. 張台生是一九八六年出生的。

→

2. 一九九〇年我曾經來過台灣。

→

張台生於一九八六年出生。

我曾經於一九九〇年來過台灣

Additional Vocabulary

出生: to be born

A-2 請尚未繳費的住戶儘快交給管理員。

Would those households which have not yet paid the administrative fee please pay this as soon as possible to the caretaker.

Explanation: “未” is used in writing, and is followed by a verb. It indicates that an action has not (yet) happened or finished. It means the same as the spoken “沒+V”.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 請尚未繳費的住戶儘快交給管理員。

→

2. 未辦簽證的團員請跟本公司聯絡。

→

3. 考試未滿九十分的學生不可申請獎學金。

→

4. 尚未報名參加露營活動的學生，請於星期五前到604室報名。

→

Additional Vocabulary

獎學金: scholarship

Please change the following sentences to the “未” written style.

1. 護照還沒過期的人不必繳手續費。

→

2. 沒有按時繳稅的人會被罰。

→

護照未過期的人不必繳手續費。

未按時繳稅的人會被罰。

Additional Vocabulary

fá (罰): to fine; to punish

A-3 由管理員代繳瓦斯費的住戶也請在本月底以前將七、八月分的瓦斯費交給管理員。

Would those households whose gas fee was paid for them by the caretaker please pay the gas fee for July and August to him by the end of the month.

Explanation: “由 + N + V + O” indicates that this N has the responsibility for or the right to this matter. This N is the agent of the action, e.g., “由你來決定什麼時候去旅行。” The object of the action can also be placed in front of “由”, e.g., “什麼時候去旅行，由你來決定。” A “來” may be added in front of the verb for a more colloquial tone.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 本大樓的住戶都是由管理員代繳瓦斯費的。

→

2. 本公司的業務完全由張經理決定。

→

3. 現在由李經理說明公司的制度跟福利。

→

4. 我們這次出國，行程由陳小姐安排。

→

Additional Vocabulary

說明: to explain

Please change the following sentences to the “由” written style.

1. 祕書的待遇是按經驗跟工作情況決定的。

→

2. 跟經理面談的時間是李祕書安排的。

→

祕書的待遇由經驗跟工作情況決定。跟經理面談的時間由李祕書安排。

A-4 由管理員代繳瓦斯費的住戶也請在本月底以前將七、八月分的瓦斯費交給管理員。

Would those households whose gas fee was paid for them by the caretaker please pay the gas fee for July and August to him by the end of the month.

Explanation: “將” is used in writing. Its usage and meaning are the same as the spoken “把”.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 本月底以前請將七、八月分的瓦斯費交給管理員。

→

2. 已經考完的同學請將考卷放在前面的桌子上。

→

3. 想應徵祕書的人，請於八月底以前將自傳跟履歷表寄給我們。

→

4. 李祕書已經將面談的時間通知應徵的人了。

→

Additional Vocabulary

考juàn (卷): test paper

Please change the following sentences to the “將” written style.

1. 請把圖章、身分證跟錢交給我，我馬上幫你辦。

→

2. 我已經把填好的報名表交給林小姐了。

→

請將圖章、身分證跟錢交給我，我馬上幫你辦
我已將填好的報名表交給林小姐了。

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogues may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary and do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

(一)

() 你想這是在哪裡？

a. 旅行社

b. 火車站

c. 公車站

() 這些話的意思是什麼？哪個不對？

a. 催旅客上車

b. 說火車開車時間

c. 參觀火車站的時間

(二)

() 你想這是在哪裡？

a. 辦公室

b. 火車站

c. 學校

() 這些話的意思是什麼？哪個不對？

a. 謝謝同學參加課外活動

b. 告訴同學繳報名費時間

c. 告訴同學課外活動時間

B. 保險費自動轉帳通知單

敬愛的林美月^{先生}
女士

一、非常謝謝您對保險費自動轉帳的支持。您代轉之保險費即將到期，費用如下，如果有錯，敬請通知本公司。

轉帳日期	86年12月27日	轉帳銀行	第一銀行
保單號碼	60092150	應繳次數	年繳 第7次
應繳日期	86年12月27日	保 險 費	5,137元
轉帳金額：		5,137元	

二、地址如有變更，請將背面「地址變更申請書」填好，寄回本公司。

Vocabulary

1. 敬愛

jìng'ài

V/Att: to respect and like

1) 這學期我有五位老師，李老師最關心學生，所以我最敬愛他。

2) 保險公司的通知單上寫的是「敬愛的趙先生」，沒有寫我的名字，也沒寫趙太太，所以你不要找我拿錢。

1) I have five teachers this semester. Mr. Lee cares most about his students, so I like him best.

2) On the letter from the insurance company it said "Dear Mr. Zhao" — not my name, and not "Mrs. Zhao," so don't you ask me for money.

2. 女士

nǚshì

N: Ms.; lady (M: 位)

3. 支持

zhīchí

V/N: to support / support

1) 林經理想了很多辦法，要改變公司的制度，可是同事們都不支持。

2) 李太太說沒有她先生的支持，她沒有辦法又要管家，又要念大學。

1) Manager Lin, has thought up a number of ways to change the company, but none of his colleagues support him.

2) Mrs. Lee says that without her husband's support she would not have been able to both to run the house hold and to study in college.

4. 之 zhī P: of
我想參加行遍天下旅行社辦的「中國之旅」，你有沒有興趣？
I want to go on the Xingbian Tianxia Travel Agency China tour. Are you interested?

5. 即將 jǐjiāng Adv: about to
球賽即將開始，請各位坐好。
The ball game is about to begin. Everybody please take your seats.

將 jiāng Adv: will; would
林經理信上說，她將到火車站接我，叫我不必擔心。
Manager Lin, said in the letter that she would come to the railway station to meet me, and told me not to worry.

6. 如下 rúxià Ph: as below; as follows
我的旅遊計畫如下：先去法國兩星期，再去義大利三星期，最後從德國回來。
My travel plan is as follows: first go to France for two weeks, then to Italy for three weeks, and finally come back via Germany.

如 rú V: as; like
1) 敬愛的用戶：本公司的新辦法如下，如有意見，請儘快通知本公司，謝謝。
2) 王老師愛人如己，誰有麻煩，他馬上就去幫忙。
1) Dear Residents: Our company's new procedure is as set out below. If you have any comments, please notify us as soon as possible, thank you.
2) Mr. Wang treats everybody like a brother or sister; if anyone has a problem, he goes to help them right away.

7. 日期 rìqī N: date (M: 個)

8. 保單 bǎodān N: insurance policy (M: 份)

9. 次數 cìshù N: number of times; number of occasions
在這裡停車是按次數，還是按時間算錢？
Is the parking fee here calculated by the number of times, or by the length of time?

人數 rénshù N: number of people
這個旅行團的人數太多，十五人以下的，我才參加。
The number of people in this tour is too high. I will only go if there are 15 or less.

10. 金額 jīn'é N: amount of money (M: 筆)
我的存款金額不夠買一個公寓。
The amount of money I have deposited is not enough to buy an apartment.

11. 變更 biàngēng V: to alter

跟客戶簽約以後，旅行社就不可以隨便變更行程。

After signing a contract with customers, the travel agency cannot change the itinerary at will.

12. 背面 bèimiàn N: back; reverse

要領錢以前，得在支票背面簽名。

You must sign on the reverse of the check before you can collect the money.

背 bèi / bēi N/V: back/ to carry on the back

有的地方，媽媽做事的時候，把小孩背(bēi)在背(bèi)上。

In some places, when a mother is working, she carries her baby on her back.

13. 申請書 shēnqǐngshū N: application form (M: 張、份)

申請表 shēnqǐngbiǎo N: application form (M: 張、份)

我要申請法國簽證，不知道要填幾張申請表。

I am applying for a French visa, and wonder how many application forms I have to fill out.

Grammar

B-1 您代轉之保險費即將到期。

The insurance premium you had transferred is about to expire.

Explanation: “之” when placed before a noun means the same as “的”, but it is used in writing.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 您代轉之保險費即將到期。

→

2. 本公司業務之發展非常需要各位合作。

→

3. 萬美公司之制度跟待遇非常好。

→

4. 外文系學生之外語能力不一定比其他系好。

→

Additional Vocabulary

其他: other

Please change the following sentences to the “之” written style.

1. 本年應該繳的保險費已經請銀行代轉。

→

2. 因陳祕書的工作能力特別好，老闆給她加薪。

→

本年應繳之保險費已請銀行代轉。

因陳祕書之工作能力特別好，老闆給她加薪。

B-2 您代轉之保險費即將到期。

The insurance premium you had transferred is about to expire.

Explanation: “即” means “馬上”, and “將” is the “將” of “將來”. “即將” is used in writing to indicate that an event or situation will happen. It is followed by a verb.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 您代轉之保險費即將到期。

→

2. 王先生的孩子今年夏天即將大學畢業。

→

3. 本公司即將發展國際業務，需要更多外語能力好的人。

→

4. 學期即將開始，學生應於九月以前回校上課。

→

Additional Vocabulary

國 jì (際): international

Please change the following sentences to the “即將” written style.

1. 我在這家公司工作到今年年底就要滿五年了。

→

2. 本校籃球隊明天就要到美國去參加世界杯比賽了。

→

我在這家公司工作到今年底即將滿五年。

本校籃球隊即將到美國參加世界杯賽。

B-3 您代轉之保險費即將到期，費用如下。

The insurance premium you had transferred is about to expire; the charge is as follows.

Explanation: “如下” is used in writing. “下” means “下面”, so “如下” means that information on the topic will follow.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 您代轉之保險費即將到期，費用如下。

→

2. 本公司各部門之業務如下。

→

3. 祕書的工作如下。

→

4. 本公司歐洲十八日遊的行程如下。

→

Additional Vocabulary

部門: department

Please change the following sentences into the “如下” written style.

1. 申請自動轉帳的手續寫在下面。

→

2. 辦簽證時需要的東西請看下面。

→

申請自動轉帳的手續如下。

辦簽證時需要的東西如下。

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following speech may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary and do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

() 你想這是在哪裡說話？

a. 銀行

b. 電話裡

c. 公司辦公室

() 這個人要做什麼？

a. 問變更地址辦法

b. 問轉帳辦法

c. 問繳費辦法

() 他說的辦法怎麼做？哪個不對？

a. 聽本來地址對不對

b. 說出新地址

c. 嗶聲後手續完成

Notes

1. “住戶” means “people who live in a building or an apartment complex.” It is a collective noun, and cannot have any number-measure phrase as its modifier.
2. “催繳通知” means “a notice to urge people to pay the fee.” But this is not addressed to individuals, therefore it says “各位住戶” at the beginning. It is equivalent to “Dear households.” Please note its format. Most open letters are in this format. It usually starts with “各位××：” and ends with “×××敬啓，” then the date.
3. Both “繳” and “交”, here, means “to pay.” One reason they are put together is syllabic — if there is only one word “繳”, it sounds like something unfinished, there is no balance, one more syllable is needed. It is common to put these two verbs together in Chinese 書面語, i.e., written language. The Chinese spoken language and written language sometimes are quite different. People tend to use shorter sentences in writing to save time and energy, therefore there are words, phrases and patterns used only for 書面語. Some words used for written language are introduced in this chapter, including: 於, 尚, 未, 將, 啓, 之, 即將, and 如下. There will be more in future lessons. 書面語 is used in writing and formal speech.
4. “由管理員代繳瓦斯費的住戶” means “those who ask the doorman to pay the gas fee for them.” In some places, the gas company will send workers to collect the gas fee while people are working, not at home. Those people would ask the doorman to pay it for them.
5. “在本月底以前” means “before the end of this month.” This is in 書面語, written language, therefore it is in the “在……以前” pattern, but “在” is usually not used in speaking.
6. “敬啓” means “to state respectfully.” “啓”, here, means “to inform.” “敬啓” can be used at the beginning or the end of a letter. When it is used on an envelope as “×××先生敬啓”, it means the letter should be opened by Mr.×.
7. “八六、九、二十” means September 20th, 1997. This “八六” is “民國八十六年.” It is in the calendar used in Taiwan, Republic of China. Because the first year of the country R.O.C. is 1912, 民國八十六年 is 1997. Although some people in Taiwan, especially engineers, prefer to use the western calendar, most documents, newspapers and publications still use the R.O.C. calendar.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

A.

各位住户：

一、本月份管理费应于十五日缴交。
请尚未缴费的住户尽快交给管理员。

二、由管理员代缴瓦斯费的住户也请在本月底以前将七、八月分的瓦斯费交给管理员。

谢谢合作。

台安大楼管理委员会敬启
八六、九、二十

B.

敬爱的林美月^{先生}
女士

一、非常谢谢您对保险费自动转账的支持。您代转之保险费即将到期，费用如下，如果有错，敬请通知本公司。

转账日期	86年12月27日	转账银行	第一银行
保单号码	60092150	应缴次数	年缴 第7次
应缴日期	86年12月27日	保险费	5,137元
转账金额：		5,137元	

二、地址如有变更，请将背面「地址变更申请书」填好，寄回本公司。

Exercises

I. How did it break?

The students are given some time to think of something broken, and how it broke. When they have all thought of something, each in turn describes the thing he/she has imagined. The other students then try to guess how it broke by asking questions, to which the student speaking gives brief answers. These should both be of the form “……是被……V壞的。”. The teacher should help with vocabulary questions.

例如：學生A：我的錶停了。(biǎo 錶, watch)

學生B：是不是你做了什麼，錶才壞的？

學生A：不是我，是我弟弟。

學生C：所以錶是被你弟弟弄壞的？

學生A：對。可是他是怎麼弄壞的？

學生D：他戴著你的錶去打球了，是嗎？

學生A：不是，他戴著我的錶去游泳了。

學生E：那麼，錶進了水，就被泡壞了。

II. Complaining contest

The students are split into groups of two, and given five minutes or so to think of whom they hate most and why. They then tell the other group member, and the complaints are written down, e.g. “he’s always late”; “she never stops talking”; “he always spends a lot of money on useless things”; “she never does what she promises to”; “he never says what he is thinking,” etc. When this is done, all group members in turn tell the class how many complaints their fellow member made, and which they think best, and why.

III. Writing a notice

The students are divided into groups of two or three; each group is to write a notice together. The notices may request: tuition payment, class fee; announce: the time and place of registration to attend an event, the rescheduled time of an exam, the time to hand in a report; a reminder about payment of the telephone bill, etc. The groups first discuss the tasks set by the teacher, what the contents of the notice should be, and what sentence constructions should be used to express this. The notices are then written on large sheets of paper provided by the teacher and stuck on the wall for all other students to observe and learn from.

IV. What will/could you do with it?

The students are split into two groups. The teacher first prepares cards with the name of an object written on each one. The teacher then takes a card and gives it to one group. A member of the other group is selected to ask what the object on the card is used for, and a member of the first group is chosen to reply, as clearly as possible, using the construction “我用這個來……”. After several such exchanges, the students of the second group should be able to guess what the

object is. When they guess correctly, the roles of the two groups are changed over: a card is given to the second group and the first group has to guess what the object is.

A：你用這個東西來做什麼？

B1：我用這個東西來做書籤 (shūqiān 書籤 bookmark)。

B2：我用這個東西來買東西付帳。

B3：我用這個東西來領錢。

A：我知道了，這個東西是「自動提款卡」。

V. Role play

1. Two students to a team, one is the landlord, the other the tenant. The tenant has not paid the previous month's rent and today is rent day. The landlord comes to collect the rent, but the tenant still does not have any money and cannot pay the two months' rent and of course does not have any money to move and wants the landlord to let him/her continue to live in the apartment. Perform the dialogue.
2. Two students perform the role of room-mates who use the same telephone. When the phone bill comes the roommates divide the costs. One call is a fifty minute long-distance call, but neither can remember making it and are not willing to pay, so they argue. Perform the dialogue.

Reading Comprehension

親愛的小月：

你搬走已經一個半月了，還沒有收到你的信，希望你一切都好。我已經請郵局轉了幾封信給你，今天又有一封保險公司給你的快信，我想一定有急事，就打開看看，原來是保費催繳通知單。你老是這麼糊塗，又忘了繳費，又被人催繳。上月之電話費，問你繳了沒有，你說繳過了，可是月底電話公司來通知說因為我們尚未繳費，他們即將於本月一日停話。我趕快拿著單子去繳費，順便申請了轉帳，這樣以後就不必擔心過期了。好了，不說這個了。你今天這封汽車保險繳費通知上說，帳目有問題，一定要本人帶著通知單去辦，不能由別人代辦，所以只好將通知單寄給你。你最好儘快去辦，要知道車子沒有保險是很麻煩的。也別忘了順便辦一下變更地址。我前幾天申請了一個e-mail帳號，以後我們可以用e-mail來聯絡，就快多了。我的地址是：sr03@ms20.hinet.net

有空來信。祝

順利

小春

五月八日

Additional Vocabulary

親愛的: dear

qì (汽)車: car

本人: I, me

一 qiè (切): everything

帳 mù (目): item on a bill or account

順利: smooth, easy, convenient

Questions:

1. 小春為什麼要寫這封信給小月？
2. 小月以前住在哪裡？小月跟小春是什麼關係？
3. 小春為什麼看小月的信？
4. 上個月的電話費有什麼問題？
5. 以後小春怎麼繳電話費？
6. 給小月的快信是誰寄來的？要她做什麼？
7. 小春為什麼不代小月去辦？
8. 小春希望小月以後怎麼跟她聯絡？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “順手” means?
 - a) comply with one's hand
 - b) do something as a natural sequence
 - c) follow the direction of the hand
2. What do you think the “背書” in “在支票上背書” means?
 - a) to endorse
 - b) to sign on the back of a book
 - c) to put a check in a book
3. What do you think “敬酒” means?
 - a) to drink respectfully
 - b) to propose a toast
 - c) a special kind of wine
4. What do you think “心動” means?
 - a) someone's heart is moved
 - b) to change one's mind
 - c) to become interested in something

Authentic Materials

I. 存款單和提款單

郵政存簿儲金存款單 (連線作業郵局專用)																				
中華民國 89 年 6 月 8 日																				
戶 名		林美月																		
局號	0	0	0	1	5	3	—	3	存款金額	億	仟萬	佰萬	拾萬	萬	仟	佰	拾	元	角	分
立帳郵局			台北七支			郵局			新台幣						5	5	0	0	0	0
帳號	0	2	1	4	7	5	—	3												

經辦員
主管員

填單 1.
 說明 2.
 3.

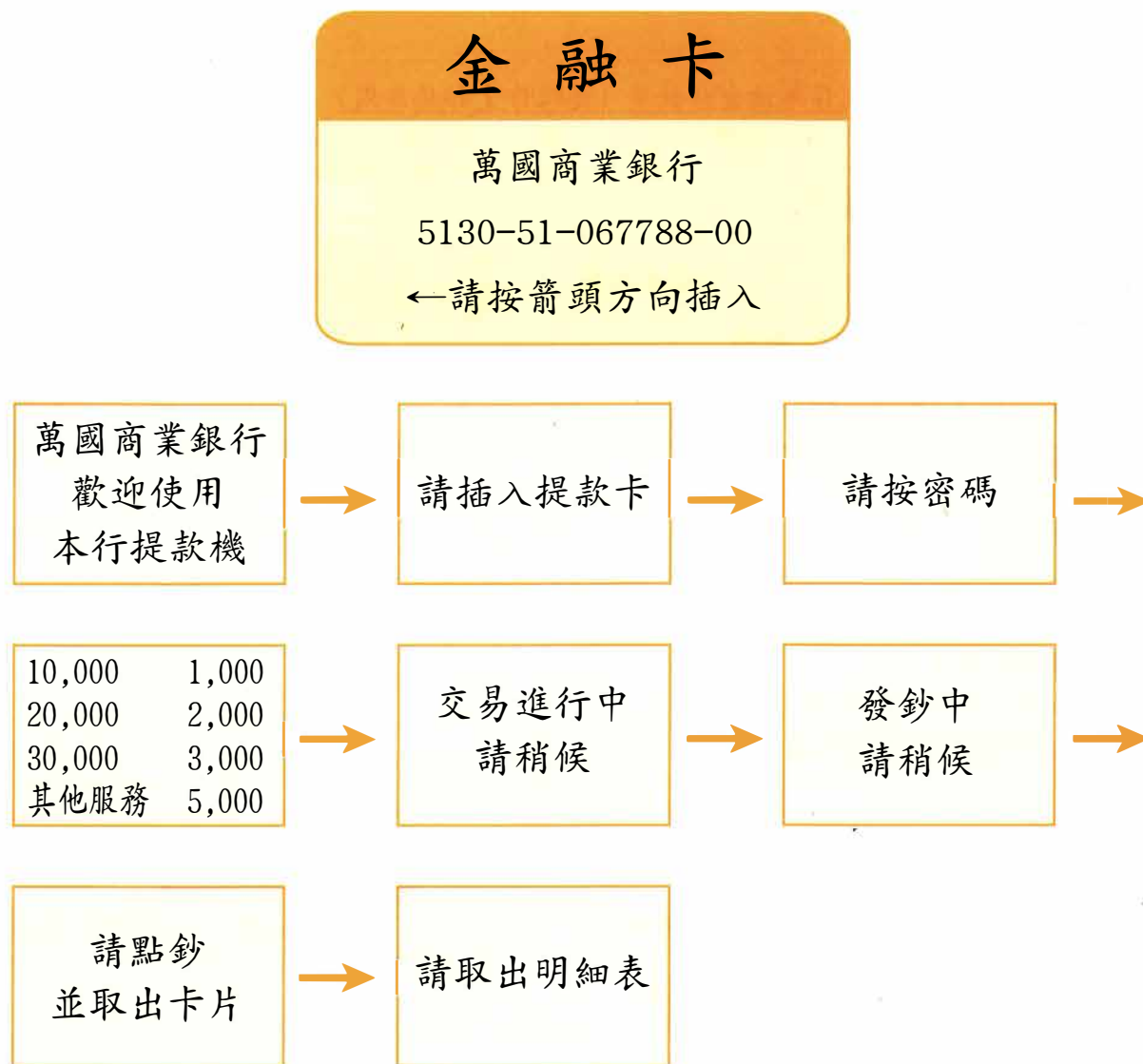
1. 請問這是什麼？
2. 是哪一天？誰來做這件事？
3. 55000是什麼？要放在哪裡？

中華民國 89 年 12 月 9 日										暗碼									
										1	2	3	4						
萬國商業銀行	憑大要分行科目		2	1	帳號		3	2	9	0	4	—	7	支號		0	0	存摺支取	
	新台幣		伍萬叁仟元整										會計						
	存戶：張小春												金額						
	簽章												複記		53,000. —				
												記帳							
金額大寫：零・壹・貳・叁・肆・伍・陸・柒・捌・玖・拾・佰・仟・萬																			

春張
印小

1. 請問這是什麼？
2. 是哪一天？誰來做這件事？
3. 53000是什麼？做什麼用？

II. 用自動提款卡提款



1. 你想「5130-51-067788-00」是什麼？
2. 你想「密碼」是什麼？
3. 如果你想領七千塊錢，你怎麼辦？
4. 如果你想知道你的戶頭裡還有多少錢，你怎麼辦？
5. 你想「請點鈔」是什麼意思？
6. 你想「明細表」是什麼東西？

第八單元 你病了嗎？

Unit 8 Are You Ill?

Key Study Points

Lesson 15: cold symptoms: headache, sneezing, itchy throat, cough, stuffy nose, fever / modal particles: ai, ma; complaining that changes are too quick / using clause to be the complement of an action / giving someone advice / agreeable tone

Lesson 16: letter formats / car accident injuries / consoling tone / congratulatory tone / pitying tone / indirect request

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 15

病了，小心，哈啾，怎麼了，一直，
打噴嚏，起床，一下子，適應，頭，
痛，喉嚨，癢，耳朵，可(emphasis)，
流行性感冒，厲害，發炎，咳嗽，
尤其是，鼻塞，發燒，像，症狀，
維他命，收入，代班，嘛，小氣，
大方，請病假，囉唆，唉，身體，
健康

一直
一下子……一下子……
可(emphasis)
尤其是
V/SV 得……
頭 + Nu + M(+N)
多 VO
就是嘛

Lesson 16

出車禍，自從，受傷，醫院，護士，
幸虧，繫，安全帶，安全帽，不算，
嚴重，當時，高速公路，泰山收費站，
快，機場交流道，輛，計程車，以為，
砰，聲，醒來，腿，撞斷了，急診室，
司機，流，血，來不及，急救，
救護車，路上，現場，不至於，快樂

自從……以後
幸虧
不算
快(about to)
撞斷了
來不及
早/晚/快/慢一點 VO
不至於

第十五課 小心感冒

Lesson 15 Be Careful or You Will Catch a Cold



小周：哈啾！¹

老吳：小周，怎麼了？一直打噴嚏。你也感冒了嗎？

小周：不知道。今天一起床就打噴嚏。這兩天天氣變得這麼快，一下子熱，一下子冷，很難適應。也許我真的感冒了。

老吳：除了打噴嚏以外，還有哪裡不舒服？

小周：頭有點痛，喉嚨癢癢的，耳朵有時候也聽不清楚。

老吳：那你可得小心點。這次的流行性感冒很厲害。你的喉嚨恐怕已經發炎了。我已經病了一個多星期了，²咳嗽得很厲害，尤其是夜裡，咳得沒辦法睡覺。

小周：我又沒有鼻塞，又沒有發燒，不像是流行性感冒。

老吳：希望你沒有感冒。不過有些症狀頭兩天還看不出來，你最好多喝水，多休息，再吃一點維他命。要不然你會跟我一樣，病得沒有辦法上班。

小周：是啊！不上班就沒有收入，還得找人代班。

老吳：就是嘛！而且我們老闆那麼小氣，請個病假也要囉唆半天。

小周：唉！³ 身體健康最重要。

Vocabulary

1. 病了 bìng·le V: to fall ill; to catch a disease

小王病了，現在什麼東西都不能吃，只能喝水。

Little Wang has fallen ill and cannot eat anything now; he can only drink water.

病 bìng V/N: to fall ill / disease; illness (M: 場、種)

1) 上個星期這個地方病死了好幾個人。不知道為什麼。

2) 小王的病現在怎麼樣了？好一點了嗎？

1) Last week several people died from a disease here. It is not known why.

2) How is Little Wang's illness now? A little bit better?

生病 shēng//bìng VO: to be ill

小王生了什麼病？為什麼沒來上班？

What illness did Little Wang catch? Why didn't he come to work?

病人 bìngrén N: sick person; patient (M: 個、位)

2. 小心 xiǎoxīn SV: to be careful

路上車多，你過街的時候，小心一點。

There are many cars on the street. Be more careful when you cross the street.

3. 哈啾 hā·jiū ON: atchoo; noise of a sneeze (M: 個)

我一出門就打了一個哈啾，我就想今天恐怕會運氣不好。

As soon as I went out of the door I sneezed, and I was worried I would have bad luck today.

4. 怎麼了 zěn·me·le IE: What's up?

你怎麼了？哭什麼？老闆罵你了嗎？

What's the matter? What are you crying about? Did the boss tell you off?

5. 一直 yìzhí Adv: continuously

1) 孩子從七點到現在一直哭，是不是病了？

2) 從這兒往前一直走兩分鐘就到銀行了。

1) The child has been crying continuously since seven o'clock. Is he sick?

2) From here keep walking straight ahead for two minutes and you'll get to the bank.

6. 打噴嚏 dǎ//pēntì VO: to sneeze

我今天早上一直打噴嚏，已經打了七、八個了，真不舒服。

I have been sneezing all this morning. I've already sneezed seven or eight times. It is really uncomfortable.

噴嚏 pēntì N: sneeze (M: 個)

7. 起床 qǐ//chuáng V: to wake up; get out of bed

明天的飛機很早。你最好早一點睡，明天才能早點起床。

Tomorrow's flight is very early. You had better go to sleep a little earlier so you will be able to wake up earlier tomorrow.

起來 qǐlái RC: to get up

明天的飛機很早，你最好早一點睡，明天才起得來。

Tomorrow's flight is very early. You had better go to sleep a little earlier so you will be able to get up tomorrow.

8. 一下子 yíxià·zi Adv: in one moment; very quickly

小李打完球以後說他餓死了，一下子就吃了五個包子。

Little Li said he was starving after playing ball, and ate five steamed buns in no time at all.

9. 適應 shìyìng V: to get used to; to adapt

我剛到這個班來，老師跟同學我都不太認識，所以還不太能適應。

I just transferred to this class, I don't know the teacher or classmates well, and so I haven't fully gotten used to it yet.

10. 頭 tóu N/SP: head/first (M: 個)

1) 我的頭很大，所以同學常常笑我。

2) 我來台北的頭兩天住在朋友家，找到房子以後就搬出來了。

1) My head is really large, so my classmates often laugh at me.

2) When I arrived in Taipei, I stayed at a friend's house for the first two days, and after I found my own place, I moved out.

11. 痛 tòng SV: to feel pain; to hurt
我今天一直在寫報告，寫了五個小時了，手好痛啊。
I have been writing a report all day. After writing for five hours, my hand really hurts.

頭痛 tóutòng SV: headache
小張的女朋友最近老是跟他生氣，他很頭痛。
Little Zhang's girlfriend is always mad at him lately, it is really a headache for him.

12. 喉嚨 hóulóng N: throat

13. 癢 yǎng SV: to itch; to be scratchy
頭好癢，應該洗頭了。
My head is really itchy — I had better wash my hair.

14. 耳朵 ěr·duo N: an ear (M: 隻、對)

15. 可 kě Adv: really
王：你幫我個忙，打電話給我女朋友，說我沒跟別的小姐出去玩。
李：不行，這件事我可不能幫你，我怕她以後找我麻煩。
Wang: Help me and call my girlfriend to tell her I did not go out with another girl.
Li: No, I really cannot help you with this. I am worried that she will give me trouble later.

16. 流行性感 冒 liúxíngxìng gǎnmào N: influenza; flu

感冒 gǎnmào N: common cold

流行性 liúxíngxìng N: popularity; prevalence

危險性 wēixiǎnxìng N: risk

新聞性 xīnwénxìng N: timing

重要性 zhòngyàoxìng N: importance

可能性 kěnéngxìng N: probability

今年年底房租漲價的可能性有多大？

How big is the probability of rent going up at the end of the year?

17. 厲害 lìhài SV: fierce; serious; impressive

- 1) 小林一下子吃了十個包子，真厲害。
 - 2) 你太太真厲害，你做什麼她都要管。
 - 3) 小王這次病得很厲害，已經一個星期沒辦法上班了。
 - 4) 小張好厲害，只要他想要的東西，他就一定有辦法得到。
- 1) Little Lin ate ten steamed buns in a flash. Really impressive.

- 2) Your wife is really fierce. She controls whatever you do.
 3) This time Little Wang's illness is very serious, and he has not been able to go to work for over a week.
 4) Little Zhang is really impressive. If he wants anything, he has a way to get it.

18. 發炎 fāyán V: to infect; to inflame

我的喉嚨大概發炎了，好痛。

My throat is probably infected, it really hurts.

19. 咳嗽 késòu V/N: to cough/cough

咳 ké V: to cough

我從上週末開始咳嗽，已經咳了一個星期了。真不知道還要咳多久才會好。

I started coughing last weekend. It has already been a week now. I wonder how much longer I'm going to cough until I am well.

20. 尤其是 yóuqíshì Adv: especially

我女朋友家的人都喜歡吃辣的，尤其是她爸爸。他吃的每個菜都是紅紅的，辣得不得了。

My girlfriend's family all like to eat spicy food, especially her father. Everything he eats is red and incredibly hot.

21. 鼻塞 bísāi V: to get a stopped-up nose; to have a stuffed-up nose

我感冒的時候一定會鼻塞，吃飯、說話都很不舒服。

When I have a cold, my nose always gets stopped up. It is very uncomfortable to eat and talk.

鼻子 bí·zi N: nose

塞 sāi V: to plug; to clog

我不想聽我先生說話，就把耳朵塞起來，他就更生氣了。

When I do not want to hear my husband talking, I plug my ears. Then he gets even madder.

塞車 sāichē (交通堵塞 jiāotōng dǔsè)

V: to be jammed with traffic

我們公司前面這條路早上上班的時候常塞車，得在路上等半天，所以我總是很早出門。

The road in front of our office is often jammed during the morning rush hour and you have to wait by the road for ages, so I always leave very early.

22. 發燒 fā/shāo VO: to have a fever

1) 你現在三十八度四，發燒了。怎麼辦？

2) 趙太太發高燒，燒了兩天了。情況很危險。

- 1) Your temperature is 38.4 degrees now — you have a fever. What should we do?
 2) Mrs. Zhao has had a high fever for two days. Her condition is very serious.

23. 像 xiàng V: to resemble

- 1) 我像爸爸，尤其是鼻子最像。
 2) 你穿的衣服看起來不像學生，像在銀行上班的人。
 1) I resemble Dad, especially my nose.
 2) The clothes you wear do not look like a student's. They look like people who work in a bank.

24. 症狀 zhèngzhuàng N: symptoms (M: 種)

我這次感冒只有兩個症狀：頭痛跟鼻塞。

My cold only has two symptoms this time: a headache and stuffed nose.

25. 維他命 wéitāmìng N: vitamin (M: 種、kē 顆 pellet)

有人說每天吃一顆維他命C，就不容易生病。

Some people say if you take vitamin C every day, you will not easily fall ill.

26. 收入 shōurù N: salary; pay; income (M: 份)

你每個月的收入才一萬五千塊，夠用嗎？

Your monthly salary is only \$15,000. Is that enough?

27. 代班 dài//bān VO: to work in place of someone else; to fill in; to substitute for

你今天怎麼來上班了？給誰代班啊？你代小王的班嗎？

How come you are at work today? Whom are you substituting for? Are you filling in for Little Wang?

28. 嘛 .ma P: (indicating something obvious)

李：你怎麼知道這麼多美國的事？

王：我在美國住了十幾年嘛！

Li: How do you know so much about America?

Wang: I lived in America over ten years!

29. 小氣 xiǎo·qì SV: to be stingy; selfish

老李最小氣，每次請客就請一碗麵。

Old Li is the stingiest. Every time he treats a meal it is only a bowl of noodles.

30. 大方 dàfāng SV: to be generous

我爸爸用錢很大方，看到喜歡的東西，不管貴不貴，他都買。

My father is very generous with money. Whenever he sees something he likes, he will buy it no matter it is expensive or not.

31. 請病假 qǐng//bìngjià VO: to request sick leave

老闆，我病了，很不舒服，想請兩天病假。

Boss, I am sick and very uncomfortable. I want to ask for two days' sick leave.

請

qǐng

V: to request; to ask

1) 小林請了一個星期的假，去南部看女朋友去了。

2) 我們可以請小張的法國朋友給我們介紹一下法國菜，我們去法國的時候就知道什麼好吃了。

1) Little Lin requested a week's vacation, and went down south to see his girlfriend.

2) We could ask Little Zhang's French friend to introduce some French dishes to us. Then when we go to France we will know what is good to eat.

病假

bìngjià

N: sick leave

32. 囉唆

luō.suō

SV/V: to be long-winded; wordy/to nag; to chatter

我先生真囉唆，兩句話可以說完的事，他要說十句。

My husband is really wordy. For something that can be said in two sentences, he says it in ten.

33. 唉

āi

P: indicates a sigh of regret or sadness

唉，又要考試了。考試這麼多，累死了。

Oh, another test. So many tests, I'm dead tired.

34. 身體

shēntǐ

N: body; health

1) 你如果身體不舒服，最好請假在家休息。

2) 我身體不錯，很少生病。

1) If you do not feel well, you had better ask for leave and rest at home.

2) My health is not bad. I am rarely sick.

35. 健康

jiànkāng

SV/N: to be healthy/health

1) 我的身體很健康，很少生病。

2) 王老師的健康情況越來越好，病已經好得差不多了，下個星期就可以回來上課了。

1) I am very healthy, and seldom sick.

2) Teacher Wang is getting better and better. She has almost recovered fully. Next week she can come back to class.

1. 小周，怎麼了？一直打噴嚏。 Little Zhou, what's wrong? You keep sneezing.

Explanation: “一直” can be followed by a verb phrase or adjective phrase and indicates that an action or situation has continued from some time in the past to the present, or even will continue afterwards. If the action has not been performed, this can be indicated by using “一直 + 不(沒有) + VP”.

王：小林說他是台灣大學畢業的，你不知道嗎？

李：他沒說過，所以我_____。

王：昨天晚上你去哪裡了？我打電話，怎麼都沒人接？

李：真的嗎？我沒出門啊，_____。

王：你說你感冒了，有什麼症狀？

李：喉嚨痛啊，從早上到現在_____。

王：小張回國以後qíngxíng(情形)怎麼樣？跟你聯絡了沒有？

李：不知道，他回去以後_____。

一直不知道他是台灣大學畢業的
一直沒有跟我聯絡

一直很痛
一直都在家

Additional Vocabulary

qíngxíng (情形): situation

2. 這兩天天氣變得這麼快，一下子熱，一下子冷，很難適應。

The weather has changed quickly these last two days — one moment it's hot, the next moment it's cold. It's difficult to adjust.

Explanation: “一下子……一下子……” indicates rapid changes in behavior or condition. It has a tone of exaggeration. “一下子” can be followed by a noun, verb, VO, or SV. If followed by a noun, the relevant verb must follow. In this construction, the speaker must also comment that this change happened too quickly. “一會兒……一會兒……” can also be used in the same sense.

王：我dù(肚)子好痛。

李：那是因為你_____，_____，喝了這麼多，dù(肚)子當然會不舒服。

王：你看起來很不舒服。

李：是啊，我_____，_____，吵死人了。

王：你幫老趙訂機票了沒有？

李：還沒，他 _____，_____，真討厭。

王：上次借的錢還你。老闆今天給我工錢，我可以請你吃飯。

李：你在做什麼工作？錢 _____，_____，每次不一樣。

王：你好像很著急，怎麼了？

李：我想我孩子有問題，因為他今天 _____，_____，好奇怪。

一下子咳嗽，一下子打噴嚏

一下子冰可樂，一下子熱紅茶

一下子要去德國，一下子要去法國

一下子多，一下子少

一下子哭，一下子笑

Additional Vocabulary

dù (肚子): stomach 工錢: pay, wages

3. 那你可得小心點。 You should be more careful.

Explanation: “可” indicates emphasis and is placed before an adverb, verb, SV, etc., that the speaker wishes to stress; however “真”, “太”, or some other adverb must appear before the SV, otherwise “了” or “呢” must follow it. The intention of the speaker may be: a) to warn or remind, e.g. “你可別忘了繳電話費” (“don’t forget to pay the telephone bill.”); b) to not fully agree with the other party’s attitude, e.g. “我可不像你這麼有錢，看到什麼都買” (“I am not rich like you, who can buy whatever you want.”); c) to emphasize degree, e.g. “我太太做飯做得可真好，下次請你來吃” (“My wife is an excellent cook; next time I will invite you over for food”); or d) to show that something was not easily finished, e.g. “這麼多的書，我可都看完了” (“So many books! I finally finished reading them all.”)

a) 王：再見！再見！我得上飛機去啦。以後再聯絡。

李：好，再見。回去以後 _____。

王：我去上班啦。今天事多，可能會晚一點回來。

李：今天晚上有客人，你 _____，別 ràng(讓)客人等你。

可得七點以前回來

可別忘了給我寫信

Additional Vocabulary

ràng (讓): to let ; to allow

b) 媽媽：你打電話告訴兒子，天氣冷了，叫他多穿一件衣服。

爸爸：_____！孩子這麼大了，怎麼會不知道什麼時候應該加衣服？

王：這兩雙鞋都很好看，你都買了吧。

李：_____，就買一雙吧。

我可沒有那麼多錢

你管的可真多

c) 王：你先打電話給老張，再去他辦公室把我要的東西送到東三街去。

李：_____。我不想去，你自己去吧。

王：你有什麼不懂的事，都可以去問老趙。

李：對啊，_____，好像沒有他不知道的事。

他知道的事情可真多

這可太麻煩了

d) 王：你在做什麼？半天沒看見你。

李：洗衣服，這麼多衣服，洗了兩個小時，現在_____。

王：你回來了？芭蕾舞的票買到沒有？

李：排了三個小時的隊，_____。

可洗好了

可買到票了

4. 我已經病了一個多星期了，咳嗽得很厲害，尤其是夜裡，咳得沒辦法睡覺。

I have been sick for more than a week with a vicious cough, especially at night: I cough so much that I cannot sleep.

Explanation: “尤其是” is followed by a noun, indicating that within a group or in comparison with another object or situation, the noun which follows is especially remarkable.
“尤其是” is usually placed in the latter part of a sentence.

王：小陳的外語怎麼樣？

李：他會好幾種語言，都說得很好，_____。

王：這個月大樓管理費漲了五百塊。

李：別的東西價錢也都漲了，_____，漲得最多。

王：現在年輕人喜歡的東西真奇怪。

李：是啊，現在流行的東西都好奇怪，_____，什麼怪味道的都有。

王：我今天來晚了，老闆又扣我錢了，他真小氣。

李：別生氣了，世界上的老闆都小氣，_____。

尤其是房租
尤其是我們公司的老闆

尤其是泡沫紅茶
尤其是德文

5. ①我已經病了一個多星期了，咳嗽得很厲害，尤其是夜裡，咳得沒辦法睡覺。

I have been sick for more than a week with a vicious cough, especially at night; I cough so much I cannot sleep.

②要不然你會跟我一樣，病得沒有辦法上班。

Otherwise, you will be like me; so sick you cannot go to work.

Explanation: In the “V/SV 得……” pattern, the verb or SV which precedes the “得” is usually the reason, and the verb phrase or clause which follows the “得” indicates the result and degree. The meaning of this construction is that a certain activity or condition leads to a certain situation for the party involved. It has a tone of exaggeration. The concerned party can be placed at the beginning of the sentence or following the “得”. If following the “得”, it indicates a passive tone.

王：你怎麼了？頭痛嗎？

李：是啊，我在看書，書上的字太小，_____。

王：你不是去跟老朋友見面了嗎？怎麼還沒吃飯？

李：對啊，我們好久沒見，聊了好多，_____。

王太太：李太太，什麼事？這麼著急？

李太太：你幫幫忙，好不好？我孩子一直哭，_____。

王：最近青菜的價錢怎麼樣？生意好嗎？

李：颱風剛過，菜都漲價了，_____。

王：你覺得老林不應該罵你，你為什麼不告訴他？

李：我太生氣，_____。

王：你這麼高興，你爸爸送了你什麼東西？

李：他送了我一liàng(輛)紅色的跑車，我_____。

聊得忘了吃飯
看得我頭好痛

哭得我不知應該怎麼辦
高興得跳起來

氣得說不出話來
貴得沒有人要買

6. 有些症狀頭兩天還看不出來。

Some symptoms cannot be seen during the first two days.

Explanation: “頭” indicates the very beginning and can be followed by Nu-M-(N).

王：你來台灣三年了，一直住在台北嗎？

李：不是。_____，去年才搬到台北來的。

王：你的日文課念什麼書？難不難？

李：_____，從第六課開始比較難。

王：你這次去歐洲旅行，好玩嗎？

李：_____，後來護照丟了，就不好玩了。

王：這次芭蕾舞團的表演，賣座嗎？

李：_____，從第四場開始，人就越來越少了。

頭幾課不難
頭一個禮拜很好玩

頭兩年住在台中
頭三場很賣座

7. 你最好多喝水，多休息，再吃一點維他命。

You had better drink more water, get more rest, and take more vitamins too.

Explanation: In the “多/少 VO” sentence pattern, the “多/少” is used as an adverb to modify the following verb. “多/少 VO” indicates that the action should be increased or decreased. It is often used to advise or request the other party to do something.

王：我不知道我說錯了什麼，還是做錯了什麼，最近老闆常常找我麻煩。我應該怎麼辦？

李：我看你從今天開始 _____，_____。他就不會再找你麻煩了。

王：我們一樣五十歲，可是你的身體比我好多了。

李：我喜歡運動啊。_____。

王：最近維他命漲價了，一 píng (瓶) 維他命 C 要好幾百塊。

李：那你就吃水果吧，_____。

孩子：媽，我這次考試沒考好，你別罵我。

媽媽：我早就跟你說過了，你要 _____，_____，可是你不聽，
才會考得這麼不好。

多運動身體才會好
多做事，少說話

少看電視，多看書
多吃水果就不必吃維他命C了

Additional Vocabulary

píng (瓶): bottle

早就: to already

8. 就是嘛！That's the way it is!

Explanation: The complement “嘛” is used at the end of a sentence in a falling tone to express that something is obvious or apparent. It means “本來就是這樣”，“本來就應該這樣” or “你應該知道啊” and often expresses a sensation of complaint, dissatisfaction, or lack of patience. “就是嘛” indicates complete agreement with the other party's point of view, statement, or opinion, and means “情況就是你說的那樣” (“The situation is just as you say”).

A. 嘛

王：你怎麼又忘了繳電費？

李：你別 _____！我實在太忙了。

王：我累了，不想跟你們去KTV了。你們走吧，不要等我了。

李：走嘛！_____！很好玩的。

王：你天天吃宮保雞丁，怎麼不換一換？

李：我 _____！別的東西都沒有這麼好吃，我不喜歡。

王：啊？十二點了，我累得連話都說不清楚了。

李：累了就 _____！沒做完的事，明天再做吧。

跟我們一起去嘛

愛吃嘛

去睡覺嘛

罵人嘛

B. 就是嘛

王：這家餐廳的價錢不便宜，菜也不怎麼好吃，為什麼客人還那麼多？

李：_____！真奇怪。

王：每天加班加到十點，老闆還說我們太懶，真過分。

李：_____！

王：他每天都出去玩，沒看到他念書，考試還考得這麼好，真奇怪。

李：_____！不知道他是怎麼念的？

王：身體不健康，賺那麼多錢有什麼用？

李：_____！身體健康最重要。

Additional Vocabulary

加班: to work overtime

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

() 這兩個人在哪裡說話？

a. 收音機裡面

b. 電視台

c. 醫院

() 這兩個人在做什麼？

a. 談生病很麻煩

b. 談李文中做些什麼

c. 談現在流行的感冒

() 下面哪一個不是這位先生說的？

a. 這次的感冒可能頭痛、喉嚨痛、咳嗽

b. 得了這次流行性感冒可能要兩三個禮拜才會好

c. 這次的流行性感冒症狀不太多

() 為什麼這位先生說，小孩和老人不舒服一定要去看醫生？因為

a. 小孩和老人比較多

b. 小孩和老人有危險性

c. 小孩和老人不喜歡看 yī(醫)生

() 下面哪個不是這位先生說的已經感冒的人應該做的？

a. 多喝水、多休息

b. 不要出門

c. 看電視

() 你想這位小姐是做什麼的？

a. 她在李文中醫師的家做事

b. 她在天地電視台工作

c. 她是萬國 yīyuàn(醫院)的醫生

Additional Vocabulary

yīyuàn (醫院): hospital yī (醫): doctor

Notes

1. “哈啾” is an example of onomatopoeia, which imitates a sound. Its abbreviation used in this book is “ON.” “哈啾” is the sound of a sneeze.
2. “我已經病了一個多星期了” means “I have been sick formore than one week.” The “了” at the end of the sentence indicates “up to now.”
3. “唉” is an interjection, used at the beginning of a sentence. “唉” indicates a sigh of regret or sadness. The tone should descend and be soft.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

小周：哈啾！

老吴：小周，怎么了？一直打喷嚏。你也感冒了吗？

小周：不知道。今天一起床就打喷嚏。这两天天气变得这么快，一下子热，一下子冷，很难适应。也许我真的感冒了。

老吴：除了打喷嚏以外，还有哪里不舒服？

小周：头有点痛，喉咙痒痒的，耳朵有时候也听不清楚。

老吴：那你可得小心点。这次的流行性感冒很厉害。你的喉咙恐怕已经发炎了。我已经病了一个多星期了，咳嗽得很厉害，尤其是夜里，咳得没办法睡觉。

小周：我又没有鼻塞，又没有发烧，不像是流行性感冒。

老吴：希望你没有感冒。不过有些症状头两天还看不出来，你最好多喝水，多休息，再吃一点维他命。要不然你会跟我一样，病得没有办法上班。

小周：是啊！不上班就没有收入，还得找人代班。

老吴：就是嘛！而且我们老板那么小气，请个病假也要啰唆半天。

小周：唉！身体健康最重要。









第十六課 出車禍了


Lesson 16 Had a Car Accident

16

新郵件 - Microsoft Exchange

檔案(F) 編輯(E) 插入(I) 格式(A) 工具(T) 說明(H)

楷體 18 B / U        

收件者(R)... b20138@ms2001.hinet.net 

副本(C)...

主旨(S): 給美月的信

美月：

自從上次見面以後一直沒有跟你聯絡，是因為我上個月出車禍受傷，在醫院住了三個禮拜，昨天才回家。你放心，幸虧我繫了安全帶，受傷的情況不算嚴重。當時我在高速公路上，已經過了泰山收費站，快到機場交流道時，¹有一輛計程車從旁邊開過來，我以為不會撞到，沒想到「砰」的一聲，我就什麼都不知道了。²醒來才知道我的腿撞斷了。我聽急診室的護士說那位司機因為流了太多血，來不及急救，在去醫院的路上就死了。要是車禍現場有人早一點打電話叫救護車，他就不至於死了。³現在想想，我的運氣實在比他好太多了。

我現在每天在家休息，常常上網路看看。你方便的話，我們可以用網路聯絡。祝
健康快樂

金水⁴
1997.12.3.

Vocabulary

1. 出車禍 chū//chēhuò

VO: to have a traffic accident

他開車真不小心，去年就出了三次車禍，車子都撞壞了，只好買新的。

He really drives recklessly. He had three accidents last year and his car was totally wrecked. He had no choice but to buy a new one.

車禍 chēhuò

N: traffic accident (M: 次、場、起)

2. 自從 zìcóng

CV: since then; ever since

自從學會了電腦以後，我就不用筆寫信了。

Since I learned how to use a computer, I no longer use a pen to write letters.

自 zì

CV: from

最近旅行的人很多，我們旅館自二樓到七樓全都客滿了。

Recently there have been many vacationers. Our hotel is fully occupied from the 2nd floor to the 7th floor.

3. 受傷 shòu//shāng

VO: to receive an injury; to be injured

他昨天出了車禍，頭受了一點兒傷，很痛，只好在家休息，今天不來上班了。

He was in a car wreck yesterday and has a slight head injury. He is in pain and he has to stay at home and rest. He will not come to work today.

輕傷 qīngshāng

N: slight injury (chù 處 site)

重傷 zhòngshāng

N: serious injury (chù 處 site)

傷 shāng

N/V/RE: injury/to injure/to have an injury (chù 處 site)

1) 聽說老陳昨天出了車禍，不知道他受傷了沒有？傷得重不重？

2) 小林被車撞傷了，不過傷得不重。

1) I heard Old Chen was in a car wreck yesterday. I wonder if he was hurt. Is it serious?

2) Little Lin was hurt in a car crash, but not seriously.

4. 醫院 yīyuàn

N: hospital (M: 家)

醫生 yīshēng

N: doctor (M: 位、個)

醫師 yīshī

N: doctor (M: 位、個)

我們醫院裡，有幾十位醫生，張家新醫師是最年輕的。

There are twenty or thirty doctors in our hospital. Dr. Zhang Jiabin is the youngest.

5. 護士 hùshì

N: nurse (M: 位、個)

6. 幸虧 xìngkuī Adv: fortunately; luckily

我完全忘了明天要考試的事了。幸虧你告訴我，要不然我沒準備就得考試，一定考得不好。

I totally forgot the test tomorrow. Luckily you told me, or I would have had to take the test without having prepared for it, and I would definitely not have done well.

7. 繫 jì V: to tie; to fasten

我下山的時候，把穿的鞋繫在背包上。

When I was coming down the mountain, I tied the shoes I was wearing onto my backpack.

8. 安全帶 ānquándài N: safety belt (M: 條)

皮帶 pí dài N: (leather) belt (M: 條)

鞋帶 xié dài N: shoelace (M: gēn 根 strip)

帶子 dài·zi N: ribbon (M: 條)

小王跟我們出去的時候，在頭上繫了一條紅色的帶子。

When Little Wang went out with us, she tied a red ribbon around her head.

*9. 安全門 ānquánmén N: safety door; fire door (M: 道)

安全帽 ānquánmào N: safety helmet (M: dǐng 頂)

帽子 mào·zi N: hat (M: dǐng 頂)

戴 dài V: to wear (hat, watch, etc.)

10. 不算 búsuàn V: not count as

這次颱風不算大，沒什麼風雨，我們還是按本來的計畫去露營吧。

This typhoon isn't very strong — almost no winds or rain. Let's still go camping as planned.

算是 suànshì V: to consider as

要是你頭不痛了，你的病就算是好了。

If your head does not hurt, that means your illness is over.

11. 嚴重 yánzhòng SV: to be serious

這次的流行性感冒很厲害，只要得了就很嚴重，發燒、頭痛、鼻塞、咳嗽，什麼症狀都有，兩個禮拜都好不了。

This flu is particularly virulent. It's very serious when you have it: fever, headache, blocked nose, cough, all the symptoms, and it takes more than two weeks to recover.

12. 當時 dāngshí MA: at that time

高小姐的媽媽車禍受傷被人送進醫院，當時高小姐在公司上班，接到

電話就馬上去醫院了。

Ms. Gao's mother was injured in a car accident, and was taken to the hospital by someone. Ms. Gao was at work in the office at the time, and on receiving the phone call, immediately went to the hospital.

13. 高速公路 gāosù gōnglù N: highway; expressway (M: 條)

高速 gāosù N: high speed

公路 gōnglù N: highway; public road (M: 條)

馬路 mǎlù N: road (M: 條)

媽媽總是跟孩子說：「過馬路要小心，看清楚了沒有車再過去。」

Mom always tells the children: "Be more careful when crossing the road. Check whether there are cars before you cross."

速度 sùdù N: speed

小張吃飯的速度比我快，我才吃半碗，她已經吃飽了。

Little Zhang eats more quickly than I do. When I've only eaten half a bowl, she's already finished.

14. 泰山收費站 Tàishān Shōufèizhàn Proper N: name of toll booth

泰山 Tàishān Proper N: Taishan, a county near the CKS airport

收費站 shōufèizhàn N: toll station (chù 處 site)

馬上就到收費站了，過路費你準備好了沒有？

We'll be at the toll station in a second. Have you got the toll fee ready?

15. 快 kuài Adv: fast ; rapid ; swift

七點了，爸爸快回來了，去洗洗手，準備吃飯吧。

It's seven o'clock, and Dad will be home soon. Go wash your hands and get ready for dinner.

16. 機場交流道 jīchǎng jiāoliúdào N: airport interchange

機場 jīchǎng N: airport (M: zuò 座 establishment)

我要去飛機場接朋友，哪裡有到機場的公車？

I am going to the airport to pick up a friend. Where do the buses to the airport leave from?

交流道 jiāoliúdào N: interchange (chù 處 site)

你在泰山交流道下高速公路往南開十分鐘就進市區了。

Get off the highway at the Taishan Interchange and drive south, and you'll be in the city in ten minutes.

17. 輛 liàng M: for automobiles; vehicles

18. 計程車 jìchéngchē N: taxi (M: 輛)

下雨了，每一輛計程車都有人，很多人都叫不到車。

It's raining, and all the taxis are full. Many people haven't been able to flag one down.

19. 以為 yǐwéi Adv: to think (mistakenly)

我以為台北的生活費不高，來了以後才知道真不便宜。

I thought that the cost of living in Taipei was not high, and only after I came did I find that it really is not cheap.

20. 砰 pēng ON: bang

21. 聲 shēng M/N: noise; word

1) 我們聽到「砰」的一聲，就趕快出去看，原來是兩輛計程車撞在一起了。

2) 你有需要我幫忙的地方就跟我說一聲，不要客氣。

3) 你說話小聲一點，我聽得見，不必那麼大聲。

1) We heard a "bang" and went out to check. Two taxis had crashed into each other.

2) When you need my help, just say the word. Don't be too polite.

3) Lower your voice. I can hear you. It's not necessary to be so loud.

聲音 shēngyīn N: voice ; sound (M: 個)

1) 我聽見有聲音，就起來看看是誰來了。

2) 有的人說話的聲音跟唱歌的聲音不一樣。

1) When I heard a sound, I got up and went to see who came.

2) Some people have a different voice when talking from when singing.

22. 醒來 xǐnglái V: to wake up (mentally)

醒 xǐng V: to awake; to wake up

1) 我今天早上五點就醒了。醒來以後不想再睡了，就起來看書。

2) 我的酒還沒醒，頭還很痛。你別跟我說話。

1) I woke up at five this morning. After awakening, I didn't want to go back to sleep, so I got up and read a book.

2) I haven't woken up from the alcohol yet, and my head still hurts. Don't talk to me.

23. 腿 tuǐ N: leg (M: 條、雙)

大腿 dàtuǐ N: thigh

小腿 xiǎotuǐ N: calf of leg

24. 撞斷了 zhuàngduàn-le RC: to be broken after being hit

我太太剛學會開車。第一次開車回來，就把我們家門口的樹撞斷了。

My wife had just learned to drive. The first time she went for a drive, on her return she broke the tree outside our door so that it broke in two.

斷 duàn V/RE: to break; to be broken

- 1) 這種鞋帶怎麼那麼容易斷？才用了一個禮拜就斷了。
- 2) 我昨天晚上去酒館喝酒，看到一個很兇的人，把坐在他旁邊的人的鼻子打斷了。

- 1) Why this kind of shoelace breaks so easily? I've only had them for a week and they broke.
- 2) I went to the bar for a drink last night, and saw a really mean person there. He broke the nose of the guy sitting next to him.

25. 急診室 jízhěnshì N: emergency ward (M: 間)

急診 jízhěn N: emergency treatment

昨天夜裡十二點，孩子發燒。我跟太太趕快把他送到醫院掛急診。

My child had a fever last night at twelve, so my wife and I rushed him to the hospital for emergency treatment.

26. 司機 sījī N: driver (M: 位)

27. 流 liú V: to flow

山上的水都流到海裡去嗎？

Does all the mountain water flow to the sea?

28. 血 xiě N: blood (M: dī 滴 drop)

你的傷不嚴重，也沒有流血。你放心回家吧。

Your wound is not serious, and you're not bleeding. Don't worry — go back home.

29. 來不及 lái bù jí RC: not to be able to make it (on time)

我的火車十一點半開，現在坐公車去，來得及來不及？

My train leaves at 11:30. Can I make it on time or not if I take the bus now?

30. 急救 jíjiù V/N: to save; to rescue; first aid

救 jiù V: to save

- 1) 我開車剛過信一路口就看見一輛計程車出了車禍，司機受傷了，我就馬上把他送到醫院去急救了。
- 2) 每個人都應該學會急救，有人受傷才能救人。

- 1) I had just driven past Xinyi Road when I saw a taxi that had been in an accident. The driver was injured, so I rushed him to the hospital for treatment.
- 2) Everybody should learn emergency rescue procedures, so when someone is injured, they can be saved.

救命 jiù/mìng VO: to save a life (also used for "help!")

媽！救命啊！哥哥打我，快打死人了！你快來！

Mom! Help! Big brother is hitting me. He's killing me! Come here quick!

16 31. 救護車 jiùhùchē N: ambulance (M: 輛)

32. 路上 lùshàng N: on the road; on the way

上個週末我們開車去海邊，在路上停了兩次，一次加油，一次下車看風景。

Last weekend we drove to the seaside, and stopped twice on the way: once to fill up with gas, and once to get out of the car to admire the scenery.

33. 現場 xiànchǎng N: the place where an event happens (happened)

各位電視機前的觀眾，歌星王非現在到了我們現場。你們有什麼問題，歡迎打電話進來。

Attention all viewers at home. The singer Wang Fei has arrived here. If you have any questions for her, please feel free to phone in.

34. 不至於 búzhìyú Adv: not go so far as to

如果你不那麼晚回家，你太太就不至於生氣，不給你開門了。

If you didn't get home so late, your wife wouldn't get angry and not open the door for you.

35. 快樂 kuàilè SV/N: to be happy/happiness

1) 祝你生日快樂。我買了一個小東西給你，希望你喜歡。

2) 你說「快樂」是什麼？我覺得「快樂」就是朋友總是在我身邊。

1) Happy Birthday! I bought you a little something. I hope you like it.

2) What would you say is "happiness?" I think it is always having friends at one's side.

Grammar

1. 自從上次見面以後一直沒有跟你聯絡。

I haven't been in touch with you since we last saw each other.

Explanation: “自從” means “從過去的某個時間點開始” (“Ever since a certain time”), and is be followed by a time word or time phrase. “自從……以後……” indicates that a situation has continued from that time on, but it is not known how much longer the situation will continue and not clear when it will end. “自從……以來……”, on the other hand, indicates from a certain past time till the present.

王：你一直住在台北，沒搬過家嗎？

李：沒有。_____，就沒搬過家。

王：走吧，我們去酒館喝酒。

李：不行。_____，我就沒喝過酒了。

王：你拿一杯冰啤酒給小張。

李：不必了，他上個月生了一場大病。_____，他就不吃冰的東西了。

王：大學畢業以後，我都沒見過老林。聽說他老是換工作。

李：是啊。他_____，換了好幾份工作，都不太滿意。

自從病好了以後
自從生病以後

自從上次出車禍以後
自從大學畢業以後

自從搬到台北以後

2. 你放心。幸虧我繫了安全帶，受傷的情況不算嚴重。

Don't worry. Fortunately I had my seatbelt fastened and the injury is not considered serious.

Explanation: “幸虧” is placed before the subject of the first clause to indicate good fortune and is followed by a completed action. The undesired condition stated in the second phrase was avoided because of that action. Words such as “才” or “要不然” usually appear in the second clause.

王：你不是昨天搭飛機去日本了嗎？怎麼還在這裡？我看到報上飛機出事的新聞，還擔心你搭的是不是那班飛機。

李：我hū (忽)然有事，改變了計畫。_____，要不然我也已經出事了。

王：收音機說高速公路出車禍了，七、八輛車撞在一起。

李：_____，要不然一定會碰到塞車。

王：沒想到東西都漲價了，還漲了那麼多。

李：是啊。_____，才能把要買的東西都買了。

王：我的頭好痛。我的藥吃完了，你有沒有頭痛藥？

李：有啊。_____，要不然這麼晚，到哪裡去買藥？

幸虧我沒搭那班飛機
幸虧我們沒走高速公路

幸虧我這裡還有藥
幸虧我多帶了一些錢

Additional Vocabulary

hū (忽然): suddenly; unexpectedly

出事: to have an accident

3. 受傷的情況不算嚴重。The injury is not considered serious.

Explanation: “不算” is the negative of “算”. The subject precedes “不算” and means “說話者覺得該主題不能說是……” or “該主題不被當做……”. It can be followed by a noun, verb, SA or phrase.

王：你們昨天的考試難不難？

李：_____，只要看了書，都會回 dá(答)。

王：上次你帶來我們家的那個小陳很客氣。你跟他在一個公司上班，你們是好朋友吧？

李：我們是同事，可是還_____。

王：夏天到了，喝啤酒的人多了很多。

李：因為有的人覺得喝啤酒_____。天熱，口渴了就喝冰啤酒。

王：我比你多吃了一塊，所以我贏了。等一下你去付帳。

李：不行，你最後那塊太小，_____，我們自己付自己的。

Additional Vocabulary

回 dá (答): to answer; to reply

4. 快到機場交流道時，有一輛計程車從旁邊開過來。

When (it was) almost at the airport interchange, a taxi came in from the side.

Explanation: “快” means that a certain situation will happen in the near future. It is followed by a verb phrase, NU-M, SV, time word, or festival name, and the sentence usually ends in “了”.

王：你跟小林認識多久了？

李：_____，嗯，對，對，下個月就十年了。

王：幾點了？小陳什麼時候回來？

李：_____。他每天都九點回家，所以他_____。

王：老張的病怎麼樣了？

李：_____，下個星期就可以回家了。

王：我們什麼時候去海邊游泳？明天好嗎？

李：明天我有事。_____，我們等放假再去吧。

快放假了

快十年了

快回來了

快九點了

快好了

5. 醒來才知道我的腿撞斷了。

Only when I woke up did I find out that my leg was broken.

Explanation: “撞斷了” is the completed form of a resultative compound verb. Words learned so far that can be used together with “斷” are: “撞”, “碰”, “打”, “踢”, “敲”, and “弄”.

王：你去哪裡？買東西嗎？

李：我打球的棒子被哥哥拿去打 gǒu(狗)，_____，所以我得再去買一支。

王：欸，那是我的筆，你不能拿我的筆敲桌子。斷了怎麼辦？

李：放心，_____的。不要那麼 jǐn(緊)張。

王：小張幫你修電腦，已經弄了半天了，修好了沒有？

李：他修電腦的時候，不小心把裡面的電線_____，更麻煩了。

王：別 luàn(亂)踢，小心旁邊的小樹。樹斷了就會死。

李：別擔心，樹還好好的，沒被我_____。

Additional Vocabulary

棒子: bat

gǒu (狗): dog

jǐn (緊張): to be nervous

亂: any way, without thinking

電線: electrical wire

6. 那位司機因為流了太多血，來不及急救，在去醫院的路上就死了。

The driver had lost too much blood, so it was too late to save him, and he died on the way to the hospital.

Explanation: “來不及” is the potential form of a resultative compound verb. The “及” at the end of the phrase means “達到” or “趕上”. “來不及” means that time is short, and that there is no way to arrive at one’s goal. It is followed by a verb. Among those words studied so far, those that may be used together with “及” are: “來”, “等”, and “趕”, though note that there is no “等得及”.

王：小張知道不知道我們今天晚上有籃球賽？

李：啊，我忘了告訴他了，還有十分鐘比賽就開始了。_____。

王：我找王老師，王老師在哪裡？

李：在她辦公室。你_____，再過五分鐘她就要回家了。

孩子：飯做好了沒有？我餓死了。

媽媽：還沒，如果_____，就先吃一個包子吧。

王：你在忙什麼？看起來很急。

李：我在寫報告，明天是最後一天，_____，就不能畢業了。

你等不及
如果趕不及

現在去還來得及
來不及找他了

7. 要是車禍現場有人早一點打電話叫救護車，他就不至於死了。

If someone at the scene of the car accident had called for an ambulance earlier, he would not have died.

Explanation: The “早/晚/快/慢一點V(O)” means that at the “開始” (“beginning of”) an action, it should be performed earlier or later, faster or slower. E.g. “快一點吃” (“eat more quickly”) means either “吃東西的速度要加快” (“the eater should eat more quickly”) or “趕快開始吃” (“start eating sooner”); the meaning depends on the context. “V(O)快/慢一點”, however, indicates that the action should be done earlier or later, or more quickly or more slowly. For example, “吃快一點” (“eat more quickly”) means “吃東西的速度要加快” (“increase your eating speed”).

王：你走得太快了，我跟不上。慢一點，好嗎？

李：不行，_____，來不及了。還有十分鐘，表演就要開始了。

王：你回來了。快來，我要告訴你一個大新聞。

李：_____，別急。我先坐下來，你再說。

王：上班時間路上車真多，好討厭。

李：你_____，就不會碰到塞車了。

王：十二點了，你怎麼還不去睡覺？

李：明天不上班，不必太早起來，今天可以_____。

慢點說

快點走吧

晚一點睡

早一點出門

8. 要是車禍現場有人早一點打電話叫救護車，他就不至於死了。

If someone at the scene of the car accident had called for an ambulance earlier, he would not have died.

Explanation: “不至於” indicates the speaker’s inference that a situation will (would) not develop to the degree it does. Words commonly used in front of “不至於” include the prepositions “就”, “才”, “還”, and “總”.

王：我幫哥哥修車的時候，把車燈弄壞了。

李：要是你小心一點，就_____。

王：真麻煩，小林去年跟我借的錢，到現在沒還。我有點擔心他不還了。

李：不會吧！小林雖然不太有錢，可是還_____。

王：你要是不舒服，就在家休息，別去上班了。

李：我是很不舒服，可是還_____。

王：你好懶啊！房間這麼髒，一個月沒整理了吧？

李：誰說的？我雖然是忙得不得了，可是_____，一個月都不整理房間。

不至於弄壞了
不至於借了錢不還

不至於不能上班
不至於這麼懶

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following speech may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

- () 你想這是什麼？
 a. 收音機的新聞 b. 電視台的新聞 c. 萬國醫院的廣告
- () 說話這個人在哪裡？
 a. 車禍現場 b. 救護車裡面 c. 醫院裡面
- () 這些話在說什麼？
 a. 醫院的病人 b. 高速公路上的車禍 c. 電視台的連續劇
- () 下面哪個不是車禍現場？
 a. 六號公路南下一百二十五公里
 b. 高速公路南下一百二十五公里
 c. 公館交流道南邊兩公里
- () 有幾個人受傷了？
 a. 三個 b. 兩個 c. 四個
- () 受傷的人現在在哪裡？
 a. 救護車裡面 b. 高速公路上 c. 萬國醫院

Notes

1. “快到機場交流道時” means “(It was) almost the interchange.” This is how people shorten sentences in writing — it should be “快到機場交流道的時候” in speaking. The “的時候” is shortened into one character “時”. Another example is “已經”, it can be shortened into “已”.
2. “……「砰」的一聲，我就什麼都不知道了” means “I heard ‘Bang!’ then I know nothing.” This “了” indicates a change of status — after the “Bang!” sound, I was unconscious, I didn't know anything.
3. “要是車禍現場有人早一點打電話叫救護車，他就不至於死了。” means “If there was someone called for an ambulance earlier at the spot of the accident, he would not have to die.” The “了” at the end of the sentence indicates a change of status — this person is dead now, but if he had been taken care earlier, the result would have been different.
4. Please note the format. At the end of a Chinese letter, usually there should be “祝” or “敬祝” when the letter is to an elder person. The wish, such as “健康” or “快樂”, letter, usually there is a word “上” or “敬上” when the letter is to an elder person, which means to state with respect. Since this is an e-mail message, this kind of ending is omitted.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

16

美月：

自从上次见面以后一直没有跟你联络，是因为我上个月出车祸受伤，在医院住了三个礼拜，昨天才回家。你放心，幸亏我系了安全带，受伤的情况不算严重。当时我在高速公路上，已经过了泰山收费站，快到机场交流道时，有一辆计程车从旁边开过来，我以为不会撞到，没想到「砰」的一声，我就什么都不知道了。醒来才知道我的腿撞断了。我听急诊室的护士说那位司机因为流了太多血，来不及急救，在去医院的路上就死了。要是车祸现场有人早一点打电话叫救护车，他就不至于死了。现在想想，我的运气实在比他好太多了。

我现在每天在家休息，常常上网路看看。你方便的话，我们可以用网路联络。祝
健康快乐

金水

1997. 12. 3.

Exercises

I. What changes very quickly?

The students are divided into groups of three or four, and asked to think of an object or person they know that changes very quickly. They should describe these to their fellow group members, using constructions such as “……一下子……, 一下子……”. The group members then discuss whether they think such quick changes are good, and why or why not, etc. Each group then picks one of their subjects, and presents it to the class.

II. Repent and regret

The students are divided into groups of two and given five minutes to think of something in the past which they regret. They then discuss with their group members: why they regret it, and what, if their actions had been different, the different outcome would have been. Sentence patterns such as “如果那時我……, ……就不至於……了” should be used. All students write down the conclusions of their fellow group members and hand their papers in to the teacher.

III. Experiences of the Internet

The students are split into groups of three to five, and each discusses their use of the Internet to communicate with friends, answering the questions below:

1. Have you used e-mail?
2. Do you like using e-mail? Why?
3. Have you had any bad experiences with e-mail?
4. Is e-mail language the same as everyday language? If not, in what way?
5. Is the format of e-mail the same as for ordinary letters? If not, in what way?
6. What influence has e-mail had on our lives?

After five minutes, each group assigns one student to present their findings to the whole class in a simple report.

IV. Game: Distraction

The students are split into two groups, and each group chooses one student who they think is the brightest. These two people then stand at the front of the class and are each given a pen and a sheet of paper by the teacher on which to write out the answers to the teacher's questions. Before the teacher asks the questions, the two groups change seats, the member from group A standing behind the representative from group B, and the member from group B standing behind the representative from group A. Opposing members should distract the representatives as they attempt to answer the questions. Classmates line up behind the representative and go to the back of the line after asking a question. Then the representative writes the answer down. The teacher decides on the difficulty of the questions and the time allowed. Once time is up, the

teams see who answered the most questions. Questions may be: 有那些字的發音有「ㄟ」這個音？有哪些字的部首是「糸」？學過的書面語有哪些？房東會說哪些事不可以做？信用卡丟了會有哪些麻煩？在銀行開戶(或辦轉帳)有哪些手續？The teacher should decide on some possible answers, because only one possible answer would be too difficult.

V. Role play

1. Two people: one plays a doctor; the other, a patient. The patient has caught the flu, and goes to see the doctor. Act out their dialogue.
2. Two people: one phones 911, the other answers. The first person has seen an accident on the street. One driver has been injured, and is unable to get out of the car; the other driver has driven away, so his/her identity is unknown. The person who answers the 911 telephone call has to ask the details of the accident and give appropriate instructions.

Reading Comprehension

方文的日記

91年5月11日

今天運氣真不好。昨天晚上小孩睡到差不多十一點，忽然哭起來。一直哭，一直哭，哭得我不知道怎麼辦才好。我覺得他的溫度不算高，三十八度二，不必去醫院看急診，就打電話問媽媽怎麼辦。我按著媽媽說的做了以後，孩子才慢慢靜下來，睡著了。

孩子的爸爸去南部出差了。自從他出門以後，家裡每一件事都有問題，尤其是今天，麻煩最多。頭兩天的事，還不算太麻煩，很快都解決了。我因為昨晚沒睡好，今天頭有一點痛，起床晚了。孩子情況好多了，我不想請假，就趕快把孩子送到媽媽家，再去上班。幸虧媽媽住得不遠，要不然可就更麻煩了。可是我還是晚了，來不及在老闆到以前進辦公室，所以就被老闆罵了。我說我孩子病了，他說：你要是能早一點出門，就不至於這麼晚才到了。唉，我能說什麼呢？老闆交給我好多事，我忙得沒有時間休息。一下子到這裡，一下子去那裡，我的兩條腿都快跑斷了，累死了！快下班的時候媽媽打電話來，說孩子又發燒了。我一下班，馬上就去帶孩子到醫院看醫生。現在孩子總算睡了，我可以休息一下了。希望孩子的爸快一點回來。

Additional Vocabulary

日記: diary

靜下來: to calm down

出 chāi (差): to go on a business trip

總算: finally, after all

hū(忽)然: unexpectedly

睡 zhāo (著): to fall asleep

jiě (解)決: to solve, to resolve

Questions:

1. 方文的小孩昨天怎麼了？
2. 昨天晚上方文帶孩子去看醫生了嗎？為什麼？
3. 昨天晚上最後孩子怎麼樣了？
4. 孩子的爸爸現在在哪裡？
5. 今天早上方文有什麼麻煩？
6. 老闆為什麼罵方文？他說什麼？
7. 今天方文在辦公室的情況怎麼樣？
8. 下班以後方文去哪裡了？
9. 方文現在在做什麼？她有什麼希望？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “傷心” means?
a) heart disease b) broken-hearted c) heart attack
2. What do you think the “出事” means?
a) something comes up b) have a business outside c) have an accident
3. What do you think “七年之癢” means?
a) seven year's itch
b) It has been itching for seven years
c) It starts to itch in the seventh year
4. What do you think “心事” means?
a) secrets or worries in one's mind b) something about one's heart c) restless heart

Authentic Materials

I. 藥店買的藥



1. 這是什麼藥？
2. 一天要吃多少？
3. 這些藥可以吃幾天？
4. 如果頭痛，能不能吃這個藥？

II. 上網路

連線到

HiNet

使用者名稱(U):

密碼(P):

電話號碼(N):

撥號位置(F):



正在連線到HiNet

狀態：正在撥電話

正在連線到HiNet

狀態：正在檢查使用者名稱及密碼



連線到HiNet

連線速度：28800bps
持續時間：00:00:02

1. 你想「使用者」是什麼意思？
2. 你想「密碼」是什麼？
3. 你想「連線」是什麼意思？
4. 你想「取消」是什麼意思？
5. 你想「撥電話」是什麼意思？

第九單元 你怎麼了？

Unit 9 What's the Matter?

Key Study Points

Lesson 17: to see a doctor: to register, to take the temperature, to have a medical examination, to explain the symptoms, to write a prescription / to talk about a situation that has gradually changed as the result of a certain action / to talk about something has never done before / uncertain tone / to persuade someone to refrain from doing something / emphasize something that is contrary to the wish of the other party

Lesson 18: format of envelope / console the sick / to wish someone something / simple hospital notices / to learn written language: 為 to be, 勿 not, 亦 also, 以免 to avoid, 及 and / visiting hour rules

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 17

皮膚科，診所，看病，掛號，掛號證，
健保卡，門診室，燈號，量，體溫，
忽然，發現，起紅疹子，抓，受不了，
睡不著，怪，從來，說不定，拉肚子，
食物，中毒，舌頭，眼睛，嘴巴，
張開，過敏，開藥，打針，消，
不管……都，至少，注意，破

越A越B
睡不著
從來不/沒
說不定
對……過敏
別/不再VP了
不管……都……
至少

Lesson 18

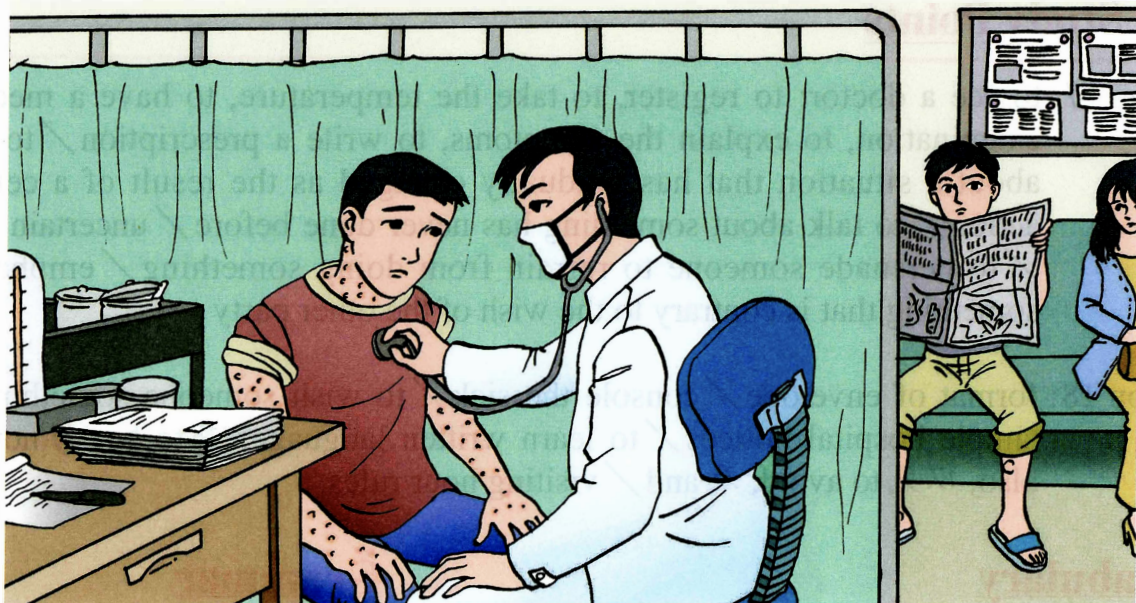
A: 探病，慰問卡，卡片，大安醫院，
棟，病房，張大海，內容，住院，
開刀，動手術，抱歉，道歉，情形，
一切，束，鮮花，心情，安心，養病，
早日康復，芬芬

B: 須知，訪客，拜訪，為，勿，
吵鬧，亦，走道，奔跑，以免，影響，
及，醫護人員

一切
給NP帶來

為(to be)
勿
亦
以免
及

第十七課 好癢啊！ Lesson 17 It's So Scratchy!



(小周在皮膚科診所看病)

小周：小姐，掛號。

護士：來過沒有？有沒有健保卡？

小周：來過，這是我的健保卡跟掛號證。

護士：好，掛號費一百五。你在門診室外面等一下，看燈號，¹
到你的號碼再進去。

(過了十分鐘)

護士：八號，請進來。(小周進門診室)

我給你量一下體溫，看你發燒了沒有？

(量體溫) 嗯，三十七度，沒發燒。

醫生：怎麼了？哪裡不舒服？

小周：昨天晚上差不多八點的時候，忽然發現身上起了很多紅疹子，越抓越癢，癢得受不了，夜裡都睡不著。

醫生：你昨天晚上吃了什麼東西？

小周：我想想……嗯，我沒吃什麼特別的東西啊！怎麼會得這種怪病？噢，對了！²我吃了一種外國水果，以前從來沒吃過，說不定就是這種水果有問題。

醫生：除了皮膚癢以外，拉肚子嗎？

小周：沒有。

醫生：那就不是食物中毒了。³我來看看你的舌頭跟眼睛，嘴巴張開。

(醫生看舌頭、眼睛)

醫生：看起來沒問題，那就應該是過敏了。⁴你對這種水果過敏，以後別再吃了。我給你開三天的藥，吃了藥就不會那麼癢了。⁵

小周：我身上的疹子，打針會不會消得快一點？

醫生：恐怕沒辦法，這種過敏不管吃藥、打針，至少都得三天才會消。

小周：還有什麼應該注意的？

醫生：別抓得太厲害，皮破了，你就得再來看我了。⁶

小周：謝謝，再見。我可不想再來了。⁷

Vocabulary

1. 皮膚科 pífūkē N: dermatology

皮膚 pífū N: skin

中國人、日本人都覺得皮膚白好看。

Chinese and Japanese both think white skin is good looking.

皮 pí N: skin; fur; pelt (M: 塊、張)

皮包 píbāo N: handbag; purse (M: 個)

科 kē N: department; section

內科 nèikē N: internal medicine

外科 wàikē N: external medicine

這家醫院很有名，有很多科。有耳鼻喉科、皮膚科、內科、外科，尤其是外科最有名。

This hospital is very famous and has many sections. There is an ear, nose and throat section, dermatology section, internal medicine section, and external medicine section. The external medicine section is the most famous.

2. 診所 zhěnsuǒ N: clinic (M: 家)

如果你要找張醫師，早上得去萬國醫院，下午就要去他的診所才能找得到。

If you are looking for Dr. Zhang, go to Wanguo Hospital in the morning. In the afternoon you have to go to his clinic to find him.

3. 看病 kàn/bìng VO: to see a doctor

1) 我不太舒服，想去醫院看病，可是不知道要看哪一科。

2) 張醫師幾點開始看病？我已經等了半個小時了。

1) I do not feel well and want to go see a doctor, but I do not know which department I should go to see.

2) What time does Dr. Zhang start seeing patients? I have already waited half an hour.

4. 掛號 guà/hào VO: to register

1) 我已經幫你在陳耳鼻喉科掛好號了。我掛的是三號，你要早一點去。

2) 要是你怕信會丟，可以寄掛號信。雖然慢一點，可是不會丟。

1) I already helped you register at Chen's Ear, Nose and Throat Clinic. I registered you as number three. You should go a little early.

2) If you are worried the letter will be lost, you can send it registered. Although it is a bit slower, it will not get lost.

掛 guà V: to hang; suspend

小明，衣服別丟在床上，快去把衣服掛在衣櫃裡。

Xiaoming, do not throw your clothes on the bed. Go and hang the clothes up in the closet at once.

5. 掛號證 guàhàozhèng N: registration card (M: 張)

證件 zhèngjiàn N: document; certificate (M: 份)

辦簽證的時候，除了身分證還需要什麼證件？

When applying for a visa, besides a Citizenship ID card, what other documents are needed?

6. 健保卡 jiànbǎokǎ N: health insurance card (M: 張)

要是你有健康保險，看病的時候一定要帶健保卡。

If you have health insurance, when you see a doctor you must bring your health insurance card.

健保 jiànbǎo N: health insurance

7. 門診室 ménzhěnrǎn N: outpatient room (M: 間)

門診 ménzhěn N: outpatient service

第一次來醫院看門診的人，掛號的時候都要填表。

Those who come to the outpatient service for the first time must fill out some forms.

8. 燈號 dēnghào N: electric number indicator

你想要知道現在醫生在給誰看病，看到幾號了，看門上的燈號就知道了。

If you want to know who the doctor is seeing now and up to which number, then just look at the number on the indicator above the door.

9. 量 liáng V: to measure

我剛才給孩子量了一下身高，他又高了一點。

I just measured my child's height. He has grown a little again.

10. 體溫 tǐwēn N: body temperature

醫生看病以前，護士都會先給病人量體溫。

Before the doctor sees the patient, the nurse always takes the patient's temperature.

體重 tǐzhòng N: body weight

11. 忽然 hūrán Adv: suddenly; unexpectedly

我在上班的時候，女朋友忽然走進來。我完全沒想到她會來看我，我高興得不得了。

When I was working, my girlfriend unexpectedly came in. I had no idea she would come see me and was extremely happy.

12. 發現 fāxiàn V: to discover

張太太給先生洗衣服的時候，發現一張漂亮小姐的照片，她有一點擔心先生在外面有了女朋友。

When Mrs. Zhang washed her husband's clothes, she discovered a beautiful girl's photograph. She was a little worried that her husband had a girlfriend on the outside.

13. 起紅疹子 qǐ//hóng zhěn·zi VO: to develop or have a rash

起 qǐ V: to begin

疹子 zhěn·zi N: rash (M: 堆、塊)

我手上起了一大堆疹子，很癢，不知道是不是皮膚病。

My hand developed a big red rash. It really itches and I wonder if it is a skin disease.

14. 抓 zhuā V: to scratch; to catch

1) 老師問小李問題的時候，他不會，急得一直抓頭。

2) 小張考試的時候看書，被老師抓到了。那次考試就不算了，要再考一次。

1) When the teacher asked Little Li a question, he could not answer and nervously scratched his head.

2) Little Zhang looked at a book while taking a test and was caught by the teacher. That test does not count and needs to be taken again.

15. 受不了 shòubùliǎo RC: cannot stand

今天三十六度，我熱得受不了。

It is 36 degrees today. It is so hot I cannot stand it.

受 shòu V: to accept; to receive

現在最受歡迎的歌星是王非。

Now Wang Fei is the most popular singer. (Literally, "She receives the most welcome.")

受到 shòudào V: to receive

有些學生整天念書準備考大學，別的方面的發展就受到限制。

Some students study all day to prepare for the university entrance exam, so that other developments are neglected (receive limitations).

16. 睡不著 shuìbùzhāo RC: cannot sleep

我晚上不能喝茶，要不然夜裡睡不著。

I cannot drink tea in the evening, otherwise I cannot sleep at night.

17. 怪 guài SV: to be strange

小林是個怪人，吃的、穿的、用的東西都很怪。

Little Lin is a strange person. What he eats, wears and uses are all strange.

18. 從來 cónglái Adv: from the beginning

1) 我認識老陳好幾年了，可是我從來不知道他籃球打得這麼好。

2) 這是什麼水果？我從來沒看過這樣奇怪的水果。

1) I have known Old Chen for many years, but up till now, I never knew he plays basketball so well.

2) What kind of fruit is this? I have never seen such strange fruit.

19. 說不定 shuōbúdìng MA: probably

王：約好了七點在這裡見面，現在都七點半了，小林還不來。

李：說不定他忘了，我們不要等他了。

Wang: We arranged to meet here at 7:00. It is now 7:30 and Little Lin still hasn't arrived.

Lee: He probably forgot, let's not wait for him.

20. 拉肚子 lā//dù·zi VO: to have diarrhea

我不知道吃了什麼東西，從昨天晚上就開始拉肚子。一個晚上拉了三次，好不舒服。

I don't know what I ate, but since last night I started to have diarrhea. I had it three times last night and it is really uncomfortable.

拉 lā V: to pull

我說我不想出去玩，小王就來拉我，我只好說：「你別拉，我自己會走。」

I said I did not want to go play, but Little Wang kept pulling me, so I had no choice but say, "Don't pull me, I can go by myself."

肚子 dù·zi N: stomach

1) 我太太說我最好別再喝啤酒了，我的肚子已經很大了。

2) 剛才說話的這個人是誰？懂得真多，肚子裡有不少東西。有機會我希望多跟他談談。

1) My wife said I had better not to drink any more beer, for my stomach is already big.

2) Who was that just speaking? He really understands a lot and has taken in much information. If there is a chance, I would like to talk more with him.

21. 食物 shíwù N: food; provisions

我上次去爬山的時候，帶的食物不夠，差一點出問題。

Last time when I went hiking in the mountains, I did not bring enough food and almost had a problem.

動物 dòngwù N: animal (M: 種、個)

22. 中毒 zhòng//dú VO: to be poisoned

不要隨便吃山上的東西，小心中毒。

Do not freely eat things that grow in the mountains. Be careful about getting poisoned.

毒 dú N/V: poison/to poison

1) 聽說這種花有毒，碰到就會起紅疹子。

2) 你給我的樹吃了什麼？怎麼把樹毒死了？

1) I heard this kind of flower is poisonous, touching it will give you a rash.

2) What did you feed my tree? How come it killed the tree?

吸毒 xī//dú VO: to take drugs/narcotics

吸毒對身體非常不好，嚴重的會把人毒死。

Taking drugs is very bad for you. Serious ones can poison you to death.

23. 舌頭 shé·tou N: tongue

大舌頭 dàshé·tou SV-N: oversized tongue—unable to speak clearly

這個孩子大舌頭，說話說不清楚。

This child has a big tongue and does not speak very clearly.

24. 眼睛 yǎnjīng N: eye (M: 隻/雙/對)

我眼睛痛了一天了，下了班我要去王眼科看醫生。

My eyes have hurt all day. After work, I want to go to the Wang's Eye Clinic and see a doctor.

25. 嘴巴 zuǐba N: mouth (M: 張)

小趙嘴巴不乾淨，老是說髒話，所以我不喜歡跟他說話。

Little Zhao has a dirty mouth and always says something dirty, so I do not like to talk to him.

26. 張開 zhāngkāi V: to open; to stretch open

我孩子一張開眼睛就要吃東西，所以我一定要起來做早飯。

As soon as my child opens his eyes he wants something to eat, so I must get up and cook breakfast.

27. 過敏 guòmǐn N: allergy

你皮膚上的疹子看起來像過敏，不是皮膚病，別擔心。

Your skin rash looks like an allergy, not a skin disease. Don't worry.

28. 開藥 kāi//yào VO: to prescribe medication

醫生給你開的藥，你要按時間吃，要不然病不會好。

The medicine the doctor gave you must be taken according to schedule, otherwise you will not get well.

開 kāi V: to write; to open

老闆開了一張單子，要我下午去買單子上的東西。

The boss wrote a list of the things he wants me to buy this afternoon.

藥 yào N: medicine (M: 種、顆、包)

藥方 yàofāng N: prescription (M: 張、份)

藥物 yàowù N: medicine; medication (M: 種)

醫生一定會問病人對哪些藥物過敏。

Doctors will definitely ask patients which medicines they are allergic to.

29. 打針 dǎ/zhēn VO: to have a shot; to give an injection

醫生說，如果我想快一點好，最好打一針。我怕打針，可是沒辦法，只好打。

The doctor said if I want to get well quicker, it's best to have a shot. I am afraid of shots, but there is no other way, I better have one.

30. 消 xiāo V: to disappear; to disperse

1) 我身上的疹子，吃了藥以後很快就消了。

2) 喝杯冰水消消氣。孩子還小，不懂事，你不要跟他生氣。

1) After eating the medicine, my rash quickly disappeared.

2) Drink a glass of ice water to calm your anger. The child is still young and does not know how to behave. You should not get mad at him.

消炎 xiāoyán V: to reduce inflammation

你昨天撞傷的地方發炎了，擦一點藥消炎吧。

The bump you got yesterday is swollen. Apply some anti-inflammation medicine on it.

31. 不管……都 bùguǎn……dōu PT: it does not matter...all

老師說不管我們準備好了沒有，他今天都要考試。

The teacher said it did not matter if we had prepared or not, he still wanted to have a test today.

32. 至少 zhìshǎo Adv: the least; at least

我們公司旁邊的餐廳很貴，一個菜至少五百塊，所以我很少去吃。

The restaurant next to our office is very expensive. One dish costs at least \$500 so I do not eat there often.

33. 注意 zhùyì V: to pay attention

上課的時候要注意聽老師在說什麼，不要做自己的事。

You must pay attention to what the teacher says in class. Do not do your own things.

34. 破

pò

V/RE: to break/to have been broken

- 1) 昨天小王的車撞到別人的車，右邊的燈破了，去修理了。明天才能修好。
 - 2) 孩子在外面打球，不小心丟了一個球進來，把窗子、桌上的杯子都打破了。
- 1) Little Wang's car hit someone else's car yesterday and the right light got broken, so he had it fixed. It won't be fixed until tomorrow.
 - 2) The children were outside playing ball. They accidentally threw the ball through the window. The window and the glasses on the table were all broken.

Grammar

1. 身上起了很多紅疹子，越抓越癢，癢得受不了。

My body had broken out in a very red rash, the more I scratched the itchier it got. It was so itchy I could not stand it.

Explanation: In the “越A越B” pattern, A and B can be SV or VP, indicating the level of B increases according to the increase in level A. The subject of A and B can be the same or different.

王：你兒子的女朋友，你看過幾次了。你喜歡嗎？

李：頭一兩次沒什麼特別，後來 _____。現在我希望他們趕快 jiéhūn(結婚)。

王：他在說什麼我聽不清楚，能不能把收音機開大聲一點？

李：不行，開大聲一點也沒有用，因為 _____。

王：我們老闆真囉唆，一件事說好幾遍都沒有人要聽。

李：對啊，為什麼沒有人去告訴他：_____。

先生：你氣什麼？孩子呢？怎麼沒聽見他們的聲音？

太太：我叫他們出去玩了。他們在家吵死了，_____。

聲音越大越聽不清楚
他越囉唆越沒有人要聽

越叫他們別吵他們越吵
越看越喜歡

2. 身上起了很多紅疹子，越抓越癢，癢得受不了。夜裡都睡不著。

My body had broken out into a very red rash, the more I scratched the itchier it got, it was so itchy I could not stand it. I could not sleep all night.

Explanation: “睡不著” shows the probability of the resultative compound verb. The “著” indicates a) the objective has been achieved or b) the result or influence has been produced. The pattern can be used with words such as a) 找, 打, 買, 吃, 借, 踢, 用, and 問; b) 睡, 傷, 累, 餓. In Taiwan “到” is often used in place of “著”.

王：你明天要去爬山，吃的東西一定要帶夠，要不然會餓肚子。

李：你放心。我準備了三天的食物，一定 _____ 的。

王：小陳今天怎麼沒來上課？

李：他昨天去打球，受傷了，_____ 眼睛，看不見，沒辦法上課。

王：你的過敏藥吃完了嗎？我幫你去買。

李：這種藥剛上市，不是每一家藥房都有。你不一定 _____。

太太：那件紅襯衫在櫃子裡，你自己找。

先生：我找了半天才 _____。你怎麼放在那麼裡面？

3. 我吃了一種水果，以前從來沒吃過。

I ate a kind of fruit I had never eaten before.

Explanation: “從來不/沒” indicates that until now the speaker has not encountered this kind of situation. It is usually used in a negative sentence. When the negative “沒” is used, “過” usually follows the verb or adjective.

王：你已經生了兩個孩子，還這麼瘦。

李：對啊。我一直這麼瘦，_____。

王：你這麼晚回去，不怕你太太罵你啊？

李：我太太對我很好，她 _____。

王：聽說小陳的孩子住在醫院，她得了什麼病？

李：不知道啊！醫生都說 _____，不知道要怎麼治。

王：小陳開車這麼慢，怎麼會出車禍呢？

李：就是嘛，他 _____，昨天是別人撞他的。

從來沒聽說過這種病
從來不開快車

從來不罵我
從來沒胖過

Additional Vocabulary

生: to give birth to

zhì(治): to heal; to cure

4. 說不定就是這種水果有問題。

There might well have been something wrong with this kind of fruit.

Explanation: “說不定” indicates the revelation of a situation. It should be followed by a phrase. If the reference is clear, the subject can be omitted. “說不定” indicates a lesser probability than “也許”, “可能”, and “大概”. “也許”, “可能”, and “大概” indicate a progression of greater probability. Some students confuse “說不定” and “不一定”. “不一定” is the negative of “一定”, indicating the other party's view is not completely right. E.g., A: His cough is so fierce, it must be a cold. B: A cough is not necessarily a cold, maybe it is just a scratchy throat.

王：最後一班公車十點開出。現在十點剛過。這裡是第三站，應該還有車。

李：現在這麼晚了，路上車少，車開得快，_____。

王：老張說要去歐洲旅行，出發了沒有？

李：不太清楚，前幾天聽他說太貴了，_____。

王：小林好幾天沒來上課了，不知道他怎麼了？

李：最近感冒的人很多，他_____。

王：趙老師今天請假，小陳為什麼還來學校？

李：來學校不一定是來上課啊！_____。

說不定已經開走了
說不定也感冒了

說不定他是來找同學的
說不定不去了

5. 你對這種水果過敏，以後別再吃了。

You are allergic to this kind of fruit. Do not eat it again.

Explanation: The “對” in the “對……過敏” pattern shows that what follows will cause an allergy. “對……不會過敏” shows that what follows will not cause an allergy.

王：你喜歡吃什麼？我們點個糖醋魚，一個炒大蝦，怎麼樣？

李：對不起，我_____。我們點別的，好不好？

王：你怎麼一直打噴嚏？你鼻子過敏嗎？

李：房間裡有個香味，是你的香水吧？我想我_____。

王：這些山茶花很漂亮。我們買一些回去吧。

李：唉呀，不行。我先生_____。我不能買回去。

醫生：你眼睛癢，我給你開點眼藥水。

病人：不行，我_____。不要眼藥水，給我吃的藥。

Additional Vocabulary

山茶花: camellia 眼藥水: eye drops

6. 你對這種水果過敏，以後別再吃了。

You are allergic to this kind of fruit, do not eat it again.

Explanation: “別/不再VP了” indicates that the action or situation should stop, not continue or be repeated. “別再VP了” is the speaker telling the listener the situation is not good or wrong, and requesting him not to do it again. “不再VP了” is not a request to refrain from action, but rather a statement describing an action no longer performed. The “了” indicates a change in the situation.

王：我最喜歡喝啤酒了。再給我一罐。

李：你_____，要不然你的肚子會越來越大。

王：張太太整天都在家，她沒有上班嗎？

李：沒有，她生了第二個孩子以後就_____。

王：今天小張請我出去吃飯，他只點了兩個菜，真小氣。

李：既然你不喜歡他，那以後就_____。

王：你以前很喜歡看趙老師寫的書，現在你好像都不看了。

李：兩個月以前我有一個機會跟他談過一次話，以後就_____，因為他有很多想法我不能接受。

Additional Vocabulary

想法: way of thinking

7. 這種過敏不管吃藥、打針，至少都得三天才會消。

With this kind of allergy no matter you take medicine or a shot, it will take at least three days before it goes away.

Explanation: The “不管” in the “不管……都……” sentence pattern can be followed by an interrogative, choice (A-not-A), or two opposites (i.e. 大人 grown-up, 小孩 child) to indicate a different situation. Even though this sentence pattern has different situations, what follows “都” will not be affected by the different situations. The subject of the second short sentence is placed in front of “都”.

王：明天是你的生日，你希望我買什麼東西給你啊？

李：什麼都好，_____。

王：我孩子的老師要我去跟他談談，可是我實在沒空。

李：孩子有問題，_____。

小孩：你當醫生最好了，別人都得聽你的話吃藥。

醫生：醫生也會生病啊。_____。

王：我們學校很遠，我可以開車去接你過來，你不必走路來。

李：我想運動運動，_____。

不管你有沒有空，都應該去跟孩子的老師談談
 不管醫生病人，病了都得吃藥 不管買什麼，我都喜歡
 不管遠近，我都要走路去

Additional Vocabulary

當: to be

8. 這種過敏不管吃藥、打針，至少都得三天才會消。

With this kind of allergy no matter you take medicine or a shot, it will take at least three days before it goes away.

Explanation: “至少” indicates to the lowest degree and can be followed by a verb, quantity, or verb plus quantity.

王：王非是誰啊？

李：他是現在最紅的歌星啊，你就算沒聽過他的名字，_____。

客人：我要買多少錢的東西才能打折？

店員：_____。

王：小陳車禍受傷，要在醫院住多久？

李：他的腿撞斷了，_____。

王：從公司到你家，開車要多少時間？

李：上下班時間路上車多，容易塞車，_____。

至少五千塊才打折
至少也聽過他的歌吧

至少要開三十分鐘
至少得住一個星期才能回家

17

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

- () 這兩個人在哪裡說話？
a. 老太太家裡 b. 電話裡 c. 醫院
- () 這兩個人在做什麼？
a. 老太太請這位先生給他開藥 b. 談吃什麼藥比較好
c. 這位先生要賣藥給老太太
- () 你覺得老太太有什麼病？
a. 她的頭、肚子、wèi(胃)都有問題，還有睡覺的問題
b. 沒有人跟她說話，所以心情不好，身體也不舒服
c. 醫生也不知道老太太有什麼病
- () 老太太要這位先生做什麼？
a. 要他介紹一個新醫生 b. 給她維他命跟wèi(胃)藥
c. 上次的藥不好，要換新的
- () 這位先生覺得老太太應該做什麼？
a. 多看電視 b. 常常出門走走 c. 多休息
- () 老太太同意這位先生的話嗎？她想做什麼？
a. 同意，按著醫生說的話去做 b. 她還沒決定要不要同意
c. 不同意，她想換一個更好的醫生

Additional Vocabulary

wèi(胃): stomach

Notes

1. “看燈號” means “Watch the number indicated by the light.” In Taiwan, most hospitals and big clinics put lights on the door of each examining room to tell the patients that the person whose number is showing can come into see the doctor.
2. “噢，對了。” means “Oh, yeah. (It comes to my mind that...)” This expression is used when someone suddenly remembers something. Therefore it can be used to bring up a new subject.
3. “那就不是食物中毒了” means “In that case, it is not food poisoning.” This “了” indicates a change of status—what we suspected was not right, it is something else.
4. “那就應該是過敏了” means “Then it should be an allergy.” This “了” also indicates a change of status—my conclusion is that it’s an allergy, not something else I suspected.
5. “吃了藥就不會那麼癢了” means “It won’t be so itchy after you have taken the medicine.” The first “了” indicates the completion of the action of taking the pills. The last “了” indicates a change of status—you will not feel itchy then.
6. “皮破了，你就得再來看我了” means “(If) the skin is scratched, you will have to come to see me again.” Both the first “了” and the last “了” indicate a change of status. The first one indicates that the skin has become injured. The last one indicates that if that happens, the situation will be different—you have to come again.
7. “我可不想再來了” means “I certainly do not want to come again.” This “了” indicates a change—I want to stop coming.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

(小周在皮肤科诊所看病)

小周：小姐，挂号。

护士：来过没有？有没有健保卡？

小周：来过。这是我的健保卡跟挂号证。

护士：好，挂号费一百五。你在门诊室外面等一下，看灯号，到你的号码再进去。

(过了十分钟)

护士：八号，请进来。(小周进门诊室)

我给你量一下体温，看你发烧了没有？

(量体温) 嗯，三十七度，没发烧。

医生：怎么了？哪里不舒服？

小周：昨天晚上差不多八点的时候，忽然发现身上起了很多红疹子，越抓越痒，痒得受不了。夜里都睡不着。

医生：你昨天晚上吃了什么东西？

小周：我想想……嗯，我没吃什么特别的东西啊！怎么会得这种怪病？噢，对了！我吃了一种外国水果，以前从来没吃过。说不定就是这种水果有问题。

医生：除了皮肤痒以外，拉肚子吗？

小周：没有。

医生：那就不是食物中毒了。我来看看你的舌头跟眼睛，嘴巴张开。

(医生看舌头、眼睛)

医生：看起来没问题。那就应该是过敏了。你对这种水果过

敏，以后别再吃了。我给你开三天的药。吃了药就不会那么痒了。

小周：我身上的疹子，打针会不会消得快一点？

医生：恐怕没办法。这种过敏不管吃药、打针，至少都得三天才会消。

小周：还有什么应该注意的？

医生：别抓得太厉害。皮破了，你就得再来看我了。

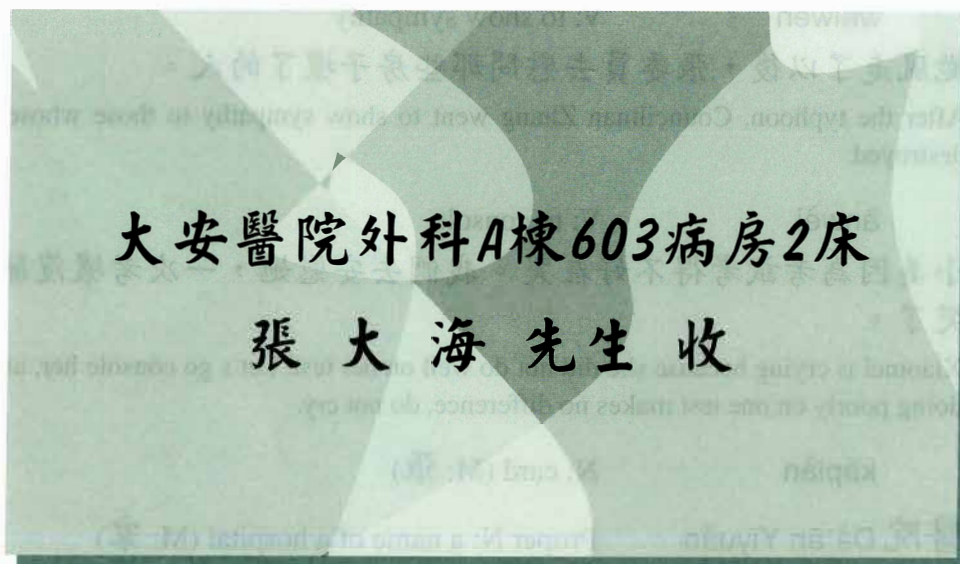
小周：谢谢，再见。我可不想再来了。

第十八課 探病

Lesson 18 To the Hospital to Visit the Sick

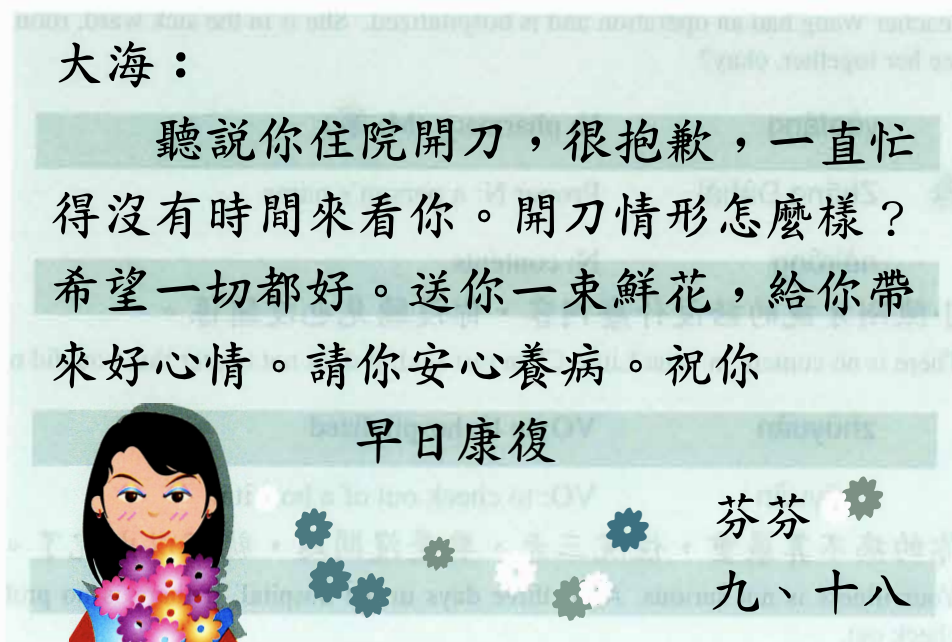
A. 慰問卡

信封：



18

卡片內容：



Vocabulary

1. 探病 tàn//bìng VO: to visit sick people

王老師生病了，住在醫院裡。有沒有同學要跟我一起去探病？

Teacher Wang is sick in the hospital. Do any classmates want to go visit her with me?

2. 慰問卡 wèiwèn kǎ N: sympathy card (M: 張)

慰問 wèiwèn V: to show sympathy

颱風走了以後，張委員去慰問那些房子壞了的人。

After the typhoon, Councilman Zhang went to show sympathy to those whose houses were destroyed.

- 安慰 ānwèi V: to console

小美因為考試考得不好在哭。我們去安慰她，一次考壞沒關係，不要哭了。

Xiaomei is crying because she did not do well on her test. Let's go console her, and tell her that doing poorly on one test makes no difference, do not cry.

3. 卡片 kǎpiàn N: card (M: 張)

4. 大安醫院 Dà'ān Yīyuàn Proper N: a name of a hospital (M: 家)

5. 棟 dòng M: for houses

6. 病房 bìngfáng N: sick room; patient's room (M: 間)

王老師開刀住院，住在 606 號病房。我們一起去看他，好不好？

Teacher Wang had an operation and is hospitalized. She is in the sick ward, room 606. Let's go see her together, okay?

- 藥房 yàofáng N: pharmacy (M: 家)

7. 張大海 Zhāng Dàhǎi Proper N: a person's name

8. 內容 nèiróng N: contents

小陳剛才說的話沒什麼內容，你沒聽見也沒關係。

There is no content in what Little Chen just said. It does not matter that you did not hear.

9. 住院 zhùyuan VO: to be hospitalized

出院 chūyuàn VO: to check out of a hospital

你的病不算嚴重，住院三天，要是沒問題，就可以出院了。

Your illness is not serious. After three days in the hospital, if there is no problem, you can check out.

10. 開刀 kāi//dāo VO: to have an operation

醫生說林小姐肚子裡有一個奇怪的東西，最好開刀拿出來，要不然以後恐怕有問題。

The doctor said that there is something strange in Ms. Lin's stomach and she'd better have an operation to remove it, otherwise there might be a problem in the future.

* 11. 動手術² dòng//shǒushù VO: to perform an operation

手術 shǒushù N: operation (M: 次、xiàng 項 item)

高小姐的傷很重，手術很複雜，所以她動手術的時候，家裡的人都很擔心。

Ms. Gao's injury is very serious and the operation is very complicated, so during the operation her family was very worried.

12. 抱歉 bàoqiàn SV: to be sorry

很抱歉，我來晚了。

I am sorry. I am late.

抱 bào V: to embrace

孩子一直哭，媽媽把他抱起來，他還是哭。

The child kept crying and the mother hugged him, but he still cried.

13. 道歉 dào//qiàn VO: to apologize

你跟女朋友道個歉，她就不會再生你的氣了。

Apologize to your girlfriend, then she will not be mad at you anymore.

14. 情形 qíngxíng N: situation; circumstance (M: 個、種)

小李搬家以後，情形怎麼樣？有沒有什麼問題？

After Little Li moved, how was the situation? Was there any problem?

15. 一切³ yíqiè N: total; all together

王：你念了五年大學，怎麼還沒有畢業？

李：這一切都是我的錯。我平常很少念書，考試都考得不好。

Wang: You studied for five years at the university, how come you haven't graduated yet?

Li: It is all my fault. I do not often study and do not do well on my tests.

16. 束 shù M: bunch

17. 鮮花 xiānhuā N: fresh flowers (M: duǒ 朵 flower、束、把)

新鮮 xīnxiān SV: to be fresh

魚不新鮮了，別吃了。吃了會拉肚子。

The fish is not fresh, do not eat it. If you eat it, you will have diarrhea.

海鮮 hǎixiān N: seafood (M: 種)

18. 心情 xīnqíng N: mood (M: 種)

我一來就被老闆罵，所以今天一整天心情都不好。

As soon as I arrived I was scolded by the boss, so I was in a bad mood all day.

事情 shìqíng N: event; matter; things to do (M: 件、種)

今天辦公室裡事情很多，我只好晚一點回家。

Today there were many things to do at the office so I had no choice but to come home late.

19. 安心 ānxīn V: to have peace of mind

孩子的爸，孩子在外面開快車，你怎麼能安心在家看電視？

Hey, dad, your child is out driving fast. How can you peacefully stay at home and watch television?

20. 養病 yǎng/bìng VO: to recuperate

你的病雖然好得差不多了，可是你的身體還很差。最好在家養病，等身體完全好了，再去上班。

Although your illness is almost over, your body is still weak. You had better recuperate at home and not go back to work until you are fully recovered.

養 yǎng V: to raise; to rear

1) 老王喜歡養花。不管什麼花，他都很有耐心，把花養得很好。

2) 王太太自從她先生死了以後，就一個人養兩個孩子。真不容易。

1) Old Wang likes to raise flowers. No matter what flower it is, he is very patient and raises the flower well.

2) After her husband's death, Mrs. Wang raised her two children by herself, which was really not easy.

休養 xiūyǎng V: to rest; to recuperate

你才剛出院，怎麼不在家好好休養，這麼快就來上班呢？

You just checked out of the hospital, why don't you take a rest at home, instead of coming to work so soon?

21. 早日康復 zǎorì kāngfù IE: to get well soon

去探病的時候，最常說的一句話就是：「希望你早日康復。」

When going to see a sick person, it is best to say, "Hope you get well soon."

22. 芬芬 Fēnfēn Proper N: a girl's name

Grammar

A-1 希望一切都好。I hope everything is okay.

Explanation: “一切” can be used to indicate any situation or anything concerned with the subject. It can be preceded by a modifier. E.g. “這裡一切都好，請你放心。Everything is fine here, don't worry” or “這一切，都是她的錯。Everything is all her fault.” “所有的” and “一切” are similar. However, “一切” indicates a total including all things concerned. These things do not need to be divided. E.g. “一切手續都辦好了。The entire procedure has been completed,” but “所有的” emphasizes each item. E.g. “所有的同學都回家了。All the students have all gone home.”

媽媽：你為什麼要打電話罵王美月，還要打她弟弟？這是誰的主意？是不是哥哥叫你做的？

孩子：是啊，_____，跟我沒有關係。

王：你真的要跟小陳jiéhūn(結婚)嗎？他以前結過婚，你知道嗎？他還有兩個孩子呢！

李：我知道啊。_____我都了解，不必你來跟我說。

王：唉，時間過得真快，被老闆罵了以後，離開公司已經三個月了。想想，心裡還是很不舒服。

李：不要再想了，_____。

王：你家裡那麼多事都是誰在管？

李：平常_____。爸爸不在家的時候，媽媽管。

這一切都是哥哥的主意
家裡的一切都是爸爸管

一切都過去了
他的一切

Additional Vocabulary

jiéhūn(結婚): to get married

離開: to depart

A-2 送你一束鮮花，給你帶來好心情。

I will give you a bouquet of fresh flowers to put you in a good mood.

Explanation: In the “給NP₁帶來NP₂”, NP₁ is the receiver and NP₂ is the desired result. The subject in front of “給” is intended to produce “NP₁.”

王：你不是說一切都沒有希望了嗎？怎麼今天心情這麼好？

李：我收到一封媽媽寄來的信。這封信_____。

王：你有什麼需要我幫忙的，就說出來。我來想辦法。

李：太麻煩你了。我真的不想_____。

王：很多人每天都吃維他命，為什麼你從來不吃？

李：想要健康，我覺得運動是最好的辦法。維他命不一定能_____。

王：我不喜歡颱風。颱風總是帶來很多麻煩。

李：那也不一定，天氣太乾的時候，颱風來就很好啊。因為颱風可以_____。

給我帶來希望
給我們帶來很多的雨水

給人帶來健康
給你帶來麻煩

Additional Vocabulary

難過: to be sad

乾: to be dry

B. 探病須知

各位訪客：

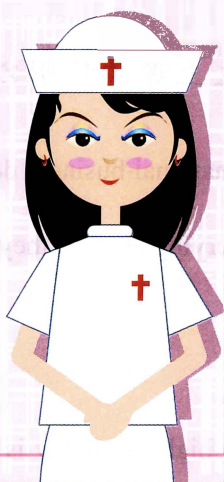
一、本院探病時間為

上午10:00 ～ 11:30

下午 2:00 ～ 9:00

二、訪客探病時，請勿大聲吵鬧，

亦不可在走道上奔跑，以免影響病人休息及醫護人員工作。



本院敬啓

Vocabulary

1. 須知 xūzhī N: guidelines; rules (M: xiàng 項 item)

醫院櫃台上面貼了一張掛號須知，你按著上面的話做就不會錯了。

The guidelines for regulation are posted on the hospital counter. If you follow the rules you will not do anything wrong.

- 必須 bìxū AV: should; must

我的房東說我必須十一點以前回家，要不然就沒人給我開門。

My landlord said I must return home by 11:00 p.m., otherwise nobody will open the door for me.

2. 訪客 fǎngkè N: visitor (M: 位)

我們大樓的管理員很小心，每一個訪客他都要問清楚。

The custodian for our building is very careful. He clearly questions every guest.

- *3. 拜訪 bàifǎng V: to visit

您好，我們住樓下，是剛搬來的，所以特別來拜訪一下。

Hello, we live downstairs and have just moved in, so we specially came by to say hello.

- 訪問 fǎngwèn V/N: to interview; to visit/interview; visit (M: xiàng 項 item)

1) 王老師接受電視台的訪問，談跨國企業的發展。

2) 張老師帶了一個團去訪問交通大學。除了參觀學生上課的情形以外，還要跟他們的球隊比賽。

1) Teacher Wang was interviewed on television. He talked about international business developments.

2) Teacher Zhang led a group to visit Jiaotong University. Besides observing classes, they also competed with their ball team.

4. 為 wéi V: to be

今天在高速公路出車禍之計程車車號為：ME-5843。

The license number of the taxi involved in the traffic accident on the highway today is ME-5843.

5. 勿 wù AV: do not

請勿在本餐廳門口停車。

Please do not park in front of this restaurant.

6. 吵鬧 chǎonào V: to make noise

醫院裡有很多病人需要休息，誰都不可以在這裡吵鬧。

There are many patients in the hospital who need rest, so no one is allowed to make any noise here.

7. 亦 yì Adv: also

地址如有變更可電話通知本公司，亦可傳真通知。

If the address changes, you can call our office, you can also send a fax.

8. 走道 zǒudào N: aisle; hallway (M: 條)

坐飛機的時候，我喜歡坐在走道旁邊，進出比較方便。

On an airplane, I like to sit in an aisle seat. It is easier to get in and out.

9. 奔跑 bēnpǎo V: to run

坐飛機的時候，不可以在走道上奔跑。

When on an airplane, you cannot run up and down the aisle.

10. 以免 yǐmiǎn Conj: so as to avoid; lest

身體有病一定要看醫生，以免越來越嚴重。

When you are sick you must see a doctor, so as to avoid (your illness) getting more serious.

11. 影響 yǐngxiǎng V/N: to influence; influence

1) 高經理的意見常常影響老闆的決定，所以我們應該先問問高經理怎麼做比較好。

2) 小孩子最容易受到爸媽的影響，所以爸爸媽媽一定要注意自己說的話、做的事。

1) Manager Gao's opinion often influences the boss's decisions, so we should first ask Manager Gao what is best to do.

2) Children are very easily influenced by their parents, so parents should definitely pay attention to what they say and do.

12. 及 jǐ Conj: and

因為颱風的關係，菜價及交通都受到影響。

Because of the typhoon, vegetable prices and traffic have been affected.

13. 醫護人員 yīhù rényuán N: hospital technician (M: 位)

工作人員 gōngzuò rényuán N: employee; worker (M: 位)

Grammar

B-1 本院探病時間為上午 10:00~11:30，下午 2:00~9:30。

This hospital's visiting hours are 10:00-11:30 a.m. and 2:00-9:30 p.m.

Explanation: “為” means “是” and is only used in writing. The sentence pattern is “NP₁ 為 NP₂.”

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 張海生為台灣大學最高的學生。

→

2. 本公司之業務經理為陳火樹先生。

→

3. 萬美公司為世界最大之跨國企業。

→

4. 外語能力為貿易公司祕書不可 quē(缺)少之能力。

→

Additional Vocabulary

quē(缺)少: to lack

Please change the following sentences to the “為” written style.

1. 今年已經繳的保險費是四萬五千塊。

→

2. 這棟大樓的管理員是李有年先生。

→

B-2 訪客探病時，請勿大聲吵鬧。

During visiting hours, please do not make any loud noises.

Explanation: “勿” is used in the written style and means “別” and “不要”.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 請勿高聲談話。

→

2. 敬請合作，勿在車內吸煙。

→

3. 小心危險，請勿站在車門口。

→

4. 請勿將報紙拿走。

→

Please change the following sentences to the “勿” written style.

1. 為了安全，請不要在這裡烤肉。

→

2. 請別把髒東西丟在走道上。

→

Additional Vocabulary

為了: for the sake of

18

B-3 訪客探病時，請勿大聲吵鬧，亦不可在走道上奔跑。

During visiting hours, please do not make any loud noises nor run in the hallways.

Explanation: “亦” means “也” when used in the written style.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 在圖書館內看書時，不可大聲談話，亦不可吃喝東西。

→

2. 陳火樹先生為本公司之經理，亦曾經為台北大學之教授。

→

3. 除了重傷病人，輕傷病人亦已送往大安醫院急救。

→

4. 這次應徵工作，不但考試很難，面談亦不容易。

→

Additional Vocabulary

圖書館: library

jiàoshòu(教授): professor

Please change the following sentences to the “亦” written style.

1. 電視上的籃球比賽是我最愛看的節目，也是本地最受歡迎的節目。

→

2. 通知：已經報名的同學請到602室繳費，還沒有報名的同學也請到602室報名。

→

B-4 請勿大聲吵鬧，亦不可在走道上奔跑，以免影響病人休息及醫護人員工作。

Please do not make any loud noises, also do not run in the halls so as to avoid influencing the resting patients and hospital technicians.

Explanation: “以免” in a sentence indicates that performing the action which precedes “以免” will avoid the situation described following the “以免”. “以免” is usually placed in the beginning of the second short sentence. The subject can often be omitted. It is often used in the written style. The oral style uses “免得” or “shěng-de 省得”.

王：我睡不著，我想去租個錄影帶回來看。你知道哪一家店現在還沒打烊？

李：現在很晚了，你最好不要出去，_____。

王：家裡好無聊。我們去看場電影，怎麼樣？

李：明天要考試，你應該在家看書，_____。

弟弟：肚子好餓，我們去弄點東西吃吧。

姊姊：媽媽已經睡著了。我們小聲一點，_____。

王：哎呀，這裡是哪裡啊？我們應該左轉，還是右轉？

李：如果不清楚方xiàng(向)，最好問一下，_____，làng(浪)費時間。

以免吵醒媽媽
以免走錯路

以免碰到壞人
以免考壞了被罵

Additional Vocabulary

方xiàng(向): direction

làng(浪)費: to waste

B-5 請勿大聲吵鬧，亦不可在走道上奔跑，以免影響病人休息及醫護人員工作。

Please do not make any loud noises, also do not run in the halls so as to avoid influencing the resting patients and hospital technicians.

Explanation: “及” means “跟” or “和”. It connects a sequence of nouns or phrases. When connecting more than three, “及” is placed before the last one. It is used in the written style.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 救護車到車禍現場以後，將受傷之chéng(乘)客及司機送往萬國醫院急救。

→

2. 本公司露營活動之時間及地點已貼在辦公室外面。

→

3. 這位病人的症狀有發燒、頭痛及喉嚨發炎。

→

4. 11:25 開往花蓮及 11:30 開往台中的火車都已到站，請還未上車的旅客趕快上車。

→

Additional Vocabulary

chéng(乘)客: passenger

18

Please change the following sentences to the “及” written style.

1. 美國跟日本的醫生都發現，這種新藥對皮膚過敏非常好。

→

2. 貴校購買的錄音帶跟錄影帶，一共五千四百元。

→

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following speech may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

() 這位小姐在哪裡說話？

a. 飛機上

b. 火車上

c. 旅行社

() 這位小姐在說什麼？

a. 飛機上的問題

b. 旅行應該注意的事

c. 下飛機以前要注意的事

() 下面哪一個不是這位小姐說的？

a. 飛機停好以前，不可以站起來

b. 燈號亮了就不可以吸煙了

c. 燈號亮了就可以打開安全帶

() 為什麼要關上所有的電子用品？因為

a. 關上了就不會用太多電

b. 會影響 jiàngluò(降落)，發生危險

c. 應該收好準備下飛機了

() 這位小姐最後說什麼？

a. 歡迎再來搭乘本公司班機

b. 請注意安全

c. 請不要吸煙

Additional Vocabulary

jiànguò(降落): to land

18

Notes

1. “A 棟 603 病房 2 床” means “Building A, Room 603, Bed 2.” Therefore, this patient is sharing the ward with other patients. The number of his bed is 2.
2. “動手術” and “開刀” mean the same, but the former is more formal and scholarly.
3. “一切” means “all, everything.” It is collective, and it includes everything about the subject. The things “一切” refers to should not be classified, therefore it is incorrect to say 一切人，一切的水，一切的業務, etc. “所有的” also means “all.” It can be used to modify all kinds of nouns.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

18

A.

信封：

大安医院外科 A 栋 603 病房 2 床
张大海先生 收

卡片内容：

大海：

听说你住院开刀，很抱歉，一直忙得没有时间来看你。开刀情形怎么样？希望一切都好。送你一束鲜花，给你带来好心情。请你安心养病。祝你
早日康复

芬芬

九、十八

B.

各位访客：

一、本院探病时间为上午10:00 ~ 11:30，
下午2:00 ~ 9:00。

二、访客探病时，请勿大声吵闹，亦不可
在走道上奔跑，以免影响病人休息及
医护人员工作。

本院敬启

Exercises

I. What are you allergic to?

Students are divided into groups of two, and talk about their allergies. If one has no experience with allergies, then one can talk about someone else's allergies. The chat should include:

1. 你對什麼過敏？
2. 有什麼症狀？
3. 你過敏的時候怎麼辦？
4. 不想再過敏的話，應該小心、注意哪些事？
5. 要怎麼告訴生活裡的、身邊的人？
6. 你希望別人怎麼看你的過敏？
7. 怎麼幫助有過敏症狀的人？

最後，把談話重點寫下，交給老師。

II. Rules we have to follow

Students are divided into groups of four or five, and pretend they live together (or have class together), discuss what can be done, how something should be done, what cannot be done and why. Then write these things on a poster and hang it on the wall for every one to see and compare.

III. I (have) never....

Choose a student to stand in front of the room and have the classmates ask him/her questions. It does not matter what question, the student must answer “我從來沒……” or “我從來不……”. If there are any special or very funny answers, classmates may ask “為什麼?”. After answering five questions, change to another student.

例 1. : A: 你吃早飯了沒有？

B: 我從來沒吃過早飯。(我從來不吃早飯。)

A: 為什麼？

B: 因為我都起得很晚。

例 2. : A: 你吃早飯了沒有？

B: 我從來不吃早飯。

C: 你喜歡看電視嗎？

B: 我從來沒看過電視。

D: 為什麼？

B: 因為……

IV. Guess who I am.

The teacher first prepares some cards and writes a name the students know on each card. Then gives a student a card. (The teacher could let the students think of a name themselves.) The stu-

dent then describes the person named on the card (or which he/she thought of), e.g. 「我的頭髮長長的；眼睛大大的，藍色的；嘴巴也大大的。我很高，很瘦……，你想我是誰？」(頭髮, hair on one's head). If the classmates cannot guess the person's name, say a little more about the person until the name is guessed. Then switch to another student. Some unfamiliar words may include: tūtóu(禿頭, to be bald)、xiōng 部(胸部, chest, breast)、pìǔ (屁股, rear end, back side)、身 cāi (身材, figure). Ask the teacher for help with other terms.

V. Role Play

1. Two people, one is a doctor, one plays a patient with a stomach ache. Please perform what they would say.
2. Two people, one is in the hospital after an operation, the other is a friend visiting. Please perform what they would say.

Reading Comprehension

給媽媽的信

媽：

差不多一個月沒給您寫信了。我一切都好，您放心。來這裡快三個月了，已經慢慢適應了這裡的生活。我現在在皮膚科工作，大概的情形還不錯。因為我們醫院在本地很有名，所以來看病的人很多，每天至少有八百人，所以我每天都很忙。下班以後，一躺下就睡著了。嗯，說不定哥哥應該來做我的工作，他就不會有睡不著的問題了。

昨天來了一個病人，我從來沒看過這麼奇怪的人。他全身都是一大塊一大塊的紅疹子，他說很癢。我給他量了體溫，沒有發燒，可是他說他頭痛得很厲害。他說話聲音很大，而且越說越大聲，我請他小聲一點，以免吵到別人，他好像聽不懂。醫生說他應該是對一種食物過敏，以後別再吃那種東西就可以了。他在等藥的時候，一直抽煙，我拿「請勿吸煙」的牌子給他看，別的病人也叫他別抽了，可是不管誰說，他都不理。最後，我只好請警衛來把他的煙拿走。這樣的病人給醫生、護士及病人都帶來很大的麻煩。希望以後不要再碰到這種人。好了，我得去上班了，以後有空再談。敬祝

健康

女兒

小美敬上
五月十五日

Additional Vocabulary

本地: this place

tǎng(躺)下 to lie down

牌子: sign

理: to mind; to care

jǐngwèi(警衛): guard

女兒: daughter

Questions:

1. 為什麼小美要給媽媽寫信？
2. 小美現在在哪裡工作？她可能做什麼工作？
3. 小美工作的地方情形怎麼樣？
4. 小美說她哥哥應該做什麼？為什麼？
5. 小美說她看見一個奇怪的病人，那個病人有什麼奇怪？
6. 小美為什麼要那個病人小聲一點？
7. 醫生說那個病人有什麼問題？
8. 小美為什麼拿一個牌子給那個病人看？
9. 那個病人這麼麻煩，小美最後怎麼辦？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think the “大肚子” in “王太太現在大肚子，所以沒上班。” means?
a) a large stomach b) to be pregnant c) a big belly
2. What do you think the “花心” means?
a) to be fond of women b) heart of a flower
c) to be happy as a blossomed flower
3. What do you think “怪物” means?
a) a monster b) a strange thing c) a rare food

Authentic Materials

I. 醫院領的藥

大安醫院					
407218	張大海	9/17	87	4/04	
健保					
[外用藥]					
外用藥，請勿吞食			共	1.00	TUB
METHACIN	GEL	10GM/TUB			
			醫師：李國英	09:30	

大安醫院					
407218	張大海	9/17	87	4/04	
健保					
[內服藥]					
每天4次飯後1粒，睡前1粒			7天份		
PANADOL	500 MG (SCANOL)		28.00	TAB	
			醫師：李國英	09:30	

1. 這是誰的藥？
2. 這個人領了幾種藥？
3. 這個人領了幾天的藥？
4. 這個人一天要吃幾次藥？什麼時候吃？
5. 你想「外用藥」、「內服藥」是什麼意思？

II. 打電話掛號（請聽下面的錄音兩次以後，回答後面的問題）

1. 打電話掛號的這個人要哪一天看病？上午還是下午？
2. 這個人要給哪一個醫生看？
3. 這個人掛的是幾號？
4. 你想「病歷號碼」是什麼？
5. 你想「正確」是什麼意思？

第十單元 請客

Unit 10 Hosting a Party

Key Study Points

Lesson 19: terms of address / polite phrases / giving gifts / birthday party procedure / modal particle: 'mm' / indirect complaint / continuous state of an action / using let or allow / expressing hope / the usage of addition to

Lesson 20: preparation for going to a wedding: wedding invitations / red envelopes / dressing up / expressing wishes description of a person / judgements / the tone of voice indicating that one has no choice / the tone indicating that one has been longing something for a long time / using a modal adverb indicates something is contrary to one's expectation / realization tone / to mistake something for someone else

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 19

慶生會，婆婆，媳婦，大家，飯廳，
用飯，千萬，唔，家常菜，合，口味，
色香味俱全，伯母，伯父，敬，壽星，
蛋糕，讓，替，道理，破費，禮物，
點，根，蠟燭，反正，吹，照相，許願，
結婚，生，寶寶，好，另外，打擾

誰知道……
V 著
讓
替
反正
好(so as to)
另外

Lesson 20

婚禮，日記，日子，喜帖，煩惱，
打扮，送大禮，紅包袋，祝賀，
百年好合，選，淺藍色，深，洋裝，
配，別針，高跟鞋，照鏡子，燙，
髮型，滿，口紅，不得不，浪費，
總算，遲到，喜酒，認得，卻，戴，
首飾，難怪，成，新郎，新娘，恭喜

從……起……
SV-SV(雙音節形容詞重疊)
滿-SV的
不得不
總算
卻
難怪
把NP₁+V-成+NP₂

第十九課 參加慶生會

Lesson 19 Attending a Birthday Party



19 芬芬：我婆婆¹說飯做好了，大家請到飯廳用飯吧²。

李紅：好，謝謝。這麼麻煩林媽媽，真不好意思。

媽媽：沒什麼菜，³千萬別客氣！喜歡什麼就多吃一點。

趙奇：唔！⁴好香啊！一定很好吃。

媽媽：哪裡，⁵都是家常菜，不知道合不合你們的口味。

家明：這些菜色香味俱全，伯母⁶做的菜比飯館的更好吃。

李紅：來，來，來，我們來喝酒。先敬壽星⁷，祝你生日快樂，也謝謝林媽媽⁸、林先生。

.....

趙奇：我吃飽了，你們慢吃。⁹

媽媽：真的吃飽了嗎？再喝一碗湯吧。

趙奇：不了，謝謝。¹⁰我還要留點兒肚子吃蛋糕呢！

先生：要是大家都吃得差不多了，我們就來吃蛋糕吧。

芬芬：我已經買了個蛋糕，誰知道你們又買了一個。(去拿蛋糕)

李紅：我來收碗筷。

媽媽：你放著，你是客人。我怎麼能讓客人替我收碗筷呢？

那太沒道理了。¹¹

先生：我來，我來。

芬芬(拿蛋糕過來)：讓你們這麼破費，又買蛋糕又買禮物，真

不好意思。¹²

李紅：哪裡，哪裡⁵，只是一點小意思，應該的！¹³

家明：點幾根蠟燭啊？

芬芬：點兩根就好，意思意思，¹⁴反正你們都知道我幾歲了。

趙奇：慢點兒吹蠟燭，我們先照張相吧。¹⁵

李紅：芬芬，你許了什麼願？

芬芬：結婚三年了，¹⁶我希望趕快生個小寶寶，好讓婆婆放心。

李紅：你真是個好媳婦。

芬芬：另外，我也希望大家身體都好。

李紅：謝謝。

.....

李紅：不早了，我們該走了。¹⁷

芬芬：再坐一會兒嘛。

趙奇：該走了，太打擾了。¹⁸謝謝，謝謝，再見。

芬芬：那我送你們出去。慢走，¹⁹再見。

Vocabulary

1. 慶生會 qìngshēnghuì N: birthday party (M: 場)

慶祝 qìngzhù V: to celebrate

今年我們要給媽媽辦一個慶生會，慶祝她的七十歲生日。

We want to throw Mom a birthday party this year to celebrate her 70th birthday.

2. 婆婆 pō·po N: mother-in-law (M: 位)

公公 gōng·gong N: father-in-law (M: 位)

張太太的先生死了以後，就一直跟她的公公婆婆一起住。

After Mrs. Zhang's husband died, she still lived together with her father- and mother-in-law.

3. 媳婦 xífù N: daughter-in-law (M: 位)

兒子 ér·zi N: son (M: 個)

女兒 nǚ'ér N: daughter (M: 個)

4. 大家 dàjiā N: everybody, everyone

大家好！很高興有機會來跟各位見面，談談世界的貿易問題。

Hello, everybody. I'm delighted to have this chance to see you all and to discuss the problems of world trade.

5. 飯廳 fàntīng N: dining room (M: 間)

6. 用飯 yòng//fàn VO: to eat, dine

客人都用過飯了，你請他們到客廳去坐吧。

After the guests have finished eating. Ask them to go to the sitting room.

7. 千萬 qiānwàn Adv: by all means (used of exhortation or a friendly warning)

我下個星期要出國，你千萬別忘了幫我打電話訂飛機票。

I'm going abroad next week. By all means, you must not forget to phone and book the plane ticket for me.

8. 噀 ·m I: Mm

噀，好香！你今天做了什麼好吃的菜？

Mm, smells good. What wonderful food have you made today?

9. 家常菜 jiāchángcài N: home cooking (M: 道)

這些都是家常菜，沒有什麼特別的。你們別客氣，多吃一點。

It's all just home cooking, nothing special. Don't stand on ceremony, have some more.

10. 合 hé V: to fit in with, match
真抱歉！你的條件很好，可是不合我們公司的需要。我們不需要大學畢業的人。

I'm really sorry. You have excellent qualifications, but you're not what we need. We don't need university graduates.

11. 口味 kǒuwèi N: taste, flavor (M: 種)

你做的菜都這麼鹹，口味好重。

Your cooking is so salty, it has a very strong flavor.

12. 色香味俱全 sè xiāng wèi jù quán PH: to be complete with the look, the smell, and the taste of the food

我太太做的菜，顏色好看，味道很香，也好吃，所以大家都說色香味俱全。

My wife's cooking looks good, smells good, and tastes good, so everybody says it's perfect in every way.

- 色 sè N: color

紅色、綠色都是我最喜歡的顏色。

Red and green are my favorite colors.

13. 伯母 bómǔ N: aunt (M: 位、個)

- *14. 伯父 bófù N: uncle (M: 位、個)

- 父母 fùmǔ N: father and mother

看見朋友的父母，應該叫他們伯父伯母。

On meeting the parents of a friend, you should call them "uncle" and "aunt."

15. 敬 jìng V: to toast

今天是你的慶生會，我們一起來敬你一杯酒，祝你生日快樂。

Today is your birthday party. Let's all toast you and wish you happy birthday.

16. 壽星 shòuxīng N: birthday person (M: 位)

今天有兩位壽星，一位是老壽星我爸爸，七十歲；一位是小壽星我孩子，十歲。歡迎各位來參加他們的慶生會。

Today we have two birthday people. The older one, my father, is seventy, and the younger, my son, is ten. Welcome, everyone, to their birthday party.

- 壽麵 shòumiàn N: birthday noodles (M: 碗)

17. 蛋糕 dàngāo N: cake (M: 塊、個)

- (雞)蛋 (jī) dàn N: (chicken's) egg (M: hé 盒 box、個)

18. 讓 ràng V: to let, allow

1) 我感冒了，所以媽媽不讓我出去。

2) 這裡是路口，你慢一點。我們要右轉，應該讓直走的車先走。

1) I've got a cold, so Mom won't let me go outside.

2) This is a street corner. Slow down. We want to turn right, so we should let pass the cars going straight.

19. 替 tì CV: for; in place of

今天王老師有事，不能來，所以張老師替他上課。

Teacher Wang is busy today and can't come, so Teacher Zhang will take the class for him.

20. 道理 dào lǐ N: reason, sense

1) 你沒上班，還說老闆不應該扣你錢。哪裡有這種道理？

2) 你寫的這句話沒有道理，我看不懂。

1) You didn't go to work, and yet you say the boss shouldn't deduct your pay. How does that make sense?

2) This sentence you wrote does not make sense. I don't understand it.

21. 破費 pò fèi SV: to go to (great) expense

你太破費了，人來就好了，為什麼還買這麼多東西來？

You've gone to too much expense. It's good enough that you came; why do you buy so many things?

22. 禮物 lǐ wù N: gift (M: 份、包)

今年媽媽的生日我應該送她什麼禮物？

What should I give Mom for her birthday this year?

23. 點 diǎn V: to light, order, to drop (medicine) into

1) 你在點煙以前，應該先問問旁邊的人你抽煙有沒有關係。

2) 你眼睛痛沒關係。拿藥回去點，兩三天就好了。

1) Before you light a cigarette, you should ask the people around you whether they mind if you smoke.

2) Don't worry that your eyes hurt. Take some medicine back with you and put it in your eyes. You'll be fine in a couple of days.

24. 根 gēn M: (measure word for long thin objects, e.g. cigarettes, matches, etc.)

這根火柴斷了，再給我一根。

This match has snapped in two. Give me another one.

25. 蠟燭 là zhú N: candle (M: 根、支)

李太太又要上班，又要做家事，忙得不得了，好像一根蠟燭兩頭燒。

Mrs. Li must work and also does housework. She's extremely busy, really burning the candle at both ends.

26. 反正 fǎnzhèng Adv: anyway, as it is

- 1) 這首歌太難了。我不學了，反正我也學不會。
- 2) 我可以幫你買郵票，反正我也要去郵局。

- 1) This song is too difficult. I do not want to learn it, and as it is I never will.
- 2) I can buy stamps for you; I'm going to the post office anyway.

27. 吹 chuī V: to blow

這個週末你有沒有空？陪我去海邊吹吹風，看看海。

Are you free this weekend? Go to the beach with me and enjoy the wind and the sea view.

吹風機 chuīfēngjī N: hair dryer (M: 支)

28. 照相(像) zhàoxiàng VO: to take a photo

- 1) 這裡風景不錯。你站在那邊，我給你照張相。
- 2) 我不喜歡照相，因為我太胖，照起來不好看。

- 1) The scenery is lovely here. Stand over there and I'll take a photo of you.
- 2) I don't like having my photo taken because I'm too fat and don't look good in photos.

照相機 zhàoxiàngjī N: camera (M: 個、架 jià)

29. 許願 xǔ//yuàn VO: to make a wish

我知道你們急著吃蛋糕，可是吹蠟燭以前，我要先許個願，然後你們才可以吃蛋糕。

I know you're in a rush to eat the cake, but before I blow out the candles I want to first make a wish. Then you can have some cake.

願望 yuànwàng N: wish, hope (M: 個)

30. 結婚 jié//hūn VO: to get married

- 1) 我跟我太太已經結婚三年了，可是因為我一直很忙，所以我們還不要孩子。
- 2) 王先生，你結過婚沒有？有沒有孩子？你希望我們給你介紹什麼樣的工作？

- 1) My wife and I have been married for three years, but since I am always very busy, we don't want to have children yet.
- 2) Are you married, Mr. Wang? Do you have children? What kind of work do you want us to find for you?

訂婚 dìng//hūn VO: to get engaged

31. 生 shēng V: to give birth (to)

我是我們家最小的孩子，我媽媽生我的時候，已經四十五歲了。

I'm the youngest child in our family. My mother was already forty-five when she had me.

32. 寶寶 bǎo·bao N: baby (M: 個)

33. 好 hǎo AV: in order to, so as to

你把你的電話號碼給我，我好跟你聯絡。

Give me your telephone number, so I can keep in contact with you.

34. 另外 lìngwài Adv/SP: moreover, besides

1) 我買了一個電腦，另外還買了一個傳真機。

2) 我有兩個哥哥，一個住在台北，另外一個住在台南。

1) I bought a computer, and I also bought a fax machine.

2) I have two elder brothers. One lives in Taipei, the other one in Tainan.

35. 打擾 dǎrǎo V: to disturb

1) 王老師的門上貼了一張紙，上面寫的是：「在錄音，請勿打擾。」
我們明天再來吧。

2) 時間不早了，我們得走了。今天實在太打擾你們了。謝謝，再見。

1) There's a piece of paper stuck on Teacher Wang's door, saying: "Recording. Please do not disturb." Let's come back tomorrow.

2) It's late. We should go. We've really been too much trouble for you today. Thank you. Goodbye.

Grammar

1. 沒什麼菜，千萬別客氣。

Oh, it's nothing. Please don't stand on ceremony.

Explanation: “千萬” means “一定要……” or “務必……”. It indicates a reminder or a warning. “千萬” is generally followed by a negative, and the main clause is usually addressed to a second person.

孩子：媽媽，我走了，去上學了。

媽媽：感冒藥帶了沒有？_____，要不然病不容易好。

病人：我藥吃完了，就可以不必再來了嗎？

醫生：如果你的眼睛還紅紅的，_____，要不然好不了。

王：你先生真好，每次去外國辦事都給你買東西。

李：可是他常常買錯啊。這次我要他買法國香水，希望
他_____。

王：你這次考試已經準備了很久了，應該沒問題吧？

李：我前兩次都沒有考好，所以這次_____，要不然就不能畢業了。

你千萬要再來
千萬別買錯了

千萬不能再考壞了
千萬別忘了吃藥

Additional Vocabulary

上學: to go to school

2. 我已經買了個蛋糕，誰知道你們又買了一個？

I already bought a cake; who would know that you bought one too?

Explanation: “誰知道……” is a rhetorical question. It is followed by an event that the speaker wishes not to happen. The speaker means: “I didn’t think this would happen.”

王：雨這麼大，你為什麼不打 sǎn(傘)？

李：我沒帶傘，早上天氣那麼好，_____？

王：你不是看過醫生，吃過藥了嗎？怎麼還沒好？

李：就是嘛！我以為吃了藥就不會咳了，_____？

王：電話公司來通知要停話，你怎麼沒去繳電話費？

李：我想還早，有空再去繳費，_____？現在怎麼辦？

王：你今天去人人公司面談，情形怎麼樣？

李：應徵的人好多，他們的廣告才 dēng(登)了一天，我想看到的人不多，
_____？

誰知道越咳越厲害
誰知道來的人這麼多

誰知道下午會下雨
誰知道一忙就忘了

Additional Vocabulary

sǎn (傘): umbrella

dēng (登): to publish; to post

3. 你放著。Don’t bother. (Leave it alone.)

Explanation: “V-著” indicates that the movement is continuous. It describes a static state, not a dynamic process. The basic sentence structure is “處所詞 + V-著 + NP”. The noun phrase can be the subject, e.g. “門口站著幾個學生”, or the object, e.g. “我手裡拿著一本書”. The command, moreover, indicates that the state should be maintained, e.g. “你坐著，別動”.

a. 命令句

王：到了到了，拿 yào-shi (鑰匙) 開門吧。

李：好，這些東西你幫我_____，我找鑰匙。

王：東西太重，拿不動了。叫一輛車吧！

李：好，你在這裡_____，我去叫計程車。

王：宮保雞丁怎麼做才好吃？

李：我教你怎麼做，你_____。

Additional Vocabulary

yào-shi (鑰匙): key

b. 處所詞 + V-著 + NP/ NP+ 在 + 處所詞 + V-著

請用「V-著」填在_____上：

可用的V有：放、貼、掛、擺、看、穿、開、關、等、拿……

我昨天去看了一個房子，一共有三個房間。客廳很大，左邊有一個大窗子，窗子都_____，所以很亮。右邊_____一個櫃子，櫃子上_____一個電視機。對面_____幾個 shāfā (沙發)，沙發後面的 (qiáng) 牆上_____一張風景照片。沙發前面的小桌子上_____一盤水果。要出租的那個房間裡，有床、衣櫃，還有桌子、椅子。門對面的牆上_____一張很大的歌星王非的照片。別的房间的門都_____，不知道裡面怎麼樣。房東太太很客氣，她身上_____一件花襯衫，看起來很年輕。她手裡_____租約，問我決定了沒有，決定了就可以馬上簽約。我_____她，覺得不好意思，因為我不能馬上決定。她說：「還有好幾個人_____來看這個房子呢，你要是今天下午不能決定，我就讓別人來看了。」我說：「好，我回家想想。」最後我決定租了。

Additional Vocabulary

亮: bright

shāfā (沙發): couch; sofa

qiáng (牆): wall

4. ◎ 你是客人，我怎麼能讓客人替我收碗筷呢？

You're a guest. How could I let a guest tidy up for me?

◎ 讓你們這麼破費……，真不好意思。

Letting you spend so much money..., I am really embarrassed.

⊙我希望趕快生個小寶寶。好讓婆婆放心。

I want to have a baby soon, so as to set my mother-in-law's mind at rest.

Explanation: “讓” means “允許” or “聽任”. The sentence structure is “NP₁+ 讓 + NP₂ + VP.”

太太：你知道小張現在住在哪裡嗎？他還有一些東西在我們這裡。我們要搬家了，怎麼辦？

先生：我也沒有他的電話號碼。_____這件事應該怎麼辦。

王：下星期我跟幾個朋友要到海邊去露營，你要不要跟我們一起去？

李：我媽媽說海邊太危險，_____。

太太：你怎麼不管管孩子？他越來越不聽話了。

先生：孩子大了，管不了了。他想做什麼，你就_____。

王：老李，來一根煙吧。

李：不行。我咳嗽，醫生_____。

不讓我跟你們去
讓他自己決定吧

不讓我抽煙
讓我想一想

5. 你是客人，我怎麼能讓客人替我收碗筷呢？

You're a guest. How could I let a guest tidy up for me?

Explanation: “替” means “為”, “給”, or “代替”. The sentence structure is “NP₁+ 替 + NP₂ + VP”.

王：今天的網球賽，你們看了沒有？我打得好不好？

李：當然看了。你贏了，_____。

王：小李，報告交了沒有？

李：我忙著打工，沒有時間寫。_____？

王：今天怎麼是林老師給你們上課？

李：張老師今天請假，_____。

孩子：媽，我好不舒服，全身都痛，我想我快死了。

媽媽：看你病得那麼難過，我真希望_____。

林老師替她上課
能替你生病

你能不能替我寫
我們都替你高興

6. 反正你們都知道我幾歲了。

Anyway, you all know how old I am.

Explanation: “反正” can be used in two different ways: a) “反正” is followed by the speaker’s reason — the speaker feels that an event or situation does not matter; b) the speaker feels that the matter just mentioned does not have to happen, or will be of no use if it does happen. Whichever meaning is used, the fact following “反正” will not change. “反正” is often preceded by “不管”.

1) 王：都十二點了，你怎麼還不睡？

李：晚一點睡沒關係，_____，不上班。

先生：這個月的電話費還沒繳，明天就到期了，可是我沒空去繳。

太太：給我吧！我去繳，_____。

王：李太太，你買這麼多東西，你先生會不會不高興？

李：沒關係！_____，他不會知道的。

王：你昨天跟張先生出去，吃了什麼好吃的東西？

李：從來沒去過那麼高級的餐廳，所以我點了那個餐廳最貴的菜，

_____。

反正錢都是我在管
反正明天是週末

反正明天我也有事要去銀行
反正不是我付錢

2) 王：小張結婚請客的地方很遠，你要去嗎？

李：不管遠不遠，_____，要不然他會罵我。

哥哥：應徵的人這麼多，你還要去面談嗎？恐怕希望不大。

弟弟：不管有沒有希望，_____。

王：我們點什麼菜？你想吃什麼？

李：我不吃辣的，你點什麼菜都可以，_____。

王：我幾點去你家比較好？

李：你什麼時候來都可以，_____。

學生：我們真的星期三考試嗎？能不能晚一點？星期五好不好？

老師：星期三、星期五，我沒有意見，_____。

反正我都在家
反正不要辣的就行了
反正一定要在這個星期考

反正我都要試試看
反正我一定要去

7. 結婚三年了，我希望趕快生個小寶寶。好讓婆婆放心。

Having been married for three years, I want to have a baby soon, so as to set my mother-in-law's mind at rest.

Explanation: The auxiliary verb “好” means “才可以” or “以便”. The action preceding the “好” must be taken in order for the objective following it to be achieved more easily.

王：每天寫報告，都不能出去玩。好累啊。

李：那你趕快把報告寫完，才_____。

王：你要去哪裡？你看起來好累啊。

李：是啊！這裡太吵，我要去找個安靜的地方_____。

王：你這麼xīnkǔ(辛苦)工作，都不休息。賺那麼多錢做什麼？

李：我不想老是租房子，我想多賺點錢_____。

妹妹：這麼晚了，媽媽一定在家等我們，擔心我們會不會出事了。

姊姊：趕快打電話給媽，說我們馬上就回家了，_____。

好睡覺

好買房子

好讓媽媽放心

好出去玩

Additional Vocabulary

xīnkǔ (辛苦): hard; diligent

8. 另外，我也希望大家身體都好。

Also, I wished for good health for everyone.

Explanation: “另外” indicates something outside the scope of the preceding sentence. It can be used as an adverb, or as a conjunction joining two sentences, phrases, or paragraphs. It is often followed by “還”, “再”, “又”, or “也”.

王：你剛剛說的這個辦法大概不行。

李：沒關係，我們_____。

王：我要租這兩卷帶子，也要辦會員卡。

李：這兩卷帶子一百塊，辦會員卡_____。

媽媽：你跟你弟弟怎麼租了那麼多帶子？

姊姊：弟弟租的都是功夫片，我不愛看，所以_____。

太太：下星期旅行要帶的錢，你準備了沒有？

先生：我換了五百塊美金，_____。

另外我還買了三千塊旅行支票
我另外又租了兩部文藝愛情片

另外再想辦法
另外要再付一千塊

另外算錢

19

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

() 這兩個人在哪裡說話？

a. 蛋糕店裡

b. 餐廳裡

c. KTV 裡

() 這兩個人來做什麼？

a. 來慶祝生日

b. 來唱歌

c. 來買蛋糕

() 小姐為什麼來晚了？

a. 她有別的事

b. 她去買蛋糕

c. 路上塞車

() 小姐為什麼不自己點菜？

a. 她只想吃蛋糕

b. 她覺得不好意思

c. 她對義大利菜不熟

() 誰唱生日快樂歌？

a. 服務生

b. 先生

c. 小姐

() 最後先生想要做什麼？

a. 給小姐生日禮物

b. 跟小姐結婚

c. 給小姐吹蠟燭

Notes

1. “婆婆”, here, means “mother-in-law, one’s husband’s mother.” It usually refers to an old lady. It can be used to address an old lady who is a stranger. A younger child would use it to address his/her mother’s mother, while older children would use “外婆”. “公公” is one’s husband’s father. “岳父 (yuèfù)” and “岳母 (yuèmǔ)” means “One’s wife’s father” and “one’s wife’s mother.”
2. “大家請到飯廳用飯吧” means “Everybody please come to the dining room to have dinner.” “用飯” is more formal than “吃飯”. This “吧” indicates suggestion.
3. “沒什麼菜” means “There are no real dishes.” This is a typical polite remark (客氣話) used when Chinese people invite friends over to have meals, even when they have prepared a lot of food. Traditionally, Chinese are taught to be modest, therefore they use these polite remarks (客氣話) on many occasions.
4. “姆” is a nasal sound, pronounced with the mouth closed. Its pitch is low and falling. It indicates satisfaction or approval.
5. “哪裡” here doesn’t mean “where?” It means “It is nothing.” or “It is not as good as you have just said.” This is a polite remark (客氣話), used when one receives praise or gratitude from other people. It can be said twice, as in “哪裡，哪裡”.
6. “伯母” is the wife of one’s father’s elder brother. “伯父” is one’s father’s elder brother. It is a custom in Chinese society to address friends’ or peers’ parents “伯父、伯母”. This custom promotes a feeling of familiarity and makes one feel like part of an extended family.
7. “壽星” is the person who celebrates his/her birthday. If this person is older, he will be called “壽星翁 (wēng)”, and she will be called “壽星婆”.
8. “林媽媽” is another way to address a friend’s mother. It is less formal than “伯母”.
9. “我吃饱了。你們慢吃。” means “I am full. (But please) Take your time, enjoy your food.” “你們慢吃。” is a polite remark (客氣話), which is used when one has finished his/her meal and others have not.
10. “不了，謝謝。” means “No, thanks.” This “了” indicates a change of status — I want to stop eating. (I don’t want to have one more bowl of soup.)
11. “你是客人，我怎麼能讓客人替我收碗筷呢？那太沒道理了。” means “You are my guest. How can I let you clean the table for me? That doesn’t make any sense.” It is considered impolite to let guests clean the table and dishes for the host, unless they are very close.
12. “讓你們這麼破費……真不好意思” means “I feel so bad about letting you spend so much money (on my behalf).” This is a polite remark (客氣話), used when one receives a gift from others, or when others pay the bill for food which one has eaten.
13. “只是一點小意思，應該的。” means “It is only a small token. It is supposed to be done in this way.” This polite remark (客氣話) is used when one gives a gift to another person.
14. “點兩根就好，意思意思。” means “It would be fine to just light two candles. They are just a symbol.” Here, “意思” is used as a verb.

15. “慢點兒吹蠟燭，我們先照張相吧。” means “Hold it. Blow the candles later. Let’s take a picture first.” This “慢點兒吹” means to start the action of blowing in a while, not now.
16. “結婚三年了” means “I have been married for three years.” This “了” indicates “up to now.”
17. “不早了，我們該走了” means “It’s late. We should be going.” This is a common expression used when one wants to leave a gathering. The first “了” indicates change of status — the time is getting late. The “了” at the end of the sentence indicates the action of leaving will take place immediately.
18. “該走了，太打擾了。” means “(We) should be going. We have been too much trouble to you.” “太打擾了” is a polite remark (客氣話), which is said to the host when one leaves.
19. “那我送你們出去。慢走。” means “In that case, I’ll walk you out. Walk slowly (safely).” This is a common expression said by the host to guests when they are leaving.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

芬芬：我婆婆说饭做好了，大家请到饭厅用饭吧。

李红：好，谢谢。这么麻烦林妈妈，真不好意思。

妈妈：没什么菜，千万别客气！喜欢什么就多吃一点。

赵奇：嗯！好香啊！一定很好吃。

妈妈：哪里，都是家常菜，不知道合不合你们的口味。

家明：这些菜色香味俱全，伯母做的菜比饭馆的更好吃。

李红：来，来，来，我们来喝酒。先敬寿星，祝你生日快乐，也谢谢林妈妈、林先生。

赵奇：我吃饱了，你们慢吃。

妈妈：真吃饱了吗？再喝一碗汤吧。

赵奇：不了，谢谢。我还要留点儿肚子吃蛋糕呢！

先生：要是大家都吃得差不多了，我们就来吃蛋糕吧。

芬芬：我已经买了个蛋糕，谁知道你们又买了一个。（去拿蛋糕）

李红：我来收碗筷。

妈妈：你放着，你是客人。我怎么能让客人替我收碗筷呢？那太没道理了。

先生：我来，我来。

芬芬（拿蛋糕过来）：让你们这么破费，又买蛋糕又买礼物，真不好意思。

李红：哪里，哪里，只是一点小意思，应该的！

家明：点几根蜡烛啊？

芬芬：点两根就好，意思意思，反正你们都知道我几岁了。

赵奇：慢点儿吹蜡烛，我们先照张相吧。

李红：芬芬，你许了什么愿？

芬芬：结婚三年了，我希望赶快生个小宝宝，好让婆婆放心。

李红：你真是个好媳妇。

芬芬：另外，我也希望大家身体都好。

李红：谢谢。

李红：不早了，我们该走了。

芬芬：再坐一会儿嘛。

赵奇：该走了，太打扰了。谢谢，谢谢，再见。

芬芬：那我送你们出去。慢走，再见。

第二十課 好友的婚禮

Lesson 20 My Best Friend's Wedding



12月20日 天氣 晴

今天是我月結婚的日子。從接到喜帖起，我就開始煩惱要穿什麼去參加婚禮。¹我月是我最好的朋友，我一定要打扮得漂漂亮亮的，另外再送一份大禮才對。²

我在紅包袋³上寫了一句祝賀的話「百年好合」⁴，然後選了一件淺藍色的洋裝，配了個別針，再穿上平常很少穿的高跟鞋。照照鏡子，跟我新燙的髮型滿配的。我就這樣出門了。半路上，才想起來忘了擦口紅，⁵也忘了帶紅包，不得不回家拿。氣死我了，⁶浪費了好多時間。真不知道我出門的時候在想些什麼。不過，總算沒遲到。

喝喜酒的時候，碰到了以前的同學謝美宜，她認得我，我卻不認得她，因為她胖了那麼多，又戴了好多首飾，難怪我把她看成新郎的媽媽，還直對她說恭喜呢。⁷真不好意思。

我月結婚了，美宜變胖了，我呢？



Vocabulary

1. 婚禮 hūnlǐ N: wedding (M: 場)

典禮 diǎnlǐ N: ceremony

孩子的畢業典禮、結婚典禮都是大事，我這個做爸爸的不管多忙都要參加。

The graduation and wedding ceremonies of a child are big events. As a father, I have to attend, no matter how busy I am.

2. 日記 rìjì N: diary (M: 本、piān 篇 article)

我從十歲就開始寫日記。我把心裡的事都寫在日記裡。

I have been keeping a diary since I was ten. I write all my inner feelings in it.

3. 日子 rì·zi N: day (M: 個)

今天是什麼日子？你怎麼穿得這麼漂亮？噢，對了，你哥哥今天結婚。

What day is today? How come you are wearing such beautiful clothes? Oh, right, your elder brother is getting married today.

4. 喜帖 xǐtiě N: wedding invitation (M: 張)

小王結婚的時候沒給我喜帖，所以我後來才知道他結婚了。

When Little Wang got married, I didn't get a wedding invitation, so I only knew of his marriage afterwards.

5. 煩惱 fánǎo SV/N: to be concerned, worried/trouble

1) 孩子大了，要自己交男朋友了。我很煩惱，怕她交到不好的朋友。

2) 我現在最大的煩惱是找不到合適的房子，下個月就沒有地方住了。

1) My child has grown up and wants to find a boyfriend herself. I'm worried that she won't find a nice one.

2) My biggest concern now is that I can't find a suitable house, and next month I won't have a place to live.

煩 fán SV/V: annoying/to annoy

1) 女朋友要我趕快結婚，可是我想再等一、兩年，她就每天跟我吵，我煩死了。

2) 太太，你叫小孩別來煩我。我要準備去歐洲的東西。

1) My girlfriend wants us to get married right away, but I want to wait another year or two. We argue every day; it's annoying me to death.

2) Wife, please tell the children not to bother me. I am preparing the things I need for my trip to Europe.

6. 打扮 dǎbàn V: to dress up

我今天要去見我男朋友的父母，我得打扮一下。所以我穿了我最漂亮的衣服。

I am going to meet the parents of my boyfriend today. I have to dress up, so I have put on my best clothes.

7. 送大禮 sòng//dàlǐ VO: to give a major present

媽媽今年六十歲了，我們應該送一份大禮給她。我們買一件大衣，好不好？

Mom is sixty this year. We should get her a big present. let's buy her an overcoat, shall we?

禮物 lǐwù N: gift (M: 份、個)

8. 紅包袋 hóngbāodài N: red envelope (the envelope itself) (M: 個)

紅包 hóngbāo N: red envelope (the gift inside) (M: 份、個)

中國新年的時候，父母都會給孩子紅包，希望他們在新的一年裡一切順利。

At Chinese New Year, parents give their children a red envelope and hope that everything in the new year goes well for them.

袋子 dài·zi N: bag (M: 個)

口袋 kǒudài N: pocket (M: 個)

你先把口袋裡的東西都拿出來，再把衣服放在這個袋子裡，交給旅館去洗。

First take all the things out of your pockets; then put your clothes in this bag and give it to the hotel to wash.

9. 祝賀 zhùhè V: to wish, to congratulate

老李的兒子要結婚了，我們應該去參加婚禮，祝賀一下。

Old Li's son is getting married. We ought to go to the wedding to congratulate him.

10. 百年好合 bǎi nián hǎohé IE: One hundred years of harmony (a common wedding wish)

我在給小張的結婚禮物上寫了一句祝賀的話。我寫的是「百年好合」，希望他們兩個一百年都快樂。

I wrote an inscription on the wedding gift that I gave to Little Zhang. I wrote: "Wishing you a hundred years of harmony," hoping that the two of them will always be happy together.

11. 選 xuǎn V: to choose

太太，我們的結婚照片哪一張最好看？我們選一張掛起來吧。

Wife, which is the best of our wedding photos? Let's choose one to hang up on the wall.

12. 淺藍色 qiǎnlánsè N: light blue

淺 qiǎn SV: shallow, light

- 1) 這裡水很淺，不可以游泳。
- 2) 這件衣服顏色淺，容易髒，所以你最好買別的顏色的。
1) The water here is very shallow; swimming is not permitted.
2) This dress is light in color and easily got dirty, so you'd better buy one of another color.

*13. 深 shēn SV: deep, dark

- 1) 媽媽說這兒附近海邊水很深，太危險，不讓我去游泳。
- 2) 我又矮又小，穿深藍色的衣服不好看。
1) Mom says the sea here is very deep and too dangerous. She won't let me go swim.
2) I am short and slight. Dark blue clothes don't look good on me.

14. 洋裝 yángzhuāng N: dress (M: 件)

西裝 xīzhuāng N: suit (M: tào 套 set)

15. 配 pèi V/SV: to match/to be a match

- 1) 我覺得紅色跟綠色配在一起不好看，可是我女朋友很喜歡。
- 2) 我覺得小李跟他太太不太配，一個那麼高，一個那麼矮。奇怪，他們怎麼會在一起？
1) I think red and green don't go together well, but my girlfriend likes them together very much.
2) I don't think Little Li and his wife are a good match: one is very tall, the other very short. How can they be together?

16. 別針 biézhēn N: brooch (M: 個)

別 bié V: to attach

王太太今天別的那個別針是她兒子送她的生日禮物。

The brooch Mrs. Wang is wearing today is the one her son gave her for her birthday.

17. 高跟鞋 gāogēnxié N: high-heeled shoes (M: 雙)

平底鞋 píngdǐxié N: pumps (M: 雙)

球鞋 qiúxié N: sports shoes (M: 雙)

18. 照鏡子 zhào/jìng·zi VO: to look in the mirror

- 1) 小美很愛漂亮，常常照鏡子，看看自己是不是一切都好。
- 2) 小張老是以為自己在公司最紅，說話就不太客氣。我真想去告訴他：他應該去照照鏡子。

- 1) Xiaomei likes to look pretty. She often looks in the mirror to check her appearance.
- 2) Little Zhang thinks he's the most popular at the company. He is not that polite about others. I really want to tell him to go look in a mirror.

鏡子 jìng·zi N: mirror (M: 面、個)

眼鏡 yǎnjìng N: eye glasses (M: fù 副 set)

19. 燙 tàng V/SV: to iron, burn/ hot

- 1) 太太，我的襯衫燙好了沒？我得出門了。
 - 2) 我知道湯冷了不好喝，可是這碗湯還太燙，我要等一下再喝。
- 1) Darling, have you ironed my shirt yet? I have to be going now.
 - 2) I know that soup doesn't taste good when it has cooled, but this bowl of soup is still too hot. I'll have to eat it in a little while.

20. 髮型 fǎxíng N: hairstyle (M: 種)

頭髮 tóu·fǎ N: hair (M: 根、束、把)

我的頭髮很少，也太直，燙什麼髮型比較好看？

My hair is thin and too straight; what kind of curl style would look better?

21. 滿 mǎn Adv: quite, rather

你兒子滿好的，又會念書，又聽話。我看你從來不擔心。

Your son is quite nice. He is both studious and obedient. I'm sure you have never had any worries about him.

22. 口紅 kǒuhóng N: lipstick (M: 支)

這支口紅的顏色很淡，很容易配衣服，你可以買。

The color of this lipstick is very light and will easily match your clothes. You can buy it.

口 kǒu M: mouth(-ful)

- 1) 你別急，先喝一口水再說。
 - 2) 我家有四口人，爸爸、媽媽、哥哥跟我。
- 1) Don't be in a rush, have a sip of water first.
 - 2) There are four people in my family: my father, mother, elder brother, and I.

23. 不得不 bùdébù AV: cannot but

我媽媽說的話我常常不同意，可是她是我媽媽，我不得不聽。

I often disagree with what my mother says, but she is my mother, so I have to listen.

24. 浪費 làngfèi V/SV: to waste, to squander

- 1) 兒子，我不想浪費錢，如果你不喜歡念書，我就不要替你繳學費。
- 2) 你太浪費啦，一張紙才寫了兩三個字就丟了。

- 1) I don't want to waste money, son. If you don't want to study, I don't want to pay the school fees for you.
2) You waste too much, just writing a couple of words on a sheet of paper and then throwing it away.

25. 總算 zǒngsuàn Adv: at last

A: 對不起，我來晚了。

B: 小姐，我們等你等了四十分鐘。你總算來了。

A: Sorry I'm late.

B: We have been waiting for you for forty minutes, Miss, and finally you are here.

26. 遲到 chídào V: to be late

我們十點十分上課，現在已經十點半了。你說，你為什麼遲到？

We start class at ten past ten. It's now half past ten. Tell me, why you're late?

27. 喜酒 xǐjiǔ N: wedding banquet (M: 次)

小李，老王的女兒結婚，我們同事都要去喝喜酒，你去不去？

Old Wang's daughter is getting married, Little Li, and all of us at the company are going to the banquet. Will you go?

28. 認得 rèn-de V: to recognize

小王，畢業以後幾年沒見，你變了好多，我都不認得你了。

I haven't seen you for several years since graduation, Little Wang. You've changed a lot, and I didn't recognize you.

29. 卻 què Adv: but, yet

很多學校裡的老師說這部電影對年輕人不好，可是去看的人卻很多。

Many school teachers say this film is not suitable for young people, yet lots of people have gone to see it.

30. 戴 dài V: to wear

太陽這麼大，去爬山最好戴帽子跟太陽眼鏡。

The sun's so bright, it would be best to wear a hat and sunglasses if we're going to go hiking in the hills.

31. 首飾 shǒushì N: jewelry (M: 件)

結婚的時候，要準備很多首飾，所以沒有錢結不了婚。

When you get married, you need a lot of jewelry, so people without much money cannot get married.

32. 難怪 nānguài Adv: no wonder

1) 難怪你們兩個這麼像，原來你們是姊弟。

2) 你在美國住了十幾年，難怪你的英文這麼好。

- 1) No wonder you two look so similar; so you are brother and sister.
- 2) You lived in the USA for more than ten years, no wonder your English is so good.

33. 成 chéng PV: as
對不起，李小姐，是你。我剛才叫你王小姐，是因為我把你看成她了。
Sorry, Ms. Li, it's you. I called you Ms. Wang just now because I thought you were her.

34. 新郎 xīnláng N: bridegroom (M: 位)

*35. 新娘 xīnniáng N: bride (M: 位)

36. 恭喜 gōngxǐ V: to congratulate

- 1) 恭喜，恭喜！新年好。
- 2) 王太太，恭喜你生了個兒子。
- 1) Happy New Year.
- 2) Mrs. Wang, congratulations on the birth of your son.

20

Grammar

1. 從接到喜帖起，我就開始煩惱要穿什麼去參加婚禮。

The moment I received the invitation to the wedding banquet, I started to worry what I should wear to the wedding

Explanation: In the structure “從……起”，“起” means “開始”。“從” is often followed by a time word or a verb phrase expressing time.

王：房東太太，我可以今天簽約，可是我下個月才搬來。房租怎麼算？

李：你沒搬進來我就不算錢，我們就_____。

王：你剛才跟老闆說你不做了，是真的嗎？

李：是啊，我找到了新工作。_____。

王：你不是說你不抽煙了嗎？

李：對啊！我_____，可是不抽實在受不了，我就又開始抽了。

王：李太太，你要去哪裡？

李：孩子_____，我現在帶她去醫院看病。

從你搬進來那天起開始算房租
從今天早上起就一直哭

從上個月一號起就沒抽煙了
從明天起我就不來這裡上班了

2. 我一定要打扮得漂漂亮亮的。 I must dress up very beautifully.

Explanation: The “SV-SV” structure involves the reduplication of two-syllable adjectives. Lesson three introduced the reduplication of single-syllable adjectives. The two are used in the same way, but a few two-syllable adjectives cannot be reduplicated. In addition, note that two-syllable adjectives of the form AB reduplicate as AABB, as opposed to two-syllable verbs, which reduplicate as ABAB.

Please fill in proper duplicated objectives.

Possible objectives are as follow: 清楚、舒服、高興、安靜、健康、快樂、熱鬧、隨便、平安、漂亮、客氣、乾淨、輕鬆、奇怪、清淡

1) SV-SV(地) + VP

孩子：爸，卡通片演完了，你陪我去打籃球，好不好？

爸爸：你吵死了，可不可以_____地坐一會兒，讓我把這本書看完？

弟弟：你們在計畫什麼？

姊姊：今年媽媽七十歲，我們要_____地慶祝一下。

王：我要去試試我的新車了。

李：開車小心一點。我希望你_____地出門，_____地回家。

2) SV-SV 的 + NP

王：這件衣服的樣子很特別。價錢貴了一點，可是我很想買。

李：你不要老是買_____的衣服嘛！沒有機會穿，太浪費了。

王：今天的球賽，我們打贏了。現在你想去哪兒？

李：我又熱又累，我要先洗一個_____的澡，然後去啤酒屋慶祝慶祝。

王：我先把髒衣服都丟在地上，我等一下再去洗。

李：不對啊！這件衣服很乾淨啊。_____的衣服，你為什麼丟在地上？

3) Topic + SV-SV 的

王：樓上剛搬來的那個人你覺得怎麼樣？

李：那個人說話總是_____，看起來是個好人。

王：你為什麼點青菜豆腐湯？沒什麼味道嘛。

李：不會啊！這種湯_____，一點都不油，喝了很舒服。

王：你不要想太多了！學學我，高興一點。

李：你每天總是_____，難怪你這麼健康。

4) V 得 + SV-SV 的

妹妹：明天要去面談，我穿平底鞋去，行不行？

姊姊：那你身上要穿什麼？你最好不要穿得_____，老闆會以為你覺得面談不重要。

王：李先生，請你儘快搬出去，房間我們要自己用。

李：房東太太，這個在租約上寫得_____，你應該一個月以前告訴我。

王：我上次跟你說想去你那裡住幾天，你看我什麼時候去比較好？

李：我已經把房間打掃得_____了，你什麼時候來都可以。

20

3. 選了一件淺藍色的洋裝……跟我新燙的髮型滿配的。

I chose a light colored dress, ...to go with my new permed hairstyle.

Explanation: “滿 + SV + 的” indicates that the level of the “SV” is quite high, higher than the speaker expected. In common speech, there are some descriptive verbs which can also use this structure, such as “喜歡”, “愛”, “會”, “能”, “有”, and others. It should be followed by the relevant object and then connected with “的”. Some people use “挺(tǐng)+ SV 的” instead; it means much the same. Some people also use “蠻”, which is the same as “滿”.

主人：我做的菜比較清淡，大概不太合你的口味。

客人：不會啊！我也吃得很清淡，所以你的菜_____。

太太：沒想到小陳也來參加我們的婚禮了，還送了三千六百塊的紅包。

先生：是啊。我跟她不太熟，她這個紅包_____，我覺得很不好意思。

王：你會唱的歌好多啊！我不愛唱歌，很少來KTV。

李：我_____，常常來KTV唱歌。

王：走，我請你去吃飯。你想去哪兒吃，我們就去哪兒吃。

李：你今天心情_____，有什麼好事啊？

4. ……忘了帶紅包，不得不回家拿。

I forgot to bring the red envelope, nothing to do but return home and get it.

Explanation: The action following “不得不” is something which the subject does not want to do, but has no alternative, must do, and is forced to, with a feeling of helplessness. In comparison with “只好”, the thing after “只好” is the subject’s only choice, but the subject could choose not to do it. For example, “太晚了，沒有公車了，我只好走路回家。可是後來我朋友說我可以睡在他家，我就不必回家了。” and “我不喜歡吃藥，可是現在病得這麼厲害，不得不吃藥。”.

王：老張怎麼忽然要賣房子？

李：他的錢都輸了，沒有錢還別人了，所以_____。

王：你昨天晚上在 KTV 玩得好嗎？

李：不好，一起去的小林唱得不好聽又愛唱，我_____，現在耳朵還很痛。

王：你怎麼買了一個破杯子回來？

李：我逛百貨公司的時候，不小心碰到這個杯子，diào(掉)在地上打破了，我_____。

王：你不是很喜歡你住的地方嗎？為什麼要搬家？

李：房東要賣房子，我_____。

Additional Vocabulary

diào (掉): to drop, to fall

5. 總算沒遲到。As it turned out, I was not late.

Explanation: “總算” means “終於”, or “好不容易”, and means that the action following it was expected, and has finally occurred.

王：聽說芭蕾舞的票很難買，你買到沒有？

李：我很早就去排隊，排了四個小時，_____。

王：畢業以後都沒見過你，你現在在哪裡工作啊？

李：我從上個月起在一家貿易公司上班。現在要找一個喜歡的工作不容易，我找了幾個月，_____。

王：你的報告寫得怎麼樣了？

李：我寫了幾個禮拜，今天早上_____。

王：老李，你大學念了這麼久，已經畢業了吧？

李：我家裡沒錢，一直一邊工作，一邊念書，念了六年，今年春天

_____。

6. 她認得我，我卻不認得她。

She recognized me, but I did not recognize her.

Explanation: “卻” follows the subject, and indicates a change in tone, meaning that the action was contrary to what was expected. If used together with “可是”, “可是” must precede the subject.

王：小李，你怎麼還在家？不是去旅行了嗎？

李：別說了！想起來我就生氣。我飛機票、簽證都辦好了，出門前

_____，來不及去 yán (延)期就走不了了。

王：下雨啦！今天天氣好奇怪啊。

李：是啊！早上太陽那麼大，下午_____。

王：你身上的疹子，好像比昨天還多。

李：就是啊，我以為吃了藥，疹子就會消了，可是_____。奇怪，怎麼會這樣？

老師：這次的考試很容易啊！你們覺得自己考得好不好？

學生：你說很容易，可是我們_____。

卻沒有人考九十分以上
卻下起雨來了

卻越來越多
卻發現護照快到期了

Additional Vocabulary

yán (延)期: to extend the time

7. 難怪我把她看成新娘的媽媽。

No wonder I mistook her for the bride's mother.

Explanation: “難怪” indicates that the speaker has understood the reason, and no longer finds it strange; “難” means “不應該”. Often, a preceding or following clause explains why the speaker no longer finds the situation strange.

王：我不跟小美說話，你有事，你自己告訴她，我不幫你轉。

李：你們吵架啦？_____。

王：你剛剛喝的湯是三鮮湯，裡面有蝦有魚。味道不錯吧？

李：啊，這個湯裡面有蝦！_____，我對蝦過敏。

王：我們的電話怎麼不通了？

李：你看，帳單在這兒。你還沒繳電話費，_____。

王：這幾個魚罐頭真便宜啊。

李：快過期了，_____。

難怪我皮膚這麼癢
難怪這麼便宜

難怪被停話
難怪你不跟她說話

8. 難怪我把她看成新娘的媽媽。

No wonder I mistook her for the bride's mother.

Explanation: In the “把NP₁+V-成+NP₂” structure, “成” means “成為”, and ‘NP₁’ becomes ‘NP₂’ after undergoing ‘V’. Some verbs, when used with ‘成’, take on the meaning of “弄錯了”, such as “看”, “聽”, “說”, “寫”, and “念”, and the meaning has to be understood from the context. As it has a disposal function, a connecting “把” is added.

學生：老師，這一題你為什麼要扣我兩分？

老師：你寫錯字了。這裡應該是已經的「已」，你_____，當然要扣分。

王：小姐，你找錯了。這個東西是四十塊還是十四塊？

李：對不起！我_____。

學生：老師，你在笑什麼？「我弟弟是蛋糕做的」，有什麼不對嗎？

老師：對不起！我不該笑你，可是你說錯了。應該是「我弟弟是做蛋糕的」。你_____，意思就差多了。

王：你為什麼問那麼多我媽媽的事？

李：我的戲劇課要寫劇本，我覺得你媽媽是一個很特別的人，我想_____。

王：我這家公司現在還很小，可是很有發展，將來一定是個跨國企業。

李：如果想要_____，可得好好計畫計畫。

把你媽媽的事寫成劇本
把「已」寫成「己」了
把「弟弟做蛋糕」說成「弟弟是蛋糕做的」

把這家小公司發展成跨國企業
把四十想成十四了

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

- () 這兩個人在哪裡說話？
a. 吃喜酒的餐廳 b. 回家的路上 c. 燙頭髮的地方
- () 這兩個人在談什麼？
a. 喝喜酒的情形 b. 現在流行什麼髮型 c. 誰戴的首飾最好看
- () 今天的喜酒怎麼樣？哪個不對？
a. 新娘子很漂亮 b. 菜的味道不錯 c. 新娘的婆婆戴了很多首飾
- () 新娘的婆婆看起來怎麼樣？
a. 她七十多歲了，可是還很年輕
b. 很年輕，很像新郎的姊姊
c. 她六十歲，不太會打扮
- () 客人送的禮怎麼樣？
a. 都不大 b. 都是大禮 c. 不清楚
- () 第一個太太煩惱什麼？
a. 兒子要結婚了，應該給誰喜帖
b. 要送多少錢的紅包
c. 兒子結婚的時候要怎麼打扮

20

Notes

1. “從接到喜帖起，我就開始煩惱要穿什麼去參加婚禮。” means “The moment I received the invitation on the wedding banquet, I started to worry what I should wear to the wedding.” This “就” means “then,” the speaker feeling that it started a long time ago.
2. “美月是我最好的朋友，我一定要打扮得漂漂亮亮的，另外再送一份大禮才對。” means “Meiyue is my best friend, I must dress up nicely (to her wedding). I should give her a big gift as well.” In Chinese society, wedding gifts are usually cash in red envelopes. Chinese people feel

embarrassed about telling others what they need for a new home before their wedding, so their friends and relatives give them money to buy whatever they need themselves.

3. 紅包袋 is a red envelope. As mentioned above, it is used to contain money as a gift to other people. Chinese people believe that money is the most practical gift. When they cannot think of what to give as a gift, they give money. The color red is considered a symbol of joy. A Chinese bride must be dressed in red. Chinese wedding invitations are red. On Chinese New Year's Eve, elders will give 紅包, that is, cash in red envelopes, to youngsters as gifts, hoping the 紅包 will bring good luck to them.
4. “百年好合” means “to be in harmony for a hundred years.” There are other expressions used to congratulate the newly wed, such as “永浴愛河 (yǒng yù' àihé)”, “白頭偕老 (báitóu xiélǎo)”, “天作之合 (tiān zuò zhī hé),” etc. “永浴愛河 (yǒng yù' àihé)” means “to swim in the river of love forever.” “白頭偕老 (báitóu xiélǎo)” means “to get old (silver hair) together.” “天作之合 (tiān zuò zhī hé)” means “It is God's arrangement.”
5. “半路上才想起來忘了擦口紅……” means “I didn't realize that I forgot to wear lipstick until I was halfway there ……” This “才” means “then,” the speaker feeling it is too late.
6. “氣死我了” means “I was angry to death.” It is a bit feminine, therefore men should be aware of this when using it.
7. “……我把她看成新郎的媽媽，還直對她說恭喜呢” means “...I mistook her as the bridegroom's mother, I kept saying congratulations to her.”

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

12月20日 天气 晴

今天和美月结婚的日子。从接到喜帖起，我就开始烦恼要穿什么去参加婚礼。美月是我最好的朋友，我一定要打扮得漂漂亮亮的，另外再送一份大礼才对。

我在红包袋上写了一句祝贺的话「百年好合」，然后选了一件浅蓝色洋装，配了个别针，再穿上平常很少穿的高跟鞋。照照镜子，这身打扮跟我新烫的发型满配的。我就这样出门了。半路上，才想起来忘了擦口红，也忘了带红包，不得不回家拿。气死我了，浪费了好多时间。真不知道我出门的时候在想些什么。不过，总算没迟到。

20

喝喜酒的时候，碰到了以前的同学谢美宜。她认得我，找却不认得她，因为她胖了那么多，又戴了好多首饰，难怪我把她看成新郎的妈妈，还直对她说恭喜呢。真不好意思。

美月结婚了，美宜变胖了，我呢？

Exercises

I. ... must not ...

The teacher tells the students to think about what they least want to happen at what time. The teacher then asks one student “What do you least want to happen at what time?”, and the student gives a reply. The teacher then asks “What did you think at that time? What did you say?”, and the student replies with “……千萬別……”. The teacher then turns to another student for responses.

例如：T: 你最不希望什麼時候發生什麼樣的事？

S: 我最不喜歡洗澡的時候有人打電話來。

T: 這個時候你心裡會想什麼？或你會說什麼？

S: 這個時候千萬不要有人打電話來找我。

II. An embarrassing experience

The students are divided into groups of two and asked to describe an embarrassing experience that they have undergone, why they found it embarrassing, and whether it was their fault. After each student has related at least two such experiences, the groups should make a summary, and either present this to the class, or hand it in to the teacher.

例如：陳台生以為張老師已經結婚了，旁邊那個人就是他太太；可是那個小姐是張老師的妹妹。他把那個小姐看成張老師的太太了。

III. My wish

The students are divided into groups of two and asked to describe their hopes, since when they have had these hopes, and why they have these hopes. The responses from each group are organized and handed in to the teacher.

例如：XXX 的願望是將來要做醫生，幫助有病跟受傷的人。他從十歲起就有這個願望了。因為他媽媽身體不好，常常生病，所以他希望自己是一個醫生，不管什麼時候都可以幫媽媽。

IV. Card story

The teacher writes the following story on cards, one sentence per card. The cards are then distributed evenly among the students. The students are then asked to memorize the sentence on their card(s), and the teacher collects the cards. The students are individually asked to recite the sentence(s) they have memorized, while the others listen carefully. When all sentences have been recited, the students have to try to deduce the first sentence of the story, then the second, and so on, until the story has been pieced together.

故事：

爸爸今年七月就六十歲了。

六十歲是大生日，我當然要送一份大禮。

我從兩個月前就開始煩惱，不知道買什麼禮物才好。
有一天我看到一頂帽子，藍藍綠綠的顏色滿好看的。
我想爸爸出門的時候戴，滿好的，我就買了。
另外我還買了一雙球鞋給他，希望他多運動。
爸爸生日那天，我下了班就趕快開車回家。
我心裡想著今天可千萬不能塞車，要不然我一定會遲到。
誰知道忽然下起雨來了，而且雨越下越大。
大家都不敢開得太快，我也不得不慢慢開。
我想既然這樣，著急也沒有用，反正已經晚了。
就這樣慢慢開了半天，總算到家了。
家裡卻一個人也沒有，我覺得很奇怪。
看了媽媽留給我的紙條，我才知道他們都有事出去了。
啊，難怪家裡沒有人，爸爸的生日不是今天，是下個星期。
我把下個星期三記成這個星期三了。

V. Role play

1. Three people: One acts as the host, and the other two as the guests. The host is a good friend of one of these two guests, who has brought his (her) own good friend who has just arrived from abroad. The second guest does not know this country and its customs. Act out a possible conversation between them.
2. Two people: One acts as the host, and the other as the guest. The host has made a very special dish to eat, but the guest is afraid to eat something so completely new. How can this be expressed to the host? Act out their conversation.
3. Two people: Good friends, one of whom has received a wedding invitation from their best friend. He/she is surprised and wants to talk to someone: he/she thought he/she was the best friend of the person who sent the invitation, and did not expect her/him to marry someone else. Act out the conversation between them.
4. Two people, one female, one male: They are very good friends and are often in touch by telephone, but they haven't seen each other for a long time. Now the man brings a wedding invitation for the woman to attend his wedding. The woman is surprised, not knowing that he had a girlfriend or that he was about to get married. What would they say to each other? Act out their conversation.

Reading Comprehension

媽媽的日記

1999年5月9日

今天是母親節，小女兒特別選在今天訂婚。她說因為有我這樣的好媽媽，她才可以快快樂樂地長大，健健康康地生活，也才能找到一個這麼合適的人結婚。她要在母親節訂婚，好永遠記得。聽她這麼說，我心裡很高興，嘴裡卻說她總算要結婚了，我總算可以不再煩惱了。

小女兒長得很漂亮，個性也很溫和。從她念中學起，我就老是擔心她交男朋友。誰知道一直到她中學畢業，都沒有男孩打電話來過。原來她對那些男生說：「我念大學才要交男朋友，現在別來煩我。」難怪沒人敢來找她。反正她還年輕，我也不必替她著急，就讓她自己決定吧。

今天我幫小女兒打扮好了，看著鏡子裡的新娘，實在很難接受女兒就要結婚了。我雖然不太放心，卻也不得不把女兒交給女婿。女婿打扮起來滿好看的，有人把他看成了電影明星呢。我告訴女婿，千萬要好好照顧我的女兒，要不然他就得小心一點。希望他們將來一切都很好，我這個做媽媽的，才能真的放心啊。

Additional Vocabulary

母親節: Mother's Day

yǒngyuǎn (永遠): ever, for ever

個性 (性): character

中學: middle school

zhǎng (長)大: to grow up

zhǎng (長): to look, to appear

溫和: to be gentle

gǎn (敢): to dare 女xù (婿): son-in-law

Questions:

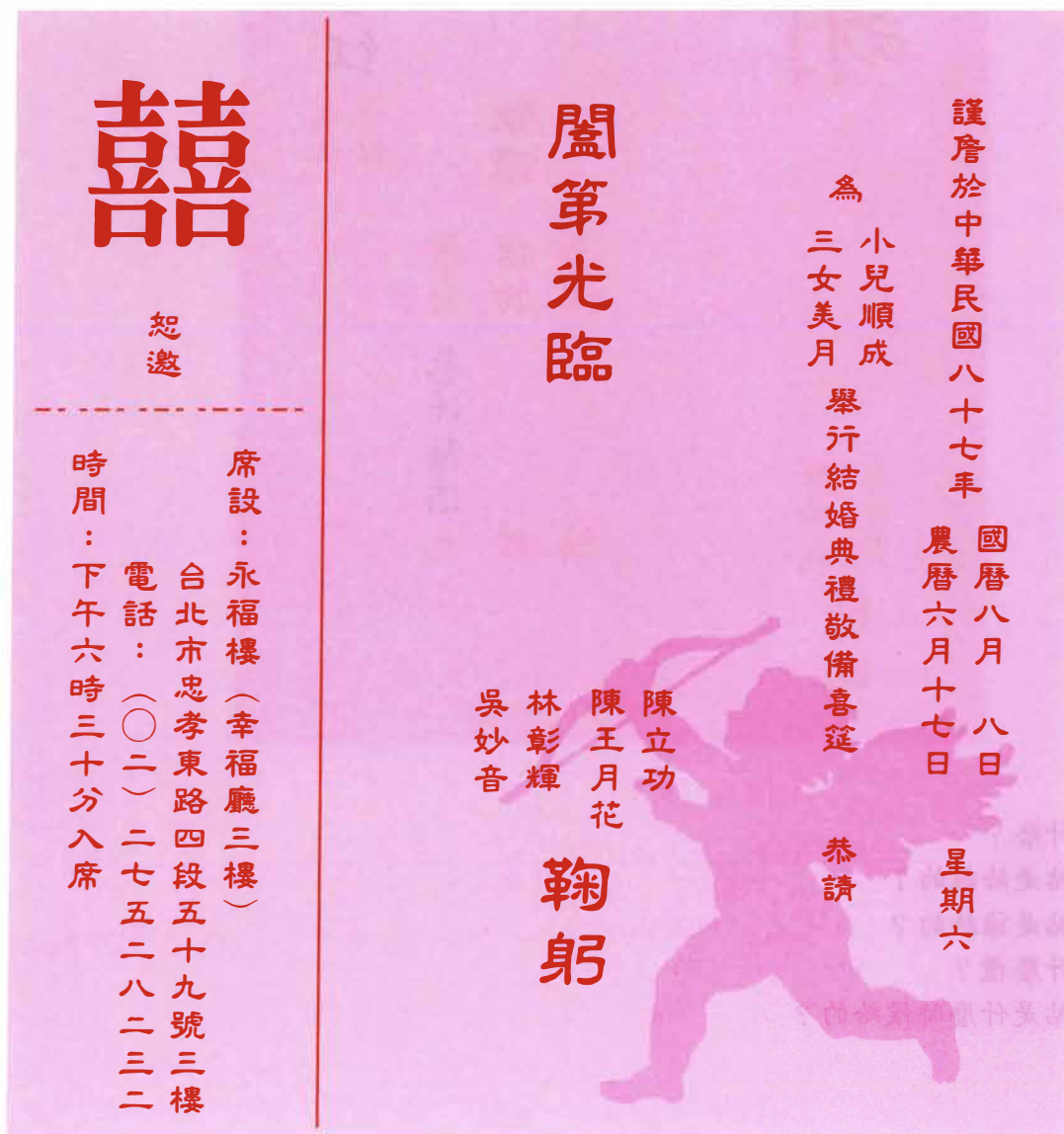
1. 為什麼女兒要在母親節訂婚？
2. 聽了女兒說的話，媽媽覺得怎麼樣？
3. 媽媽什麼時候開始擔心女兒？擔心什麼？
4. 媽媽擔心女兒的事情發生了沒有？
5. 為什麼女兒中學畢業以前，一直沒有男孩打電話來過？
6. 女兒對交男朋友的決定，媽媽覺得怎麼樣？
7. 媽媽看著鏡子裡的女兒，心裡想些什麼？
8. 女婿長得怎麼樣？
9. 媽媽要女婿做什麼？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “破壞” means?
a) to be broken b) to be torn c) to ruin, to sabotage
2. What do you think “形狀” means?
a) shape, form b) state c) position

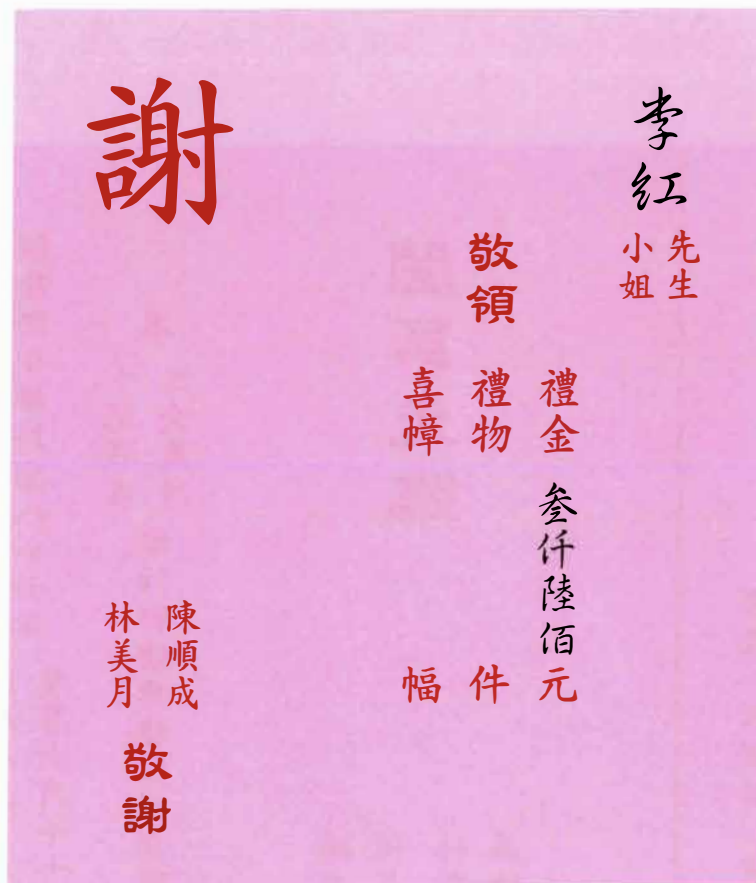
Authentic Materials

I. 結婚喜帖



1. 誰要結婚了？
2. 陳立功跟陳玉月花是什麼人？
3. 結婚典禮在哪一天？
4. 在哪裡吃喜酒？
5. 如果你是客人，你應該幾點去吃喜酒？

II. 謝帖



1. 謝帖是什麼？
2. 這張謝帖是給誰的？
3. 這張謝帖是誰給的？
4. 他送了什麼禮？
5. 你想謝帖是什麼時候給的？

第十一單元 心情不好

Unit 11 Feeling Blue

Key Study Points

Lesson 21: describing emotions / asking about what happened / to blame oneself / comforting / encouraging / regret / warning / explaining further reasoning / gentle disagreement / concluding

Lesson 22: love letters / to blame oneself / to ask for forgiveness / to describe sadness / to resolve misunderstanding / to blame a party at fault / giving praise / expressing regret / making others suffer / second best choices / causal tone / expressing determination

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 21

臉色，精神，經濟學，及格，學期末，
補考，門，用功，怪，緊張，開夜車，
結果，昏，題目，忘光，後悔，難過，
聰明，笨，發生，糟，灰心，對不起，
失望，了解，信心，再說，失敗，
並，表示，永遠，繼續，嚴格，想開，
自責，幫助

再……就……(了)
怎麼回事
結果
V-光
V得/不起
再說
並不/沒
說來說去

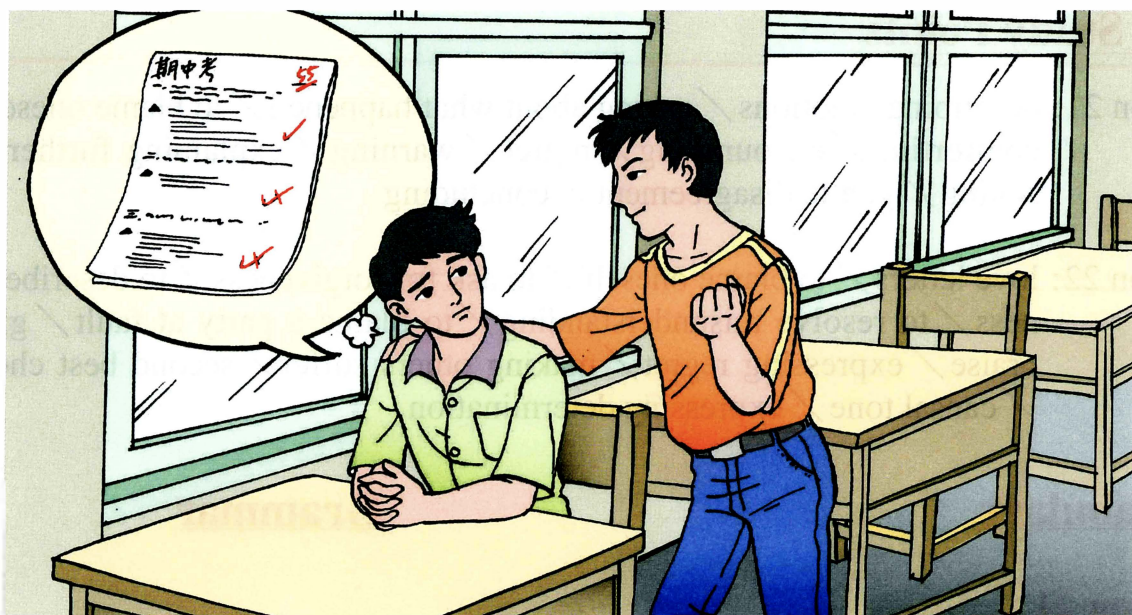
Lesson 22

情書，親愛的，寂寞，吃不下，段，
長不大，亂，發脾氣，吵架，害，
傷心，理，寧願，受氣，讓，原諒，
開會，公事，私事，之間，相信，騙，
神經病，疑神疑鬼，解釋，氣跑，敢，
保證，分手，失戀，和好，甜言蜜語，
明白，真心，求

吃不下飯
多麼SV
長不大
早知道……就……
害
寧願……也
讓
再也不……了

第二十一課 唉！考試沒考好

Lesson 21 Alas! I Didn't Do Well on the Test



金水：你怎麼了？臉色這麼難看，一點精神也沒有。

家明：今天考經濟學，我只考了五十五分，不及格¹，好丟臉。

下次再考不好，學期末恐怕就要補考了。²

金水：怎麼一回事？這門課很難嗎？還是你不够用功？

家明：都怪我太緊張了。因為我怕考不好，開了兩天夜車，結果，考試的時候，頭昏昏的，題目都看不懂，什麼都忘光了。我真後悔開夜車。

金水：別難過，你這麼聰明的人，只要以後考前不開夜車，這種事情就不會再發生了。³

家明：唉！一想到我這麼用功，卻考得這麼糟，就非常灰心。我真對不起我父母，⁴現在他們一定對我很失望。

金水：你的心情，我了解。你別這樣，對自己要有信心。再說，一次失敗並不表示永遠失敗。我剛剛不是說了嗎？只要你繼續用功，不開夜車，一定不會有問題的。

家明：說來說去，都是我太在乎了。

金水：你對自己太嚴格了。想開一點。自責對事情沒有幫助。走，走，走，我帶你去KTV唱唱歌，輕鬆一下。

家明：好吧，我聽你的。⁵

Vocabulary

1. 臉色 liǎnsè N: face, complexion

- 1) 你的臉色好白，是不是不舒服？
 - 2) 老闆的臉色很難看，在跟誰生氣？
- 1) Your face is very pale. Are you all right?
- 2) The boss has an upset expression on his face. Whom is he angry with?

臉 liǎn N: face (M: 張)

小陳怎麼了？為什麼把臉拉得那麼長？生什麼氣啊？

What is wrong with Little Chen? Why does he pull a long face? What is he angry at?

丟臉 diū/liǎn SV/VO: to be embarrassed/to lose face

- 1) 我兒子跟我去喝喜酒的時候，穿得太隨便，別人都看我們。我覺得好丟臉。
 - 2) 我兒子真丟我的臉，因為他在學校吸毒。
- 1) When my son went to the wedding banquet with me, he was dressed very casually. Everyone was looking at us. I thought it was very embarrassing.
- 2) My son really embarrasses me, because he takes drugs in school.

2. 精神 jīngshén N: spirit, energy (M: gǔ 股 gust)

- 1) 我昨天只睡了四個小時，今天做什麼都沒有精神。
 - 2) 我哥哥對籃球非常有興趣，一說到籃球，他的精神就來了。
- 1) I only slept four hours yesterday, and today I don't have the energy to do anything.
- 2) My brother is very interested in basketball. He perks up whenever it is mentioned.

3. 經濟學 jīngjìxué N: economics

經濟 jīngjì SV/N: to be economical/economy

- 1) 坐計程車雖然比較貴，可是可以少用很多時間，時間上比較經濟。
- 2) 日本的經濟情形不錯，很多貿易公司的業務發展得很快。

- 1) While it's more expensive to take a taxi, it can save a lot of time, so it's more economical in terms of time.
- 2) Japan has a healthy economy, and many of their trading companies are developing rapidly.

4. 及格 jǐgé V: to make the grade, to pass the exam

這次考試，我只考了五十分，不及格。

In this test, I only got 50 and failed.

5. 學期末 xuéqīmò N: end of term; end of semester

期末考 qīmòkǎo N: end-of-term exam; final exam

現在是學期末，下個星期就要期末考了。你開始準備了嗎？

It is now the end of the term, and the final exam is next week. Have you begun to prepare for it?

6. 補考 bǔkǎo V: to make up a test

王老師，上次考試的時候我生病請假沒來，不知道我可不可以補考？

Mr. Wang, I didn't take the test last time because I was away sick. Can I make it up?

7. 門 mén M: class, for course

8. 用功 yònggōng SV: studious, keen

小陳很用功，每天念書念到十二點。

Little Chen is very studious, and studies until twelve o'clock every night.

功課 gōngkè N: homework, school work (M: 門)

- 1) 老師說今天的功課是寫字，每一個字寫十遍，明天上課的時候要交給他。

- 2) 小陳很用功，所以功課很好，每門課都考九十分。

- 1) The teacher said today's homework is to practice writing characters: each character ten times. We have to hand it in in class tomorrow.

- 2) Little Chen is very studious, so his work in school is very good, and he gets at least 90 in every course.

作業 zuòyè N: school assignment

9. 怪 guài V: to blame

我們來不及去機場了，都怪你起得太晚，現在怎麼辦？

We won't get to the airport on time. It's your fault for getting up so late. What are we going to do now?

10. 緊張 jǐnzhāng SV: to be nervous

每次我兒子參加比賽，他都緊張得不想吃東西。

Whenever my son enters a competition, he is always too nervous to eat.

緊 jǐn SV: to be tight

我胖了，難怪衣服都緊了。

I've gotten fat. No wonder my clothes are all tight.

11. 開夜車 kāi//yèchē VO: to burn the midnight oil (work until late)

明天要交報告了，可是我只寫了一半，今天晚上一定要開夜車了。

I have to hand in the report tomorrow, but I've only written half. I'll have to burn the midnight oil tonight.

12. 結果 jiéguǒ Adv/N: in the end; result (M: 種、個)

1) 小王說他要來，我們就等他。可是我們等了半天，結果他沒來，不知道他怎麼了。

2) 你應徵祕書的事，什麼時候會知道結果？

1) Little Wang said he was coming, so we waited for him. We waited for hours, but he didn't turn up in the end. I wonder what happened to him.

2) When will you know the results of your responding to the ad for the secretarial job?

13. 昏 hūn SV: to be muddled; confused

你說的事情這麼複雜，我越聽頭越昏，我不想聽了。

What you are talking about is so complicated that the more I hear the more confused I get. I don't want to listen any more.

14. 題目 tí mù N: topic; subject; question (M: 道)

題 tí M: question; topic (M: 道)

今天考試的題目都不太難，只有最後一題難一點。

Today's test topics were not too difficult. Only the last one was a bit hard.

15. 忘光 wàngguāng RC: to forget completely

我幾年沒說法文，從前學的都忘光了，現在一句法文都不會說了。

I haven't spoken French in years, and I've completely forgotten all I learned. Now I can't speak a word of French.

16. 後悔 hòuhuǐ V: to regret

我昨天把兒子罵哭了，現在覺得很後悔。我應該好好跟他說，不應該罵他。

Yesterday I yelled at my son until he cried; today I thoroughly regret it. I should have talked to him nicely. I shouldn't have scolded him.

17. 難過 nánguò SV: to be sad; to be feeling bad

1) 我沒有做錯事，可是老闆罵我，所以我心裡很難過。

2) 我頭痛、喉嚨也痛，難過得什麼都不想做。

1) I didn't do anything wrong, but the boss told me off, so I'm really sad.

2) My head hurts, my throat also hurts, and I am feeling too bad to do anything.

18. 聰明 cōngmíng SV: to be intelligent; bright; smart

小陳真聰明，學什麼都一學就會，學得又快又好。

Little Chen is really smart. He learns instantly, both fast and thoroughly.

*19. 笨 bèn SV: stupid

我覺得自己笨，你比我更笨，這麼簡單的事還弄不清楚。

I'm stupid, but you're even more stupid than I am. How can you not understand something so simple?

20. 發生 fāshēng V: to happen, occur

為什麼救護車在我家門口？發生了什麼事？

Why is there an ambulance outside my house? What has happened?

21. 糟 zāo SV: to be awful

我的英文很糟，美國人說話我都聽不懂，沒有辦法跟他們說話。

My English is awful. I can't understand anything Americans say, and I can't say anything to them.

22. 灰心 huīxīn V: to depress

小陳這次籃球賽輸了，很灰心，不想再打籃球了。

When they lost the basketball game, Little Chen was very depressed, and now he doesn't want to play basketball ever again.

灰色 huīsè N: gray

1) 我住的地方房子、路都是灰色的，真不好看。

2) 我昨天看了一部灰色的電影，看完以後心情很不好。

1) Where I live, the houses and the road are both gray; it's really ugly.

2) I saw a sad movie yesterday, and I was very miserable afterwards.

23. 對不起 duìbùqǐ RC: sorry (to be unable to face)

你昨天跟王小姐去看電影了，你沒讓女朋友知道。你不覺得對不起她嗎？

You went to see a movie with Ms. Wang yesterday, and didn't let your girlfriend know. Do you feel you can face her?

24. 失望 shīwàng V: to disappoint

兒子對這次比賽抱著很大的希望，結果沒得獎。他很失望。

Our son had great hopes in this competition, but in the end, he didn't win a prize. He's very disappointed.

25. 了解 liǎojiě V: to understand

老王的事情很複雜，他說了半天，我才了解。

Old Wang's case is very complicated. It took me hours to understand the situation.

26. 信心 xìnxīn N: confidence

我對你有信心，你一定會贏。

I have confidence in you, and I'm sure you'll win.

27. 再說 zàishuō Adv: moreover, besides

這個房子離學校遠了一點，再說房租也不便宜，我們不要租吧。

This house is far from the school and, besides, the rent is quite high. I don't want to rent it.

28. 失敗 shībài N/V/SV: fail/to fail/to be a failure

張老師發現自己的孩子吸毒，覺得自己做媽媽很失敗。

When Teacher Zhang found out that her children had taken drugs, she felt she was a failure as a mother.

成功 chénggōng N/V/SV: success/to succeed/to be a success

1) 失敗為成功之母。

2) 王小姐很漂亮，喜歡她的人很多。小張也想請她出去玩，約了幾次都沒成功。

1) Failure is the mother of success.

2) Ms. Wang was very pretty, and many people liked her. Little Zhang wanted to ask her out, but each time had no success.

29. 並 bìng Adv: at all; really

1) 今天並不冷，你怎麼穿了這麼多衣服？

2) 你別哭，老闆並沒有罵你，他只是希望你下次注意一點。

1) It is not at all cold today; how come you're wearing so many layers of clothing?

2) Don't cry. The boss really wasn't telling you off. He just wants you to be more careful next time.

30. 表示 biǎoshì V: to express; mean

我去問小陳要不要參加，他要是沒說什麼，那就表示他可以參加。

I'm going to ask Little Chen if he wants to go. If he doesn't say anything, that means he can go.

31. 永遠 yǒngyuǎn Adv/Att: always/ever; forever

1) 不管將來發生什麼事，我會永遠記得我們今天說的話。

2) 我喜歡看書，書是我永遠的朋友。

1) No matter what happens in the future, I will always remember what we said today.

2) I like reading, and books are my friends forever.

32. 繼續 jìxù V: to continue; to resume

我們今天就說到這裡。下課啦，明天再繼續說。

We'll finish here for today. Class is over. We'll continue tomorrow.

33. 嚴格 yángé SV: to be strict

我們家的孩子都很安靜，因為我父母太嚴格了，不讓我們隨便說話、做事。

The children in my family are very quiet, because our parents were very strict, and would not let us say or do what we wanted.

嚴 yán SV: to be strict

我的老師很嚴，功課很多，每個星期考試。

My teacher is very strict; she gives us a lot of homework and a test every week.

34. 想開 xiǎngkāi RC: to get over something

女朋友跟別人結婚了沒關係，世界上還有別的女孩子。你這麼想不開，整天在家難過，對身體不好。出去走走吧。

It doesn't matter that your girlfriend married someone else. There are other girls out there. You can't seem to get over it, and you stay at home all day being sad. It's not good for you. You should get out and about.

35. 自責 zìzé V: to blame oneself

你不要自責，車禍受傷的人已經出院回家了。再說，這次車禍也不完全是你的錯。

Don't blame yourself — the person injured in the car crash has already returned home from the hospital. Besides, the accident wasn't entirely your fault.

36. 幫助 bāngzhù N/V: assistance/to help; assist; help

1) 太太，我要謝謝你。這些年如果沒有你的幫助，我的公司一定不會發展得這麼好。

2) 小陳是我們的同事，他有問題，我們應該幫助他。

1) Wife, I want to thank you. Without your help these past years, my company would certainly never have grown so well.

2) Little Chen is our co-worker. If he has a problem, we should help him.

Grammar

1. 下次再考不好，學期末恐怕就要補考了。

If I fail the next test, I may have to take a make-up test at the end of the semester.

Explanation: This “再” means “還 still.” The meaning of “再……就……(了)” is as follows: the situation following “再”, for most of the cases, is what the speaker wants not to happen; if it does, then what follows “就” will be the result. The “再” may sometimes be followed by the negative “不”. If what follows the “就” is an action to be taken, then no “了” is required, but a “了” is required if the “就” is followed by a change of state.

王：你別催我，我還沒決定要不要買你的舊電腦。

李：趕快決定吧。你_____。

太太：(一直哭) 這個電影裡面的女主角好可 lián(憐)啊。

先生：好了，別哭了，好不好？你_____。

妹妹：這個蛋糕好好吃，再給我一塊。

姊姊：夠啦！你這麼胖，不能再吃啦。你_____。

王：你還在等男朋友的電話啊？

李：對啊，我等累了，他_____。

再哭，我不管你了
再不打來，我就不等了

再不決定，我就賣給別人了
你再吃，就買不到衣服穿了

Additional Vocabulary

可 lián(憐): deserving pity; pathetic

2. 怎麼一回事？這門課很難嗎？

What's the problem? Is this class really difficult?

Explanation: “怎麼一回事” means “發生了什麼事？怎麼會這樣？”. The speaker thinks that

the situation is not normal or ordinary, and uses this phrase to ask the reason or cause of the situation.

王：電腦怎麼了？你為什麼一直敲？

李：_____，剛才還很好，現在都不動了。

王：你是不是按了什麼不該按的東西？

學生：老師好。

老師：怎麼只有你一個人？

學生：_____，別的人都請假了嗎？

孩子：媽媽，你等一下再進來。我收一下房間。

媽媽：_____？我今天早上才收過的啊。

孩子：我剛剛在找東西，東西都弄 luàn(亂)了。

王：我要回家睡覺了，你們自己去KTV吧。

李：_____？不是說好了一起去的嗎？

王：不知道為什麼，頭忽然痛起來了。

Additional Vocabulary

luàn(亂): messy; chaotic

3. 我怕考不好，開了兩天夜車。結果，考試的時候頭昏昏的，題目都看不懂。

I was afraid I would fail, so I burned the midnight oil for two days. When it came to the test, I felt woozy and didn't understand the questions.

Explanation: When “結果” is used as an adverb, it means “事物最後的情狀”. The phrase following “結果” describes the situation arising as a result of the situation in the phrase preceding “結果”. This is generally used to describe a result different from what was expected.

王：怎麼回事？小陳跟老林怎麼打起來了？

李：他們兩個談業務發展計畫，因為意見不同，誰都不願意讓，

_____。

媽媽：我要你幫我洗衣服，怎麼白的都變成紅的了？

女兒：我想把衣服放在一起洗，可以快一點洗好，_____。怎麼辦？

王：李紅要結婚了！她是我們幾個裡面第一個結婚的。奇怪，她不是說她不

想結婚嗎？

李：對啊！她以前說她怕結婚，_____。

王：那個車禍受傷的司機現在怎麼樣了？

李：送到醫院去以後，醫生馬上給他開刀急救，_____。

結果就打起來

結果還是死了

結果就這樣了

結果卻是我們幾個裡面第一個結婚的

4. 考試的時候……題目都看不懂，什麼都忘光了。

When it comes to the test, ... don't understand the questions and forget everything.

Explanation: The “光” in the “V 光” structure expresses the completion of the verb; it means “完”，“盡”，or “一點不剩”。 “V 光” only expresses completion, not potential. It can be used with “把”. Among the verbs studied so far, those that can be used in this structure are, for example: “吃”，“喝”，“用”，“賣”，“搬”，“走”，“拿”，“燒”，and “死”，etc.

王：老闆，給我一盤炒米粉。

李：對不起！今天吃炒米粉的人多，所以已經_____。你吃別的吧。

姊姊：我買了三塊蛋糕，怎麼都沒了？

弟弟：噢，蛋糕太好吃了，被我_____。

王：小李，你在叫什麼？

李：我在洗手間，這裡面的紙被_____。你幫我拿一包來，好不好？

王：今天客人好多，好累啊！還有客人沒走嗎？

李：客人都_____。我們總算可以休息了。

5. 我真對不起我父母，現在他們一定對我很失望。

I have really let my parents down. They must be very disappointed in me now.

Explanation: “V 得/不起” expresses the potential result of the verb; it cannot express completion. The “起” at the end of the phrase indicates either : a) the ability / inability to reach some form of ethical judgement—this kind of potential result includes “對得/不起”，“看得/不起”，and others; or b) the possession/lack of economic resources to perform the action—this kind of potential result includes “買得/不起”，“吃得/不起”，“住得/不起”，“穿得/不起”，“看得/不起”，“喝得/不起”，“坐得/不起”，“用得/不起”，and others.

a) 媽媽：你姊姊怎麼了？她在氣什麼？

弟弟：我把她的照相機弄壞了。我昨天買了一個péi(賠)她。我覺得已經
_____她了，不知道她為什麼還生氣。

王：張經理說話為什麼那麼不客氣？

李：他每次都這樣。他覺得我們都沒有他聰明，所以他_____我們。

王：怎麼大家都拉肚子了？我們吃的東西有問題嗎？

李：我想起來了。我做飯的時候發現蝦不很新鮮。我以為沒關係，沒想到
你們會拉肚子。我覺得真_____大家。

王：小李，你教我女兒英文，好不好？

李：我的英文還不夠好，不能教你女兒，你太_____我了。

Additional Vocabulary

péi(賠): to compensate

b) 王：小李，這次俄國芭蕾舞團的票你買了沒有？

李：沒有。我很想看，可是聽說一張票要三千塊。這麼貴的表演我
_____，所以這次看不成了。

王：我要去花蓮旅行，你給我介紹一個便宜的旅館，好不好？

李：你去住青年活動中心吧！很便宜，你一定_____。

王：你要不要買車？

李：想買，可是我的錢不多。好車都那麼貴，我_____。

王：學校對面那家店很有名。他們的蛋糕很好吃，你吃過沒有？

李：沒有。一塊蛋糕一百塊。那麼貴，我怎麼_____？

6. 對自己要有信心。再說，一次失敗並不表示永遠失敗。

You should have confidence in yourself. Moreover, just because you fail once doesn't mean you'll always fail.

Explanation: “再說” means “更進一層”, or “而且”. The two phrases, one preceding and one following “再說”, are the reasons for the conclusion. Compared with “而且”: the two phrases which “而且” links are of roughly equal importance, but the phrase following “再說” is what the speaker is trying to bring to the attention of the listener(s), and is the major reason for the conclusion.

王：你看，我們要不要租這個房子？

李：這裡離學校遠了一點。再說，_____。我想我們不要租了吧。

王：明天是老陳八十歲生日。·Wa(哇)！我們認識快五十年了。

李：八十歲是大生日。再說，_____，一定得送份大禮才行。

王：雖然醫生說我是過敏，吃吃藥就會好的，可是我全身癢得不得了。我還是很擔心好不了。

李：你只是過敏。再說，_____，你就別擔心了。

王：小陳快四十歲了，下個月總算要結婚了。

李：小陳人很好。再說，_____，應該結婚了。

我們又是多年的老朋友
房租也不便宜

醫生也說沒關係
他也四十歲了

Additional Vocabulary

·wa(哇): wow

7. 一次失敗並不表示永遠失敗。

Failing once doesn't mean you'll always fail.

Explanation: “並不/沒” is used to emphasize a negative. It shows the distinction between the actual situation and what was expected.

王：你的日文聽起來沒什麼口音。你一定學了很久吧。

李：我_____，只學了幾個星期。

王：大家都說這部愛情文藝片好看。我們租回家看，好不好？

李：我看過了。這部電影_____。別租這部了。租別的吧。

王：這裡的冬天也跟現在一樣舒服嗎？

李：這裡的冬天_____，常常溫度很低，很冷。

王：我們都知道小林喜歡陳小姐，可是聽說他要跟張小姐結婚。這是怎麼回事？

李：我不知道。奇怪，小林_____，怎麼會跟她結婚呢？

8. 說來說去，都是我太在乎了。

All this is just talk. I care too much about it.

Explanation: “V 來 V 去” cannot be followed by an object. It is used to emphasize a repetitive action. “V 來 V 去” has two meanings, according to the verb with which it is used: a) continuous movement between two places, or b) after a certain action has been repeated, the speaker is struck by a feeling or impression.

王：趙奇在跨國企業工作，有時候飛到美洲，有時候飛到歐洲。要跟他見面真難。

李：就是嘛。他這樣_____，我們幾個老朋友要見個面，吃個飯，都不容易。

媽媽：你在找什麼啊？一下子翻書包，一下子翻桌上的東西。

孩子：我_____都找不到我的手 biǎo(錶)。你幫我找找，好不好？

王：你喜歡聽王非的歌，還是喜歡聽李文的歌？

李：我聽過很多歌星的歌。_____，還是覺得王非的歌比較好聽，你呢？

弟弟：媽媽的生日快到了，你想我們送她什麼禮物好？

哥哥：我想了很久，_____覺得送她一個皮包最合適。

Additional Vocabulary

手 biǎo(錶): wrist watch

皮包: wallet; purse

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

() 這兩個人在哪裡說話？

a. 辦公室

b. 啤酒屋

c. 大學

() 這兩個人在談什麼？

a. 小姐被經理罵的事

b. 經理罵別的同事的事

c. 先生被經理罵的事

() 經理為什麼罵人？

a. 報告上的數字打錯了

b. 被罵的人經濟學沒念好

c. 簽約對方出的價錢太低

- () 這個人為什麼做錯了事？
- a. 經濟學沒念好 b. 他在想別的事情 c. 開夜車，頭昏昏的
- () 被經理罵了以後，這個人覺得怎麼樣？
- a. 自己只是不小心，經理太嚴格了
- b. 自己錯了，所以很灰心
- c. 經理罵的不對，所以對自己很有信心
- () 小姐覺得怎麼樣？
- a. 自責沒有用，對自己要有信心
- b. 想開一點，反正已經錯了
- c. 去啤酒屋喝酒，經理就會忘了這件事

Notes

1. “及格” means “to pass an examination.” In Taiwan, the score of sixty is considered passing.
2. “下次再考不好，學期末恐怕就要補考了。” means “(If I) get a bad grade again next time, I’m afraid that I would have to take a make-up exam at the end of the semester.” In Taiwan, most schools would give students who have grades under sixty points but above fifty points a chance to take a make-up exam. If they can make it to sixty points, the course can be considered passed. In most colleges, there are no make-up exams if a student has grades under sixty for half of his/her courses.
3. “這種事情就不會再發生了” means “Things like this will not happen again.” This “了” indicates the change of status—it will stop happening, it will be different.
4. “……考得這麼糟，……我真對不起我父母” means “...I had such a bad grade...I really cannot face my parents.” The primary expectation from Chinese parents towards their children is that they study hard to get good grades. That is why in the text 家明 feels that he cannot face his parents.
5. “好吧，我聽你的。” means “Okay, I’ll do as you say.” Literally, it means “Okay, I’ll listen to what you say.” The complete sentence should be “好吧，我聽你的話。” the “話” is omitted.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

金水：你怎么了？脸色这么难看，一点精神也没有。

家明：今天考经济学，我只考了五十五分，不及格，好丢脸。下次再考不好，学期末恐怕就要补考了。

金水：怎么一回事？这门课很难吗？还是你不够用功？

家明：都怪我太紧张了。因为我怕考不好，开了两天夜车，结果，考试的时候，头昏昏的，题目都看不懂，什么都忘光了。我真后悔开夜车。

金水：别难过，你这么聪明的人，只要以后考前不开夜车，这种事情就不会再发生了。

家明：唉！一想到我这么用功，却考得这么糟，就非常灰心。我真对不起我父母，现在他们一定对我很失望。

金水：你的心情，我了解。你别这样，对自己要有信心。再说，一次失败并不表示永远失败。我刚刚不是说了吗？只要你继续用功，不开夜车，一定不会有问题的。

家明：说来说去，都是我太在乎了。

金水：你對自己太严格了。想开一点。自责对事情没有帮助。走，走，走，我带你去KTV唱唱歌，轻松一下。

家明：好吧，我听你的。

第二十二課 寫情書

Lesson 22 Writing a Love Letter



親愛的書宜：

一個星期沒看見你了¹，非常寂寞。我每天都吃不下飯，睡不著覺，整天想的都是我們在一起有多麼快樂。所以這幾天我一直怪自己，像個長不大的孩子，亂發脾氣。早知道我就不該跟你吵架，害你這麼傷心，還氣得整整一個星期都不理我。我愛你，我希望你快樂，寧願自己受氣，也不該讓你傷心、難過。一切都是我的錯，你能原諒我嗎？

你那天看見的那個女的是我的同事²，我們剛開完會，在談公事。我們之間不是你想的那樣，請你一定要相信我，我沒有騙你。當然，我不應該罵你「神經病」、「疑神疑鬼」。我應該有耐心一點，慢慢跟你解釋，才不會把你氣跑。³我下次不敢了。⁴我保證以後再也不會發生這樣的事情了。你原諒我，我們不要分手，不要讓我失戀，好不好？只要你願意跟我和好，要我做什麼都可以。

我打了好多次電話，你都不接，我只好寫信給你。我不會說甜言蜜語，只希望你明白我的一片真心。求求你，趕快給我打電話。

求你原諒的
家明



Vocabulary

1. 情書 qíngshū N: love letter (M: 封)

小王的女朋友出國念書去了，小王就每天寫一封情書給女朋友。

Little Wang's girlfriend went to study abroad, so he wrote his girlfriend a love letter every day.

情人 qíng rén N: lover (M: 個)

2. 親愛的 qīn'ài-de Att: dear; darling

中國人平常說話的時候不說「親愛的」，只有寫信的時候可能會用。

Chinese people seldom speak the word "dear"; it is only used sometimes when writing letters.

親 qīn SV/V: to be close to/to kiss

1) 我跟媽媽很親，我有什麼事都跟媽媽說。

2) 孩子睡著了，媽媽在孩子臉上親了一下，就出去了。

1) I am very close to my mom. I tell her whenever I have a problem.

2) When the child fell asleep, the mother kissed its face, and then left the room.

父親 fùqīn N: father

母親 mǔqīn N: mother

3. 寂寞 jìmò SV: to be lonely

小陳覺得別人都不懂他心裡想些什麼，他覺得很寂寞。

Little Chen thinks nobody understands his feelings, and is very lonely.

4. 吃不下 chībúxià RC: to be unable to eat

我吃飽了，吃不下了。

I'm full. I can't eat any more.

5. 段 duàn M: section; paragraph

王老師，書裡面有一段話我看不懂，你能不能幫我？

Mr. Wang, there's a section in the book that I don't understand. Can you help me with it?

6. 長不大 zhǎngbúdà RC: to not be able to grow big

小王買的這種樹長不大，養幾年都一樣高。

A tree like Little Wang bought won't grow big; keep it for years and it'll stay the same height.

長 zhǎng V: to look, appear

王太太的女兒長得很漂亮，我想把她介紹給老李的兒子。

Mrs. Wang's daughter looks very pretty; I'd like to introduce her to Old Li's son.

7. 亂 luàn SV/Adv/RE: to be messy/chaotic/to be chaotic

- 1) 小張，你的房間怎麼這麼亂？桌上、地上都是你的衣服，你應該整理一下吧。
 - 2) 媽媽常說東西要放在一定的地方，不可以亂放，要不然下次要用的時候找不到。
 - 3) 風怎麼這麼大？把我的頭髮都吹亂了。
- 1) Little Zhang, how come your room is so messy? Your clothes are all over the table and the floor. You should tidy things up a bit.
 - 2) Mom says all things belong in their place, not just anywhere, otherwise next time you want to use them, you won't be able to find them.
 - 3) How come the wind is so strong? It's blowing my hair everywhere.

8. 發脾氣 fā//píqì VO: to get angry

我知道你心情不好，可是寄錯信不是張祕書的錯，你不應該發這麼大脾氣罵她。

I know you're upset, but sending the wrong letter was not Ms. Zhang's mistake. And you should not get so angry and yell at her.

發 fā V: to give out; break out

- 1) 爸爸剛出院，身體還很差。弟弟，我們要小心一點，要不然他很容易再發病。
 - 2) 老闆說這個月的薪水要晚一天發，你知道為什麼嗎？
- 1) Dad is just out of the hospital, but he's not well yet. Brother, we have to be careful, or he'll get ill again in no time.
 - 2) The boss says that pay will be given out one day late this month; do you know why?

脾氣 píqì N: temper

我爸爸的脾氣很壞，一點小事不高興就罵人。

My dad has a lousy temper; if he is upset by anything, he starts to yell at people.

9. 吵架 chǎo//jià VO: to argue

小林跟小張因為意見不合，說話越來越大聲，別人都跑過來看他們為什麼吵架。

Little Lin and Little Zhang had a difference of opinion, and their voices grew louder and louder; all the others came running over to see why they were arguing.

打架 dǎ//jià VO: to fight

哥哥不讓弟弟看電視，兩個人就打了起來，打完架以後才發現兩個人都受傷了。

The elder brother wouldn't let his younger brother watch television, and so they started fighting. Only after they had finished was it found that they had both been injured.

10. 害 hài V: to harm, cause someone to come to harm

小王不小心碰到我，害我把手裡的湯打翻了，手也燙傷了。

Little Wang bumped into me by mistake, and made me tip over the bowl of soup in my hand, and my hand got burnt.

11. 傷心 shāng//xīn SV/VO: to have hurt feelings/hurt someone's feelings

1) 男朋友跟別人結婚了，我傷心得一直哭。

2) 小張出國以後，從來不跟父母聯絡。這樣做很傷父母的心。

1) My boyfriend went off and married someone else; I was so hurt I couldn't stop crying.

2) When Little Zhang went abroad, he never got in touch with his parents, and really hurt their feelings.

12. 理 ĭ V: to pay attention to

你讓妹妹哭，別理她！過一會兒她就好了。

Let your little sister cry. Leave her alone, she'll be fine in a while.

13. 寧願 níngyuàn V: to prefer to/would rather

小張看不起我，我寧願餓死，也不願跟他借錢。

Little Zhang looks down on me. I'd rather die of hunger than borrow money from him.

14. 受氣 shòu//qì VO: to receive someone's anger

老闆有一點小事就罵人。我不想每天受他的氣，就決定換工作。

The boss tells people off over the smallest things. I didn't want to be the butt of his anger every day, so I decided to change jobs.

15. 讓 ràng CV: to make; allow; let

小王罵我笨，讓我很生氣，很想打他。

Little Wang yelled at me and called me stupid, which made me very angry, and I really wanted to hit him.

16. 原諒 yuánliàng V: to forgive

我先生在外面有了女朋友，被我發現以後，要我原諒他。我想我忘不了這件事情。我怎麼能原諒他呢？

My husband had a girlfriend on the side. When I found out, he wanted me to forgive him. I think I won't be able to forget this. How can I forgive him?

17. 開會 kāi//huì VO: to hold a meeting

爸爸說他下午要去開一個會。你知道他的會幾點鐘開完嗎？

Dad said he was going to hold a meeting this afternoon. Do you know what time he'll be finished?

18. 公事 gōngshì N: business matter (M: 件)

*19. 私事 sīshì N: private matter (M: 件)

每個人都應該把公事、私事分清楚，上班的時候不要做自己的事。

Everybody should separate business and private matters clearly, and not handle their own matters at work.

20. 之間 zhījiān N: (in) between

美國跟日本之間有貿易的問題，美國人覺得日本人應該多買一些美國的東西。

There's a trade problem between the USA and Japan; the Americans feel that Japan should buy more American goods.

21. 相信 xiāngxìn V: to believe

小陳從來不說真話，他的話你千萬不能相信。

Little Chen never tells the truth; don't believe a word he says.

22. 騙 piàn V: to cheat, lie

小張功課沒寫完，可是他怕老師罵，就騙老師說他寫完了。

Little Zhang didn't finish his homework, but was afraid of being told off by the teacher, so he lied and said that he had finished it.

騙子 piàn·zi N: liar, cheat (M: 個)

小王是一個愛情騙子，從前騙過很多女孩子。

Little Wang is a cheat when it comes to love; he's cheated lots of girls before.

23. 神經病 shénjīngbìng N: to be mentally ill, crazy (M: 個)

王：小姐，你好像我的女朋友。我請你去吃飯，怎麼樣？

李：你神經病啊！我不認識你啊。

Wang : Miss, you look like my girlfriend. May I ask you to dinner?

Li : You must be crazy! I've never met you before.

神經 shénjīng N: nerve (M: 根)

孩子小的時候，我每天神經都很緊張，就怕孩子碰到了、傷到了。現在他們都大了，我可以輕鬆了。

When the children were small, I was nervous every day, worried that they might be hit and hurt. Now that they've grown up, I can relax.

發神經 fā/shénjīng VO: to go crazy

媽，你快來看，哥哥在發什麼神經？他一直用手打自己的頭。

Mom, come quick and look, is Brother going crazy? He keeps on punching himself on the head.

24. 疑神疑鬼 yí shén yí guǐ IE: to have unnecessary suspicions; paranoid

我太太整天疑神疑鬼，我去哪裡都要問得很清楚，她說我在外面有女朋友。

My wife is really suspicious. Every day she asks me in detail where I've been. She says I have a girlfriend on the side.

神 shén N: spirit (M: 位、個)

很多中國人相信山有山神，海有海神，火有火神。他們會在特別的日子拜神。

Many Chinese believe that there are spirits in the mountains, in the seas, and in fire. On special days they make offerings to them.

鬼 guǐ N: ghost (M: 個)

中國人想鬼的世界跟人的世界一樣，所以會燒一種紙錢給已經死了的家人，讓他們在另外一個世界也有錢用。

Chinese believe that the world of ghosts is the same as that of humans. That's why they burn a kind of paper money for their dead family members, so they have money to use in the other world.

25. 解釋 jiěshì V/N: to explain; resolve/explanation

- 1) 「結果」的意思，老師解釋了半天，我還是不清楚怎麼用。
- 2) 小張解釋為什麼分給我的錢比較少。我聽了半天，他的解釋我還是不能接受。

- 1) The teacher explained the meaning of “結果” half the day and I still do not understand how to use it.
- 2) Little Zhang explained why I received less money. I took long time to listen to his explanation and still cannot accept it.

26. 氣跑 qìpǎo RC: to make someone leave in anger

客人點菜的時候，小林說話不客氣，就把客人氣跑了。

When the customer was ordering food, Little Lin said something rude, and made the customer leave in a rage.

27. 敢 gǎn AV: to dare

很多女孩子晚上怕碰到壞人，不敢一個人走路、坐車。

Many girls are afraid of running into someone bad at night, and don't dare to walk or take a taxi alone.

28. 保證 bǎozhèng V: to guarantee

電腦公司說他們保證新電腦一年以內都不會有問題，我可以放心。

The computer company said that they guarantee new computers will be problem-free for a year, and that I can set my mind at ease.

保證書 bǎozhèngshū N: warranty (M: 份)

傳真機壞了，找不到保證書，公司的人不願意修理。

The fax machine has broken, and I can't find the warranty, so the manufacturer's people won't repair it.

保證人 bǎozhèngrén N: guarantor (M: 個)

老王跟銀行借錢，我做他的保證人。他要是不還錢，我就得替他還。

Old Wang borrowed money from the bank, and I stood as his guarantor. If he can't pay it back, I will have to return the money for him.

證人 zhèngrén N: witness (M: 個)

證明 zhèngmíng V/N: to prove (M: 份)

我有證人可以證明小張拿了我的東西。

I have a witness who can prove that Little Zhang took my things.

29. 分手 fēnshǒu V: to split up, to separate

小美每次跟男朋友吵架就說要分手，可是過兩天兩個人又好了。

Every time Xiaomei argues with her boyfriend, she says she is going to break up with him, but they are always back together after a couple of days.

30. 失戀 shīliàn V: to fall out of love

小月失戀了，因為她剛跟她男朋友分手了。

Xiaoyue's fallen out of love — she just broke up with her boyfriend.

談戀愛 tán//liàn'ài VO: to be in love

小王每天那麼快樂，總是說他女朋友多好。他這次是真的談戀愛了。

Little Wang is so happy every day, and always says his girlfriend is so great. This time he is really in love.

同性戀 tóngxìngliàn N: homosexuality

很多同性戀的人喜歡到大安路那家酒館去喝酒交朋友。

A lot of gays go to that pub on Daan Road to drink and meet friends.

31. 和好 héhǎo V: to make up

我女朋友已經一個禮拜生我的氣不理我了，她還是不願意跟我和好。

My girlfriend has been angry with me and ignoring me for a week already, and doesn't want to make up.

32. 甜言蜜語 tiányán mìyǔ IE: sweet words

沒想到小張是個愛情騙子。我被他的甜言蜜語騙了這麼久，到今天才發現原來他有太太。

I hadn't imagined that Little Zhang was a cheat when it comes to love. I was fooled by his sweet words for so long, and only found out today that he has a wife.

33. 明白 míngbái V/SV: to understand/to be clear

- 1) 你做了什麼不應該做的事情，你心裡明白，不要來問我。
 - 2) 你是個明白人，要是事情沒做好，會有多嚴重，不必我告訴你。
- 1) In your heart, you understand what you have done wrong — don't come asking me.
2) You are no dummy; I don't have to tell you how serious it will be if the job isn't done right.

34. 真心 zhēnxīn N: sincerity (M: 片)

你的一片真心我了解，可是你要讓你的女朋友明白，她才會原諒你。

I understand your sincerity, but you have to make your girlfriend understand too, before she will forgive you.

真情 zhēnqíng N: true feelings (M: 片、份)

心意 xīnyì N: regard (M: 片、份)

我買給你的禮物並不貴，就是一點心意。你不必覺得不好意思。

The gift I bought was not expensive. It's only a token of regard. You don't have to feel embarrassed.

35. 求 qiú V: to beg

我三天沒吃飯了，求求你給我一點吃的東西吧。

I haven't eaten for three days. I beg you to give me something to eat.

Grammar

1. 我每天都吃不下飯，睡不著覺。

Every day, I cannot eat and cannot sleep.

Explanation: “吃不下飯” comprises “吃不下”, followed by the object “飯”. “吃不下” is a potential form of a compound verb. The structure is “V+ 不/得+下”; it has no completed form. The final “下” has one of two meanings: either a) that some physical space can / cannot contain a certain volume — such as “吃不下”, “喝不下”, “穿不下”, “坐不下”, “住不下”, “放不下”, “睡不下”, “停不下” or “站不下”; or b) that someone’s mind or spirit is / is not able to contain a certain volume, such as “吃不下” or “看不下”. Some closely connected ‘VO’ type constructions have “不/得+RE” inserted between them: i.e. “V+ 不/得+RE+O”, such as “吃不下飯”, “睡不著覺”, “回不了家”, “進不了門”, or “看不下書”.

a) V+ 不/得+下

王：要不要看看我新買的車？

李：好啊。你的車多大？_____ 幾個人？

王：經理說老闆請全公司的人去旅行。

李：全公司一千個人都去嗎？去哪裡？那裡的旅館_____ 這麼多人嗎？

媽媽：你把水果也帶著吧。

兒子：沒辦法，我的袋子已經滿了，_____ 了。

王：明天要考試，你為什麼不看書？

李：我女朋友三天不理我了，我一想到她，就什麼書都_____ 了。

太太：還有一點湯，留著麻煩，丟了可惜，你喝了吧。

先生：我吃飽了，實在_____ 了，你喝吧。

b) V+ 不/得+RE+O

王：李太太，怎麼坐在門口不進去呢？

李：我忘了帶 yào-shi (鑰匙)，_____，只好在門口等我先生回來。

王：你不是去圖書館看書了嗎？怎麼這麼快就回來了？

李：我心裡有很多事，_____，所以就回來了。

哥哥：走吧，我們回家吧。去哪裡坐車？

弟弟：最後一班公車都已經過去了，我看我們今天_____了。

王：你畢業以後要做什麼？開始找工作了沒有？

李：你別問了，我一想起這件事就煩，一煩就_____。

Additional Vocabulary

yào.shi(鑰匙): key

2. 整天想的都是我們在一起有多麼快樂。

All day I only think about how happy we are together.

Explanation: “多麼SV” indicates a high degree, higher than can be described; used for exaggeration or strong feelings. Besides with SV, this construction can also be used with verbs of feeling, such as “愛”, “喜歡”, “關心”, etc. An “啊” is often added at the end of the sentence, while “麼” may be left out.

姊姊：我昨天帶孩子去餐廳吃飯。孩子吃完了就在餐廳裡跑來跑去，別人都
在看他們。

妹妹：那_____。我要是你，我一定馬上回家。

王：我本來下個月要跟女朋友去歐洲旅行，可是今天老闆忽然跟我說他要我
去美國開會，我們就不能去旅行了。

李：你女朋友知道了會_____。

王：明天我打算走五號公路去海邊。

李：那_____。你應該走高速公路，快多了。

王：我們學校的大樓，走道的燈從來不關。

李：那_____。最後一個走的人應該把燈關了才對。

多麼丟臉啊

多麼慢啊

多麼浪費啊

多麼失望啊

3. 我一直怪自己，像個長不大的孩子，亂發脾氣。

I always blame myself. I am like a child that can't grow up, and get angry without reason.

Explanation: “長不大” is the potential form of a resultative compound verb. The final “大” is an adjective. Among the words learned so far, those which can be used in this position are: “好”, “壞”, “對”, “錯”, “飽”, “餓”, “乾淨”, “清楚”, “高”, “快”, etc.

Some, such as “V-快”, only have a potential form; others have only a completed form, such as “V-錯” or “V-髒”.

王：你開車開得真慢。開快一點，好不好？

李：對不起，我的車太老，_____。

媽媽：你把髒衣服都拿出來洗吧。

兒子：我這件衣服弄得這麼髒，_____嗎？

王：你說張先生跟李小姐是男女朋友，還是只是同事？

李：他們兩個人的關係很複雜，我也_____。

王：你前幾天看起來很累，今天精神滿好的。

李：對啊。我昨天晚上八點就上床了，今天八點才起來，總算_____了，精神當然好。

4. 早知道我就不該跟你吵架，害你這麼傷心。

If I'd known that things would turn out this way I should not have argued with you and hurt you so.

Explanation: In the “早知道……就……” construction, what follows the “早知道” is what has already happened, though it was not what the speaker had wished for. When the meaning is clear from the context, it is often omitted. The phrase following the “就” is what the speaker is afraid may happen, though it is not yet the case. The subject “我” or “我們” in front of the “就” is also often omitted. The construction is often followed by a “了”, indicating a change of state.

王：我們看的電影非常好看。你沒跟我們去看，真可惜。

李：真的？早知道_____。

王：怎麼一直下雨？天氣這麼不好，只能在帳篷裡，不能出去，真討厭！

李：就是嘛！早知道_____。

王：我們老闆真小氣，一個小時才給我們五十塊。

李：對啊，早知道_____。

王：這個帶子你應該兩天以前還，所以要扣你六百塊。

李：六百塊！這麼多，早知道_____。

就跟你們去看電影了
我們就不來露營了

老闆這麼小氣，我就到別家去打工了
會被扣這麼多錢，我就早一點還了

5. 早知道我就不該跟你吵架，害你這麼傷心。

If I'd known that things would turn out this way I should not have argued with you and hurt you so.

Explanation: “害” means “致使” or “引起”. What precedes the “害” causes misfortune for the person after the “害”. This construction is often used for strong emphasis and is always negative.

姊姊：你哭什麼？

弟弟：都是你告訴媽媽我沒做功課，害_____。

王：這個雨什麼時候才會停啊？已經下了好幾天了！

李：就是嘛！本來想去爬山，雨這麼大，害_____。

先生：我吃飽了，吃不下了。還有一點湯，你喝了吧。

太太：你每一次吃不下，就叫我吃，害_____。

王：這次考試好奇怪，書上的東西都沒考。

李：對啊！準備好的都沒考，害_____。

我被媽媽罵

我越來越胖

我們好失望

我們不能去了

22

6. 我希望你快樂，寧願自己受氣，也不該讓你傷心、難過。

I want you to be happy. I'd rather you get mad at me than you feel hurt and sad.

Explanation: “寧願” indicates a choice of action after consideration of the possible good or bad results. It is normally preceded by a ‘VP’, but occasionally precedes a subject instead. a) “寧願……也不……” means that the speaker does not want to choose the first alternative, but that it is, on reflection, more acceptable than the alternative. b) “寧願……也要……” means that the speaker is choosing the action of the first phrase in order to achieve the objective of the second phrase.

a) 「寧願……也不……」

王：你錢不夠用，可以跟張先生借啊。

李：我不喜歡他，他也不喜歡我。我寧願_____。

王：小林跟我要去看電影，要不要一起去？

李：不要，我好累。我寧願_____。

先生：太太，我們的錢用完了。孩子餓了，怎麼辦？

太太：去想辦法借錢吧。我寧願_____。

王：現在電腦這麼方便，你怎麼不用電腦？

李：我不太會用電腦，怕浪費時間。我寧願_____。

餓死，也不要跟他借錢
在家睡覺，也不要去看電影

自己沒東西吃，也不能讓孩子餓肚子
自己手寫，也不要打電腦

b) 「寧願……也要……」

王：把書收起來，別看了！已經半夜兩點了，睡覺吧。

李：不要，這本書真好看。我寧願_____。

孩子：媽，你這麼累，我們來做飯，好不好？

媽媽：你們做得那麼不好吃。我寧願_____。

王：你跟小張女朋友見面的事，最好不要告訴他，他一定會生氣。

李：我怕他wù(誤)會，不說清楚不行。我寧願_____。

哥哥：爸媽都不喜歡小趙，你最好不要跟他出去。

弟弟：小趙他們去的地方都很特別。我寧願_____。

不睡覺，也要把這本書看完
累一點，也要自己做飯

他生我的氣，也要跟他說清楚
被罵，也要跟他們出去

Additional Vocabulary

wù(誤)會: to misunderstand

22

7. ……不該讓你傷心、難過。

...I should not have made you feel hurt and sad.

Explanation: “讓” here means “致使” or “引起”. As compared to “害”, what follows “讓” is not necessarily bad, while what follows “害” is definitely bad.

王：小張今天的考試考得不好，心情很不好。

李：他最愛唱歌，我們找他去唱KTV，讓_____，怎麼樣？

王：你在笑什麼？你想到什麼了？

李：聽到這首歌，讓_____。

王：老闆在發什麼脾氣？

李：王經理沒跟老闆說，就去跟大千公司談簽約的事，讓_____。

王：老陳剛剛說公司的業務都是他做的，沒有他，公司賺不了這麼多錢。

李：聽他說這麼沒道理的話，讓_____。

老闆很生氣
我真想打死他

我想起我的女朋友來了
心情好一點

8. 我保證以後再也不會發生這樣的事情了。

I guarantee that something like this will not happen again in the future.

Explanation: “再也不……了” indicates that the speaker resolves that this action or situation will not happen again; it means “永遠不”, and has an air of exaggeration. In most cases, the resolve comes because of some irritation, harm, or lesson learned previously. “了” indicates a change of state and must not be left out.

兒子：媽，我已經二十歲了，你還什麼都要管，我受不了了。

媽媽：好，好，好。你長大了，不需要我了，我_____。

王：下班以後，我們找小張去啤酒屋，怎麼樣？

李：不行。小張車禍受傷住院，出院以後就_____。

王：你好像很久沒跟小林出去玩了，你們之間發生了什麼事？

李：上次我發現小林騙了我，就_____。我怎麼還能要這個朋友？

王：開了一個晚上的夜車，沒想到今天考試的時候什麼都想不起來。

李：我以前就告訴過你開夜車對考試沒有幫助，現在你相信了吧。你最好_____。

再也不喝酒了
再也不要開夜車了

再也不相信她了
再也不要管你了

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context and answer the questions below.

() 這兩個人在做什麼？

a. 小姐在跟先生解釋一件事情

b. 吵架

c. 談開會的結果

- () 這兩個人是什麼關係？
 a. 男女朋友 b. 同事 c. 先生跟太太
- () 小姐要知道什麼？
 a. 開會的結果 b. 先生還愛不愛她 c. 跟先生在一起的那個女的是誰
- () 小姐為什麼哭？
 a. 先生不聽她的解釋 b. 先生罵她神經病 c. 先生不相信她
- () 小姐哭了，先生怎麼辦？
 a. 求小姐原諒她 b. 要跟小姐分手 c. 不理她
- () 小姐最後的決定是什麼？
 a. 原諒他 b. 跟先生分手 c. 過一段時間再說

Notes

1. “一個星期沒看見你了” means “I haven’t seen you for one week now.” This “了” indicates “up to now.”
2. “你那天看見的那個女的是我的同事” means “The woman you saw the other day is my colleague.” The term “女的” is used here, not “女人”. Most Chinese would choose not to use 那個男人／那個女人 to refer to a person, because these terms imply an air of disapproval. Therefore 那個男的／那個女的 is used instead. If the person is young, people would use 那個男生／那個女生 to refer him／her.
3. “我應該有耐心一點，慢慢跟你解釋，才不會把你氣跑。” means “I should have been more patient to explain it to you slowly, then I wouldn’t have made you so angry that you ran away.” This “才” means “then and only then.”
4. “我下次不敢了” means “I dare not to do it (again) next time.” This “了” indicates the change of status——this is the last time, there won’t be a next time.

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

亲爱的书宜：

一个星期没看见你了，非常寂寞。我每天都吃不下饭、睡不着觉，整天想的都是我们在一起有多么快乐。所以这几天我一直怪自己，为什么老是像个长不大的孩子，乱发脾气。早知道我就不该跟你吵架，害你这么伤心，还气得整整一个星期都不理我。我爱你，我希望你快乐，我宁愿自己受气，也不该让你伤心、难过。一切都是我的错，你能原谅我吗？

你那天看见的那个女的是我的同事，我们刚开完会，在谈公事。我们之间不是你想的那样，请你一定要相信我，我没有骗你。当然，我不应该骂你「神经病」、「疑神疑鬼」，我应该有耐心一点，慢慢跟你解释，才不会把你气跑。我下次不敢了。我保证以后再也不会发生这样的事情了。你原谅我，我们不要分手，不要让我失恋，好不好？只要你愿意跟我和好，要我做什么都可以。

我打了好多次电话，你都不接，我只好写信给你。我不会说甜言蜜语，只希望你明白我的一片真心。求求你，赶快给我打电话。

求你原谅的

家明

Exercises

I. Ten ways to make you have a good mood

The teacher first asks the students to spend a few minutes thinking about what methods they use to improve their mood. They are then asked to speak in turn, each giving one method, if possible, until each student has given ten. One student is to make a record of all the methods on a large sheet of paper prepared in advance by the teacher.

II. How to prepare for exams?

The students are divided into groups of four or five, and the members are given five minutes to discuss how they prepare for exams, and what techniques they think are best. They are also asked what they think of exams, e.g., why have exams, could there not be exams, what would be the ideal exam, etc. When the discussion has finished, each group organizes its conclusions and presents these as a report to the whole class. The reports are written on the board by the teacher or a student assigned by the teacher.

III. My ideal boy/girl friend (理想, ideal)

The students are divided into groups of two — preferably of the same sex, which may make it easier to speak their minds. Group members then say what kind of boyfriend or girlfriend they would like, and why. The teacher should help if there are any questions on vocabulary.

IV. What would you do?

The teacher thinks of some dilemmas and writes these down, one each on a card. The students are split into groups of three and each group is given a card. They are then given 5 - 10 minutes to discuss the problem and decide on the best solution among themselves. Opinions within each group may differ, but each group should present its conclusions to the class. If possible, vocabulary words from this chapter (e.g. “說來說去”, “結果”, “寧願……也……”, “讓”, etc.) should be used.

Dilemmas may be discussed:

1. 你跟你媽媽還有太太一起坐 chuán (船 boat, ship) 去玩。忽然，船壞了。船上的東西只能讓你救一個人，你會怎麼辦？
2. 你覺得同性戀是自己的事，別人不需要知道。你也怕別人知道你是同性戀，會對你有奇怪的態度。現在辦公室裡人人都看得出來有一個異性同事很喜歡你，對你非常好。你會怎麼辦？
3. 你的男朋友告訴你他今天晚上沒有空陪你，可是你在電影院門口看見他跟一個女的手牽手從電影院走出來。這時候，你會怎麼辦？
4. 現在差不多半夜十二點。你開車回家，在半路上，你的車忽然壞了，不能動了。你的大哥大沒有電了，路邊都沒有商店、人家，你怎麼辦？
5. 你跟幾個朋友去爬山，在山上露營。第二天忽然變天了，有大霧，你們都看不清楚，

找不到下山的山路，你怎麼辦？

6. 你的老闆給你一個shēngjí (升級 promotion)的機會，可是這個工作不在本地，在開車四小時以外的地方。你太太/先生的工作很好，不必換工作，你們有一個兩歲的小孩。現在你怎麼辦？接受這個機會嗎？
7. 你發現你的好朋友吸毒。你怎麼辦？

V. Role play

1. Two people: good friends, one of whom has just been dumped by their boyfriend /girlfriend and is miserable. This person does nothing but drink and sleep. The other comes to visit and, finding the first person so sad, wants to talk to and comfort him /her. Act out what they might say.
2. Two people: one a teacher, the other a student. The student is not enjoying his/her studies and constantly fails on tests. However, she/he is bright and is good at other things (these may be suggested by the teacher or decided on by the students themselves). The student has just failed another test. What would the teacher say to him/her? Act out their conversation.
3. Two people: one male, one female. The woman is in love with the man who is, however, gay, and just treats her like his own sister. The man has not yet told anyone he is gay, but the woman is so friendly to him that he doesn't know what to tell her. Act out what they might say.
4. Two people: one man, one woman: They are partners but the woman wants to split up, because she cannot accept some of his habits and opinions. The man, however, really loves the woman and does not want to split up. Act out their conversation about splitting up.

Reading Comprehension

老師的話

又到了畢業季節，最近有很多學生心情都不太穩定，這是怎麼回事呢？學生們有的擔心找不到工作；有的怕考試考得不好，上不了大學。還有的人怕畢業以後各有各的工作、各有各的生活，一切就再也不會跟在學校的時候一樣了，所以煩惱畢業會不會讓男女朋友分手。他們每天想來想去，結果就吃不下飯，睡不著覺了。可能有人會想：早知道畢業會帶來這麼多煩惱，就寧願不要畢業了。

其實畢業不是要害人擔心、煩惱的。畢業會讓人長大，因為每個人都要長大，畢業帶來的煩惱是每個人都必須經歷的。生活要改變了，每個人都會怕，可是世界那麼大，我們再不走出去看看，就可能永遠留在家裡，很安全，可是沒有機會認識這個世界了，那多麼可惜啊。再說，生活要變成什麼樣子，是我

們自己決定的。只要我們有信心，繼續努力，就可以讓生活變得更好。

最後我想告訴要畢業的同學，好好地準備考試，以免考不好要補考，可能畢不了業。另外，還要高高興興地面對即將來臨的改變，才會有美好的將來，也才對得起父母、對得起自己。

Additional Vocabulary

季節: season

wěn(穩)定: to be stable

其實: actually

nǔ(努)力: diligent

面對: to face

來 lín(臨): coming

美好: to be bright, good

Questions:

1. 為什麼最近學生心情都不太穩定？
2. 學生擔心什麼？
3. 為什麼有的學生擔心男女朋友會分手？
4. 為什麼有的人會吃不下飯，睡不著覺？
5. 為什麼有的人寧願不要畢業？
6. 為什麼不必怕畢業？
7. 畢業了，生活就會改變，我們要怎麼面對這樣的情形？
8. 老師告訴要畢業的同學應該做些什麼事？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “受氣包” means?
 - a) a dumpling that has received steam for a long time
 - b) a bag that is used to contain a lot of air
 - c) a person who is always bullied by some people around him/her
2. What do you think “神氣” means?
 - a) the spirit of a god
 - b) to be cocky
 - c) the anger of a god
3. What do you think “做鬼臉” means?
 - a) to make faces
 - b) to make a face of a ghost
 - c) a face made by a ghost
4. What do you think “笨蛋” means?
 - a) an egg made by a fool
 - b) a stupid person
 - c) an egg of second class

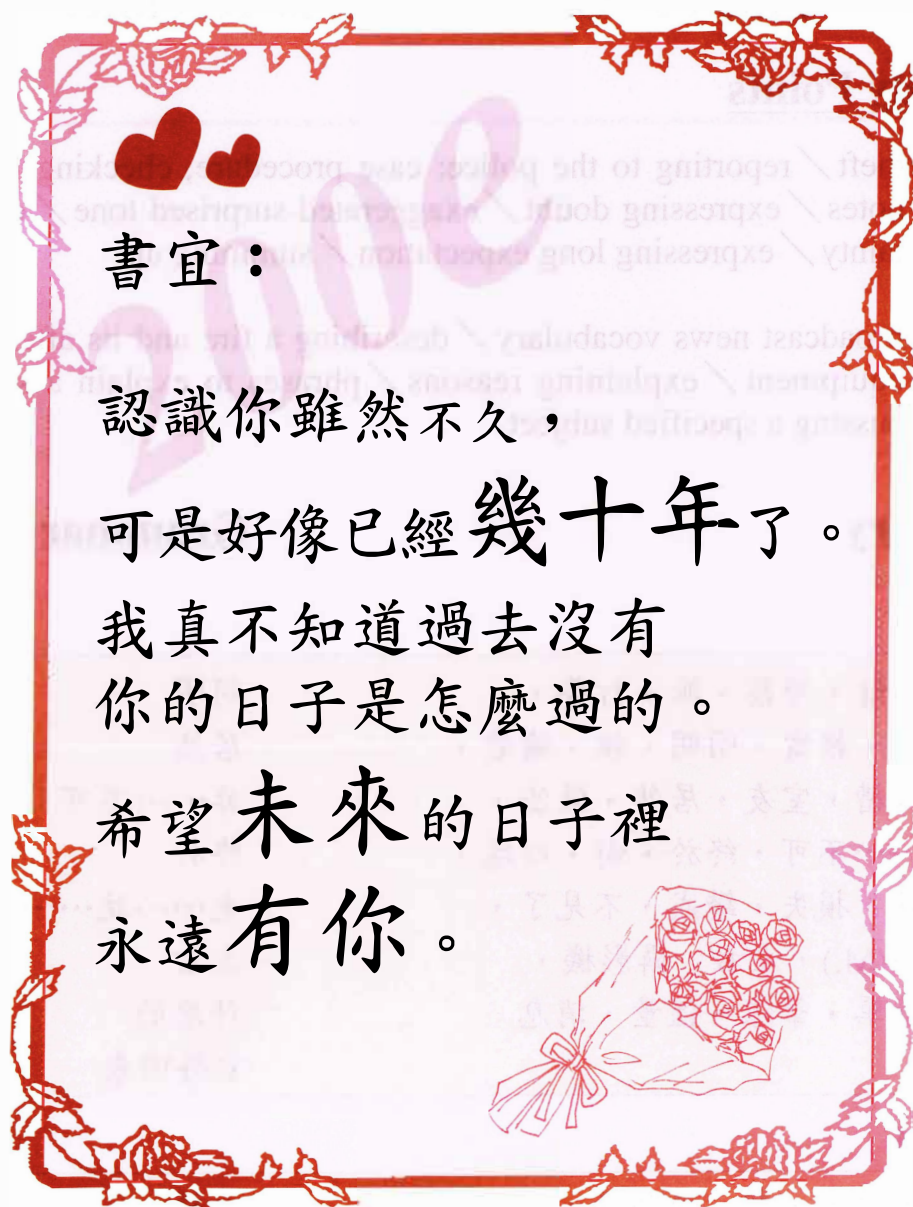
Authentic Materials

I. 成績單(chéngjīdān grade report)

新華大學八十七學年度第一學期成績單			
商學院經濟學系一年級			
學號：87202014		姓名：李德明	
科目	學分	成績	備註
國文	4	82	
英文	4	76	
中國通史	2	85	
經濟學原理	4	74	
會計學	0	50	不及格
微積分	3	70	
統計學	3	65	
學業成績總平均		75.6	
實得學分	20		
教務長		註冊主任	王永本
中華民國 87 年 2 月 16 日 填		發	

1. 你想「成績單」是什麼？
2. 這是什麼時候的成績單？
3. 這是誰的成績單？他是哪一系的？
4. 他哪一門課要補考？
5. 你想「科目」是什麼意思？

II. 情人節卡片



1. 你想「情人節」是什麼？
2. 他們認識多久了？
3. 寫這張「情人卡」的人心裡有什麼希望？
4. 看了這張情人卡，你覺得怎麼樣？

第十二單元 糟糕了，不好了¹！

Unit 12 Oh No! This Is Terrible!

Key Study Points

Lesson 23: theft / reporting to the police: case procedure, checking losses, making notes / expressing doubt / exaggerated-surprised tone / expressing certainty / expressing long expectation / summing up

Lesson 24: broadcast news vocabulary / describing a fire and its aftermath / safety equipment / explaining reasons / phrases to explain a situation / discussing a specified subject

Vocabulary

Grammar

Lesson 23

糟糕，遭小偷，警察，派，打昏，
和平路，巷，報案，明明，鎖，鑰匙，
翻，亂七八糟，室友，居然，做法，
可惡，非……不可，終於，嚇，四處，
臥室，抽屜，損失，鑽戒，不見了，
花，光，樣(M.)，左右，攝影機，
算起來，清單，筆錄，儘量，消息

明明
居然
非……不可
終於
光……就……
左右
什麼的
V得回來

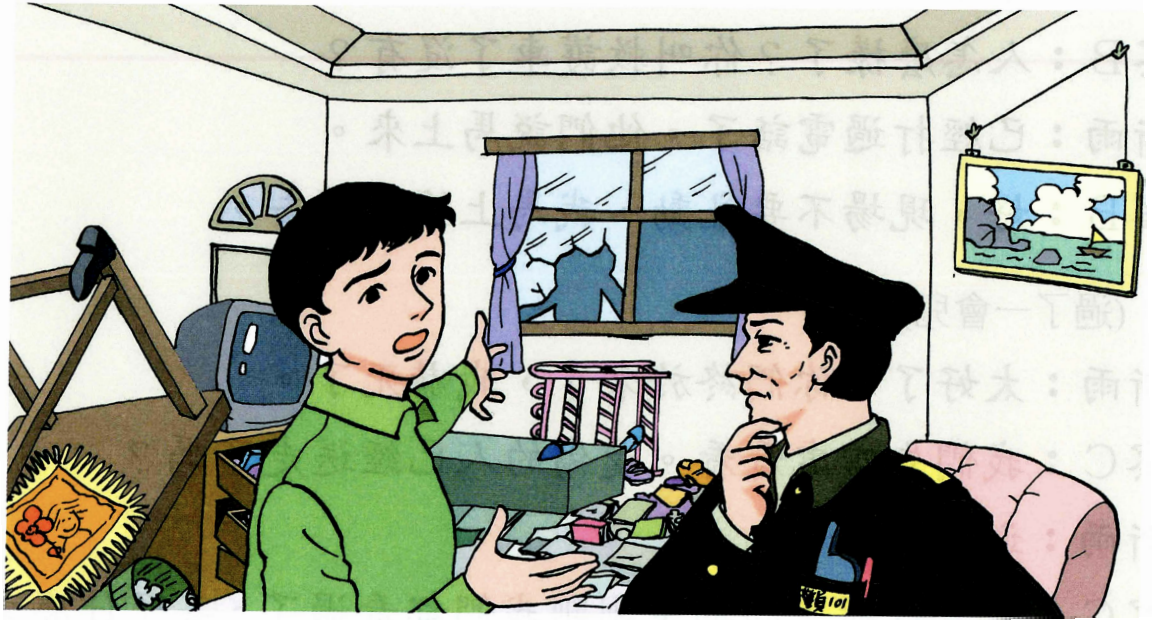
Lesson 24

則，廣播，凌晨，起，消防隊，通報，
搶救，根據，此，火災，你會紅KTV，
爆炸，而，引起，由於，該，無法，
名，其他，逃生，設備，困，煙，記者，
造成，撲滅，關於，起火，原因，
責任，警方，正，調查，隨時，名單，
收聽

根據
此
因……而……
由於
該
正……中
關於
將
隨時

第二十三課 遭小偷了

Lesson 23 Burglarized



警察A：一一九，²你好。有什麼事？

新雨：喂，一一九，請派一輛救護車來，有人被打昏了。

警察A：在哪裡？告訴我地址。

新雨：和平路二八四巷六號二樓。

警察A：馬上就來。

新雨：我還要報案。除了有人被打昏了，東西也被偷走了。

警察A：請你打到二三二一八五四七。

新雨：好。(打電話) 喂，警察局嗎？我要報案，我家遭小偷了。

警察B：什麼時候的事？

新雨：不清楚小偷什麼時候進來的，我一回家就發現門是開著的。我覺得很奇怪，我明明鎖了門的。³後來我又

發現鎖被弄壞了，房間裡被翻得亂七八糟，我的室友居然也被打昏了。小偷這種做法實在太可惡了！你們非抓到他不可。

警察B：人怎麼樣了？你叫救護車了沒有？

新雨：已經打過電話了。他們說馬上來。

警察B：好，現場不要亂動，我馬上派人過去。

(過了一會兒)

新雨：太好了！你們終於來了，我嚇死了。

警察C：我們先四處看看。受傷的人已經送走了嗎？

新雨：送走了。

警察C：臥室裡櫃子的抽屜剛剛我們都看過了。丟了什麼東西了？⁴損失嚴重嗎？

新雨：我的美金、鑽戒都不見了。鑽戒是我花三十萬買的，光這兩樣就損失大概四十萬左右。另外還有照相機、攝影機什麼的，算起來至少六十萬。

警察C：你開一張清單，我來做筆錄。

新雨：我丟了的東西，找得回來嗎？

警察C：我們不敢說，不過會儘量找，一有消息就通知你。

Vocabulary

1. 糟糕 zāogāo SV/IE: to be in a terrible state/oh no!

1) 小王的情況很糟糕。他的車撞壞了，腿也斷了，身上好幾個地方都受傷了。

2) 糟糕！我忘了帶錢，沒有錢付帳。怎麼辦？

1) Little Wang's in a terrible state. His car is smashed up, his leg is broken, he's got injuries all over.

2) Oh no! I forgot to bring the money. I can't pay. What shall we do?

2. 遭小偷 zāo//xiǎotōu VO: to be burglarized

不好了！我太太打電話來說我家遭小偷了，我得馬上回去看看。不知道我那部新買的電腦還在不在？

This is terrible. My wife phoned to say our house has been burgled. I've got to go home immediately. I wonder if the new computer I bought is still there.

小偷 xiǎotōu N: thief (M: 個)

偷 tōu V: to steal

小偷把我的車偷走了，我得坐公車回家了。

The thief took my car. I had to go home by bus.

3. 警察 jǐngchá N: policeman (M: 位)

抓小偷是警察的工作，可是有的小偷很聰明，很不容易抓。

Catching thieves is the job of the police, but some thieves are very smart and very hard to catch.

警察局 jǐngchájú N: police station (M: 所)

4. 派 pài V: to send (a person)

老闆派我去機場接從美國來的客戶，所以今天晚上不能回家吃飯了。

The boss is sending me to the airport to fetch a customer arriving from the USA, so I can't be home for dinner tonight.

5. 打昏 dǎ//hūn VO: to knock unconscious

小王昨天晚上回家比較晚，在路上被人打昏了。他過了好久才醒過來，發現錢包被拿走了。

Last night when Little Wang returned home it was a bit later and he was knocked out on the street. It was a long time before he woke up, and then he discovered his wallet had been taken.

6. 和平路 Héping Lù Proper N: name of a street; Heping Road

7. 巷 xiàng N: lane (M: 條)

8. 報案 bào//àn VO: to report a case

警察先生，我來報案。我剛剛看見一個男的把一個女的打昏了，拿著錢包就跑了。

I've come to report a case, officer. I just saw a man knock a woman unconscious and run away with her purse.

案子 àn·zi N: case (M: 件)

破案 pò//àn VO: to solve a case

和平路十號上個月被偷的那個案子很複雜，辦案的警察一直想不出辦法來破案。

The burglary at 10 Heping Road last month is a very complicated case, and the detectives in charge are unable to think of any way to solve it.

9. 明明 míngmíng Adv: clearly; obviously

今天明明是週末，你為什麼要去上班？

Today's obviously the weekend. Why are you going to the office?

10. 鎖 suǒ V/N: to lock/lock (M: 把、道)

1) 最近小偷很多，你出門的時候，別忘了把門鎖上。

2) 既然小偷來過了，你最好換一把鎖，才比較安全。

1) There have been a lot of burglaries recently. Don't forget to lock your door when you leave the house.

2) Since burglars have already been here, you had best change the lock to be safe.

11. 鑰匙 yào-shi N: key (M: 把)

12. 翻 fān V: to turn over; to go through

你別亂翻我的東西，你要什麼，我找給你。你把我的東西翻亂了，我要找也找不到了。

Don't just go through my things. Tell me what you want and I'll find it for you. If you turn my things topsy-turvy, I won't be able to find anything.

13. 亂七八糟 luàn qī bā zāo IE: in a real mess

小張失戀以後，沒有精神做事，把生活弄得亂七八糟的。

After Little Zhang got dumped, he didn't have the will to do anything, and his life became a real mess.

14. 室友 shìyǒu N: room-mate; housemate (M: 個)

小李是我大學時候的室友，我們一起住了兩年。

Little Li was my roommate in college; we lived together for two years.

15. 居然 jūrán Adv: to my surprise; unexpectedly; to go so far as to
你居然忘了自己的電話號碼，你實在病得太嚴重了。
You even forgot your own phone number. You are very ill indeed.
16. 做法 zuòfǎ N: method; the way to do something (M: 種)
「開洋白菜」的做法很簡單，我一說你就會做了。
It's easy to make kaiyang baicai. As soon as I tell you you'll know how.
- 看法 kànfǎ N: opinion (M: 種)
你對同性戀有什麼看法？你覺得同性戀的人可以結婚嗎？
What's your opinion on homo sexuals? Do you think they should be allowed to get married?
- 想法 xiǎngfǎ N: way of thinking; idea; opinion (M: 種)
很多父母不了解孩子的想法，孩子做什麼他們都不同意。
Many parents do not understand their children's feelings, and they oppose anything their children do.
- 教法 jiāofǎ N: teaching technique, style, method (M: 種)
王老師的教法很特別，學生都很喜歡上他的課。
Teacher Wang has an unusual teaching style, and all his students enjoy his courses.
- 用法 yòngfǎ N: usage; operation (M: 種)
我是新來的祕書，不會用辦公室的傳真機。請你教我一下用法。
I'm the new secretary, and I don't know how to use the fax machine in this office. Please teach me how to use it.
17. 可惡 kěwù SV: to be detestable; hateful
老趙已經有太太了，還騙我他沒結婚。真可惡！
Old Zhao already had a wife, but told me he wasn't married. He's detestable.
18. 非……不可 fēi.....bù kě Adv: absolutely must...
明天要考試了。今天我非念書不可，要不然考不及格，又要補考。
I've got a test tomorrow. I absolutely must study today, or else I'll fail and have to take a make-up test.
19. 終於 zhōngyú Adv: finally
念了八年大學，小王今年終於畢業了。
After eight years of college, Little Wang is finally graduating this year.
20. 嚇 xià V: to scare
你別嚇我！我住的地方怎麼可能有鬼？
Don't try to scare me! How could there be ghosts where I live?

嚇一跳 xiàyítiào V-Nu-M: to startle someone, make someone jump (with fright)
我在房間裡看書，小張忽然進來大聲叫我的名字，嚇了我一跳。
I was in my room reading, and Little Zhang suddenly came in and shouted my name, and startled me.

21. 四處 sìchù Adv: everywhere, on all sides
公司裡怎麼一個人都沒有？我們四處看看，也許可以找到人。
How come there's nobody at the office? Let's look around, and maybe we'll find someone.

到處 dào chù Adv: everywhere
世界上到處都有中國人，所以哪裡都有中國飯館。
There are Chinese people all over the world, so there are Chinese restaurants everywhere.

22. 臥室 wòshì N: bedroom (M: 間)

臥房 wòfáng N: bedroom (M: 間)

23. 抽屜 chōuti N: drawer (M: 個)

老闆：我的名片放在哪裡？

秘書：你一拉開抽屜就看見了。

Boss: Where did you put my namecards?

Secretary: Open your drawer and you'll see them.

24. 損失 sǔnshī N/V: loss/to lose (M: xiàng 項 item)

1) 這次颱風很厲害，花蓮的損失很嚴重，很多地方停水、停電，還有很多路都不通了。

2) 如果大千公司改變主意，不跟我們簽約了，我們就會損失七百萬。

1) This last typhoon was really strong, and there were huge losses in Hualian. There were water and electricity cuts in many places, and many roads were blocked.

2) If the people at Daqian Corp. change their minds and will not sign with us, we'll lose NT\$7 million.

25. 鑽戒 zuànjiè N: diamond ring (M: 只、個)

* 鑽石 zuànshí N: diamond (M: kē 顆 bead)

* 戒指 jiè-zhi N: ring (M: 只、個、méi 枚 piece)

26. 不見了 bújiàn-le PH: gone, not to be found

李太太上次帶孩子去逛街，看見一雙鞋。她付完錢，轉頭一看，孩子不見了，附近也沒有。她急得哭起來了。

Last time Mrs. Lee went shopping with her children, she saw a pair of shoes she liked. She paid, and turned around, and her children were gone. They weren't anywhere nearby either, so

she burst into tears of anxiety.

27. 花 huā V: to spend
我這份報告一共花了三個星期才寫完的。
I spent a total of three weeks writing this report.
28. 光 guāng Adv: only, just
小張怕胖，光吃水果，不吃飯，也不吃肉。
Little Zhang is afraid of getting fat. He only eats fruit; no rice, no meat.
29. 樣 yàng M: modifier for different things
我在老張店裡買了兩樣東西，一樣是罐頭，一樣是可樂。他讓我打折，所以很便宜。
I bought two things in Old Zhang's shop. One was a can, the other was cola. He gave me a discount, so it was quite cheap.
30. 左右 zuǒyòu Adv: about, around, roughly
從我家開車到學校去，二十分鐘左右就到了。
It takes about twenty minutes to drive from our house to school.
31. 攝影機 shèyǐngjī N: video / movie camera (M: 部、架)
攝影師 shèyǐngshī N: cameraman (M: 位)
32. 算起來 suànrqǐlái V: to count as, add up to
如果房東說一個月房租五千塊，還包括水電費，算起來不貴，你就租了吧。
If the landlord says the rent is NT\$ 5,000 a month, including water and electricity, that's not expensive, you should take it.
33. 清單 qīngdān N: invoice (M: 張、份)
我送來的東西都在這裡。這是清單。你點一下，看有沒有少。
Here are all the things I delivered, and here's the invoice. Check everything off, and see if anything's missing.
34. 筆錄 bǐlù N: notes; record; account
小李的公司遭小偷了。因為小李是管理員，警察把小李帶去問話，做完筆錄才讓他回去。
Little Li's company was burglarized. Because Little Li was the manager, the police took him in for questioning. They only let him go when they had finished their written account.
35. 儘量 jǐnliàng Adv: as much as possible
我做了很多菜，你們儘量吃。能吃多少，就吃多少，不要怕不夠。

I made a lot of food. Eat as much as possible, as much as you can. Don't worry that there won't be enough.

36. 消息 xiāo·xi N: news; information (M: zé 則 item、個)

小林去美國以後一直沒有跟我們聯絡。你有沒有他的消息？不知道他現在怎麼樣了。

Little Lin hasn't got in touch with us since he went to the USA. Have you had any news from him? I wonder how he is.

Grammar

1. 我明明鎖了門的。 I did lock the door.

Explanation: “明明” is followed by a fact which is obvious. Preceding or following “明明” is often a phrase indicating a rhetorical question or retort. There is a contradiction between the fact that this phrase depicts and the obvious event in this construction.

王：趙大海這麼帥，要是我能跟他結婚，那多好啊！

李：王太太，你說什麼？你_____，為什麼還想跟別人結婚？

王：小李，萬美公司的收據呢？

李：我也不知道。我記得_____，他卻說他沒拿。

哥哥：媽媽叫你打掃房間，你為什麼那麼不高興？

弟弟：你看看我的地bǎn (板)！很乾淨吧。我_____，媽媽卻還覺得不乾淨，要我再打掃一次。

王：小李，你跟我借的書看完了沒有？可以還我了嗎？

李：啊？我還你了啊。我前幾天_____。你怎麼不記得了？

明明已經結婚了
收據明明是小張拿走的

明明已經還給你了
明明打掃過了

Additional Vocabulary

地bǎn (板): floor (-boards)

2. 我的室友居然也被打昏了。

My roommate had been knocked out unexpectedly.

Explanation: “居然” indicates that the speaker is surprised that this event happened. It is normally placed after the subject of the sentence which describes this surprise.

王：要上洗手間，你自己去吧，我不要去。

李：你喝了那麼多水，_____。

王：老張的太太來了，你來見見吧。

李：啊？他有太太！我跟他同事三年了，_____。

王：你今天考試考得怎麼樣？及格了沒有？

李：還不錯，我以為我沒準備好，沒想到_____。

王：你的報告寫得怎麼樣了？我不知道要寫什麼，所以還沒開始呢。

李：啊？下禮拜一要交的報告，你_____。

居然不必去洗手間
居然考了一百分

居然一個字都還沒寫
居然不知道他已經有太太了

3. 你們非抓到他不可。 You had better catch him.

Explanation: “非……不可” means “不……不行”, and indicates that it absolutely must be this way. “非” is followed by a verb phrase or clause, or a noun referring to a person.

王：我每次考試都考得不好，應該怎麼辦？

李：我知道你老是考前開夜車，那怎麼行？想要有好成績(jī)，
_____。

王：經理，跟萬美公司簽約的事你要派誰去？

李：這件事情，別人都不清楚。你最清楚，_____。

王：我有點累，明天再來幫你修電腦。

李：不行，我要打報告，明天要交。你_____，要不然我就糟糕了。

王：我游得很快，我去參加你們學校的游泳比賽，好不好？說不定我可以得個大獎。

李：不行，這次比賽_____。你不是我們學校的學生，不可以參加。

非得每天用功不可
非把我的電腦弄好不可

非本校學生不可
非你去不可

4. 你們終於來了。 You finally arrived.

Explanation: “終於” indicates that a relatively long process eventually reaches its hoped-for result. “終於” can be followed by a ‘VP + 了’ or a phrase indicating a change of state. If the result is not that which was hoped for, “還是”, “結果”, “最後”, or “最後還是” can be used instead.

王：上次你們出車禍，你太太的腿斷了。現在怎麼樣了？

李：在醫院住了一個多月，現在_____。

王：李先生，你還記得我嗎？我們一起開過會的。

李：我一直想不起來在哪裡見過你，說了五分鐘話，現在我_____。

你是王小姐，我們兩年前在德國一起開過會。

王：你爸媽來信啦？你不是很多年沒跟家裡聯絡了嗎？

李：嗯，我一直以為他們只喜歡我妹妹。收到這封信以後，我_____。

太太：你弟弟跟他太太吵架，結果怎麼樣了？

先生：我弟弟一直道歉，還說了很多甜言蜜語。他太太覺得自己也有錯，兩個人_____。

終於知道他們也愛我
終於又和好了

終於好了
終於想起來了

5. 光這兩樣就損失大概四十萬左右。

Those two things alone probably come to 400,000 or so.

Explanation: In the construction “光……就……”, “光” means “只”. It is normally followed by a ‘VP’ or ‘NP’, emphasizing a limited scope. “就” emphasizes that an amount is more than expected.

王：昨天你們家請客，準備了什麼東西？有沒有蛋糕？

李：有啊。我媽媽怕菜不夠吃，做了很多東西，_____。

王：最近感冒的人很多。

李：對啊，_____。

王：你學中文三個月了。你用中文寫過作文嗎？

李：寫過啊，可是好難啊。_____。

王：你們公司的業務怎麼樣？賺錢嗎？

李：今年賺了不少錢，_____。

光上個月就賺了一百萬
光蛋糕就做了兩個

光想一個句子就要花半小時
光我們家就有三個人感冒

Additional Vocabulary

作文: essay, composition

6. 光這兩樣就損失大概四十萬左右。

Those two things alone probably come to 400,000 or so.

Explanation: “左右” is used after amounts to indicate that the amount might be slightly more or a little less.

王：你昨天晚上看球賽看到幾點才回家？

李：昨天晚上那場籃球賽很精彩，_____才結束，所以我十點才到家。

王：台北國家劇院能坐多少人？

李：不太清楚，我想_____吧。

王：你看林老師今年多大？

李：他差不多_____。

王：你家離車站遠嗎？

李：還好，我家離車站大概_____。

十gōnglǐ (公里) 左右 五千左右 三十歲左右 九點左右

Additional Vocabulary

結束: to end

gōnglǐ (公里): kilometer

7. 另外還有照相機、攝影機什麼的。

In addition, there was also a camera, a video camera, and stuff like that.

Explanation: “什麼的” is used after a phrase or several parallel phrases to indicate that more could be said but that this will not be listed. It is colloquial in usage.

王：你沒事的時候都做些什麼？喜歡去爬山、游泳嗎？

李：我不喜歡_____，就喜歡看書。

弟弟：媽媽叫我回家吃飯，你知道她做了什麼菜嗎？

姊姊：媽媽做了_____。都是你最愛吃的。

王：你的房租怎麼算？水費、電費算在裡面嗎？

李：不算在裡面。_____，都要另外算。

王：李經理，你們怎麼決定請趙先生來工作的？

李：他的條件好啊。他的_____都比別人好。我們才決定請他來工作。

外語能力，用電腦的能力什麼的
麻婆豆腐、宮保雞丁什麼的

水費、電費、電話費什麼的
爬山、游泳什麼的

8. 我丟了的東西，找得回來嗎？

The things I have lost -- will I be able to get them back?

Explanation: “V得回來” is the potential form of a resultative compound verb. The final “回來” indicates that the action will return a person or object from somewhere else to his/her/its original position. The negative form is “V不回來”. Among the verbs learned so far which can be used in this construction are: “找”, “帶”, “換”, “寄”, “開”, “買”, “拿”, “要”, “叫”, “走”, “偷”, “搬”, “傳”, “飛”, “游”, “提”, “跑”, and “求”. With most of these, if the movement is in a different direction, “V回去” and “V得/不回去” can also be used.

王：喂，小李啊，這麼晚了，什麼事啊？

李：我在信一路口。我的車壞了，_____了。拜託你開車來接我吧。

王：你的書好多啊！你回國的時候，都要帶回去嗎？

李：這麼多書，我怎麼_____？我會先寄一些回去。

媽媽：你去叫你弟弟回來，他的功課還沒寫完呢。

兒子：他在打籃球。他那麼喜歡打籃球，現在是_____的。

王：我太太跟我吵架，她一生氣就走了。已經兩天了，小孩子要媽媽，煩死了。

李：你去求她啊！媽媽不在，小孩一定會吵。你快去把她_____吧。

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following dialogue may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

- () 這兩個人在哪裡說話？
a. 辦公室 b. 老陳家裡 c. 警察局
- () 這兩個人正在談什麼？
a. 老陳太太被嚇昏的事 b. 老陳公司遭小偷的事 c. 老陳家遭小偷的事
- () 老陳今天為什麼遲到？
a. 他被小偷打昏了 b. 他在警察局做筆錄 c. 他喝酒喝太多了
- () 小偷偷走了什麼？
a. 錄影機、照相機什麼的 b. 沒偷走什麼 c. 不清楚偷走什麼
- () 小偷進來的時候，老陳他們在做什麼？
a. 在看錄影帶 b. 在睡覺 c. 在喝酒
- () 老陳太太是怎麼昏的？
a. 被小偷打昏的 b. 被老陳嚇昏的 c. 被小偷嚇昏的
- () 老陳知不知道小偷來了？
a. 不知道，他不在家
b. 知道，所以他起來跟小偷打架
c. 不知道，他喝了太多酒了，在睡覺
- () 這兩個人最後決定做什麼？
a. 去慰問老陳 b. 去看老陳太太 c. 去老陳家看看

Notes

1. “糟糕了，不好了” means “Oh, my God. Something bad is happening.” The “了” here indicates change of status — it will not be good from now on.
2. 119 is the number to be dialed in Taiwan when there is a fire or an emergency.
3. “我明明鎖了門的” means “I certainly have locked the door.” This “的” indicates a tone of certainty.
4. “丟了什麼東西了” means “What have you lost?” The first “了” is completed action. The “了” at the end of the sentence means “up to now (what you have found).”

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

警察 A：一一九，你好。有什么事？

新雨：喂，一一九，请派一辆救护车来，有人被打昏了。

警察 A：在哪里？告诉我地址。

新雨：和平路二八四巷六号二楼。

警察 A：马上就来。

新雨：我还要报案。除了有人被打昏了，东西也被偷走了。

警察 A：请你打到二三二一八五四七。

新雨：好。（打电话）喂，警察局吗？我要报案，我家遭小偷了。

警察 B：什么时候的事？

新雨：不清楚小偷什么时候进来的，我一回家就发现门是开着的。我觉得很奇怪，我明明锁了门的。后来我又发现锁被弄坏了，房间里被翻得乱七八糟，我的室友居然也被打昏了。小偷这种做法实在太可恶了！你们非抓到他不可。

警察 B：人怎么样了？你叫救护车了没有？

新雨：已经打过电话了。他们说马上来。

警察 B：好，现场不要乱动，我马上派人过去。

（过了一会儿）

新雨：太好了。你们终于来了。我吓死了。

警察 C：我们先四处看看。受伤的人已经送走了吗？

新雨：送走了。

警察 C：卧室里柜子的抽屉刚刚我们都看过了。丢了什么东西了？损失严重吗？

新雨：我的美金、钻戒都不见了。钻戒是我花三十万买的。光这两样就损失大概四十万左右。另外还有照相机、摄影机什么的，算起来至少六十万。

警察 C：你开一张清单。我来做笔录。

新雨：我丢了的东西，找得回来吗？

警察 C：我们不敢说，不过会尽量找，一有消息就通知你。

第二十四課 一則火災的廣播新聞

Lesson 24 A News Broadcast about a Fire



(本台消息¹)台南市東三街今天凌晨兩點發生一起大火。消防隊接到通報後，馬上趕到現場搶救。根據消防隊員在現場的了解，此起火災是因六樓「你會紅KTV」瓦斯爆炸而引起。²由於安全門被鎖，卻找不到鑰匙，無法打開。當時還在裡面唱歌的三十六名客人因無其他逃生設備而被困在濃煙裡，情況很危險。本台記者張台生到現場時，看見有些客人因等不及搶救，自該大樓六樓跳下，造成五死七傷。後來消防隊員撞開安全門，將其他人救出，大火亦於四點左右撲滅。關於起火原因及責任，警方正調查中。本台將隨時播出最新消息及死傷名單，敬請注意收聽。

Vocabulary

1. 則 zé M: modifier for written articles, reports, etc.

我在報上看到一則賣車子的廣告，就打電話去問價錢。

I saw an ad in the paper for a car, and called to ask the price.

2. 廣播 guǎngbō N/V: broadcast/to broadcast (M: 則)

1) 開車的時候聽廣播可以知道交通的情形。

2) 辦公室剛剛廣播說還沒繳學費的同學請趕快去繳。

1) If you listen to the radio while driving, you can learn about traffic conditions.

2) The office just broadcasted a message asking all students who have not yet paid their tuition to pay soon.

- 播出 bòchū V: to broadcast

我最喜歡的電視連續劇晚上八點播出。

My favorite television series is shown at 8 in the evening.

3. 凌晨 língchén N: early morning

我昨天晚上喝了茶睡不著，凌晨四點左右才睡著。

I drank so much tea last night that I had trouble getting to sleep, and only fell asleep at about four in the morning.

4. 起 qǐ M: (for incidents)

昨天高速公路上的交通情形很不好，一個早上就發生了四起車禍。

The traffic on the highway yesterday was terrible — four accidents in one morning.

5. 消防隊 xiāofángduì N: fire brigade (M: 個)

消防隊員 xiāofáng duìyuán N: fireman (M: 位、個)

6. 通報 tōngbào V: to announce; to inform; notify

張小姐，我跟你們經理約好了三點見。麻煩你去通報一聲，告訴他我來了。

I made an appointment with your manager for three o'clock, Miss Zhang. Could you go and tell him I'm here.

7. 搶救 qiǎngjiù V: to rescue, save

沒想到颱風來得那麼快。風把樹、花吹得亂七八糟了，我們才趕快去搶救，把那些能搬進來的都搬進來。

I didn't expect the typhoon would come so fast, and would blow the trees and flowers into complete disarray. We've just gone to the rescue, moving inside those things that we could.

搶 qiǎng V: to snatch, scramble for

1) 弟弟在看卡通，哥哥想看球賽，兩個人就開始搶遙控器。搶來搶去就打起來了。

2) 張小姐昨天太晚回家，在路上錢包被壞人搶走了。

1) The younger of the brothers was watching a cartoon, the elder, a ball game. They started snatching the remote control from each other, and soon a fight started.

2) Ms. Zhang came home too late last night and on the street, her purse was robbed by a bad guy.

8. 根據 gēnjù V: according to

根據電視台的氣象報告，颱風已經不遠了，我們趕快準備一下。

According to the television weather report, the typhoon is not far away anymore. Let's start getting ready.

9. 此 cǐ SP: this

王非這個名字，你沒聽說過嗎？此人是現在最紅的歌星啊。

You haven't heard the name "Wang Fei?" This person is the most popular singer these days.

10. 火災 huǒzāi N: fire (M: 場、起)

小心用電，以免發生火災。

Take care when using electricity, so as to avoid fires.

水災 shuǐzāi N: flood, flooding (M: 場、次)

我家附近一下大雨就鬧水災，很麻煩。

Whenever it rains hard near our house, there's flooding. It's really annoying.

風災 fēngzāi N: wind damage (M: 場、次)

上星期的風災損失情形怎麼樣？有多少房子被吹壞了？

What was the damage situation after the storm last week? How many houses were destroyed by the wind?

災害 zāihài N: disaster (M: 場、次)

颱風季節快到了！電視上常有廣告，請大家早早準備，以免發生嚴重災害。

It's nearly typhoon season; there was a television announcement asking everybody to get ready in advance, so as to avoid a major disaster.

11. 你會紅 KTV Nǐhuìhóng KTV Proper N: name of a KTV parlor

12. 爆炸 bàozhà V: to explode

報上說那架飛機飛了沒多久就爆炸了，飛機上的人都死了。

It says in the newspaper that the plane exploded not long after take-off, and that everybody on the plane died.

炸 zhà/zhá V/RE: to bomb (zhà); deep fry (zhá) /to be exploded (zhà)

- 1) 火車站昨天被炸了，炸死了十幾個人，警察還在找是誰做的。
 - 2) 炸雞腿很油，因為炸的時候得用很多油。
 - 3) 爸爸一聽到自己的孩子偷了別人東西，就氣炸了，不願意去警察局帶他回家。
- 1) The train station was bombed yesterday. More than ten people died in the bombing. The police are still trying to find out who did it.
 - 2) Fried chicken leg is very greasy, because a lot of oil has to be used when deep frying it.
 - 3) When the father heard that his child had stolen someone else's things, he was furious, and didn't want to go to the police station to fetch him.

13. 而 ér Conj: and, but (sometimes not translated)

小張因為換工作而搬到南部去了。

Little Zhang changed his job and moved down south.

14. 引起 yǐnqǐ V: to attract, cause

李小姐在開會時說的話引起大家的注意，大家都問這位小姐是哪家公司來的。

What Ms. Li said at the meeting attracted everybody's attention, and they all asked what company she was from.

15. 由於 yóuyú CV: because

由於學費漲了很多，我下學期一定得去打工賺錢了。

I will have to earn some money by getting a part-time job next term, because the tuition has gone up very much.

16. 該 gāi SP: this, the above

趙老師說這次期末考時有一個學生請假，該生因車禍而住院開刀，不能參加考試。

Mr. Zhao said that one student had requested leave during the end-of-term exam this semester; this student was in the hospital having an operation because of a car accident and could not attend the exam.

17. 無法 wúfǎ Adv: no way to; unable to

小張從前騙過我，從那次以後，我就再也無法相信他了。

Little Zhang has lied to me before, and I have been unable to trust him since then.

18. 名 míng M: modifier for people

警察從火災現場搶救出五名小孩。

The police rescued five children from the scene of the fire.

19. 其他 qítā Att: other

只有陳金水還在考試，其他同學都已經回家了。

Only Chen Jinshui is still taking the test; the other students have all gone home already.

其中 qízhōng Att: among

我們學校有一千名學生，其中只有三百名女生。

There are a thousand students at our school; among these, only three hundred are female.

20. 逃生 táoshēng V: to escape

因為海水漲得太快，在海邊釣魚的人來不及逃生就死了。

The sea rose so fast that the people fishing at the seaside did not have time to escape, and died.

逃 táo V: to run (away)

小高的媽媽要她跟一個有錢的老先生結婚。她不願意，就逃走了。

Little Gao's mother wanted her to marry a wealthy old man; as she didn't want to, she ran away.

21. 設備 shèbèi N: equipment; facilities

我們學校的設備很新，學生可以學到最新的東西。

Our school's facilities are very new, students can learn the newest things.

22. 困 kùn V: to be in a difficult position

小陳跟同學去爬山，因為下雨，找不到回去的路，被困在山上兩天。

Little Chen went hiking with his classmates in the mountains. Because it began to rain, they could not find their way back, and so they were trapped in the mountains for two days.

困難 kùnnán N/SV: difficulty/to be difficult

1) 我開了公司以後，每次碰到困難，都是周先生幫我的。

2) 我們老闆從來沒有改變過他的想法。你想讓他改變主意，真的太困難了。

1) When I started the company, every time I ran into difficulties, it was always Mr. Zhou who helped me out.

2) Our boss never changes his mind. It's too difficult to try to make him change his opinion.

23. 煙 yān N: smoke (M: zhèn 陣 gust, gǔ 股 stream)

24. 記者 jìzhě N: reporter (M: 個、位、名)

電視公司的記者昨天來訪問我們公司的經理，請他說說對貿易問題的看法。

The television reporter interviewed our company manager yesterday to ask for his opinions on trade problems.

作者 zuòzhě N: writer; author (M: 個、位、名)

本書的作者是誰？他在書裡說了些什麼？

Who is the author of this book? What does he say in the book?

25. 造成 zàochéng V: to lead to; cause

小陳開車速度太快，撞上前面的車，造成一起一死三傷的車禍。

Little Chen was driving too fast and bumped into the car in front, and caused an accident in which one person died and three were injured.

26. 撲滅 pūmiè V: to extinguish, put out

昨天那場大火，消防隊員救了三個小時才撲滅。

The firemen battled that big fire yesterday for three hours before they could put it out.

消滅 xiāomiè V: to wipe out, destroy

這次的流行性感冒，病毒很難消滅，請大家小心！

The virus of this strain of rampant flu is very hard to wipe out, so I must ask everybody to be careful.

27. 關於 guānyú CV: in regard to

我剛剛跟經理談了半天，都沒有談到關於加薪的事，我得再找機會跟他談談。

I have just talked with the manager for hours without mentioning my pay raise. I'll have to find another chance to discuss it with him.

28. 起火 qǐ//huǒ VO: to start (of a fire)

火被撲滅以後，警察很快就找到了起火的地點。

After the fire was put out, the police were swift to find the place where it started.

起飛 qǐfēi V: to take off

我搭的飛機七點起飛，我六點以前一定要到飛機場。

The plane I am taking takes off at seven, so I must be at the airport before six.

29. 原因 yuányīn N: reason (M: 個)

小趙換工作的原因是以前的老闆太兇，而且薪水也太低。

The reason for which Little Zhao changed jobs is that his previous boss was so cruel, and her salary was too low.

30. 責任 zérèn N: responsibility

張太太覺得兒子偷別人的東西是她的責任，因為她沒把孩子教好。

Mrs. Zhang thinks that she is responsible for her son stealing other people's things, because she did not educate him properly.

31. 警方 jǐngfāng N: police
關於昨天的車禍，警方的報告跟記者的說法不完全一樣。
The police report on yesterday's car accident does not say exactly the same thing as the news reporters.
- 對方 duìfāng N: opposite, the other side
我們想跟大千公司簽約，可是對方的條件我們不能接受，談了很久都談不成。
We wanted to sign a contract with Daqian Corp. but we couldn't accept their conditions, and we couldn't reach an agreement even after much discussion.
- 男方 nánfāng N: male (groom's) side
- 女方 nǚfāng N: female (bride's) side
- 雙方 shuāngfāng N: both sides
小陳結婚的時候，男方女方同意一起請客，雙方的客人加起來一共有三百人。
When Little Chen got married, the bride's and groom's sides agreed to hold the reception together. There were a total of 300 guests from both sides.
32. 正 zhèng Adv: precisely
小王給我打電話的時候，我正在洗澡，沒有辦法接電話。
I was in the shower right when Little Wang called, and couldn't pick up the phone.
33. 調查 diàochá V/N: to investigate/investigation
1) 學校昨天開始調查有多少學生吸毒。
2) 根據學校的調查，抽煙的學生越來越多。
1) Yesterday the school began to investigate how many students take drugs.
2) According to the school's investigation, more and more students smoke cigarettes.
34. 隨時 suíshí Adv: at any time
我明天都在家，你隨時可以過來。
I'll be at home all day tomorrow, so come over at any time.
35. 名單 míngdān N: name list (M: 張)
36. 收聽 shōutīng V/N: to listen to (a broadcast)/listening
本節目下次將播出大千公司張大海經理的訪問錄音。他談的是跨國企業的發展，歡迎大家按時收聽。
Next time on this program, we will broadcast an interview with Mr. Zhang Dahai, manager of Daqian Corporation. He will be discussing the development of multi-national companies, and we welcome everybody to listen at the usual time.

收看 shōukàn V/N: to watch (a broadcast)

今天的球賽就播到這裡。謝謝大家的收看，我們下週再見。

And here ends today's broadcast of the match. Thank you for watching. See you next week.

Grammar

1. 根據消防隊員在現場的了解，此起火災是因瓦斯爆炸而引起。

According to what firemen on the scene know, the fire broke out because of a gas explosion.

Explanation: “根據” indicates that something is to be the basis of an action, judgement or statement. “根據” is followed by a noun phrase, which is in turn followed by the clause containing the subject.

王：你們的旅行團明天去哪裡？還在德國參觀嗎？

李：不是，_____，明天我們要飛到義大利去。

王：來面談的人當中，張美生跟林家容的條件最好。他們兩個人的經歷誰比較多？

李：_____，張美生的經歷比林家容多。

王：張老師的 jiǎnchá (檢查) 報告出來了沒有？他的病嚴重嗎？

李：出來了。_____，他的病並不嚴重。

王：關於本公司的介紹，現在報告完畢，各位有什麼問題？

李：剛剛你說到發展計畫。_____，你們要發展網路 chǎnpǐn (產品)，本公司很有興趣，能不能請你再多說一點。

根據履歷表
根據旅行社的行程

根據醫院的報告
根據貴公司的計畫

Additional Vocabulary

當中: among jiǎnchá (檢查): to check chǎnpǐn (產品): product

2. 此起火災是因六樓「你會紅 KTV」瓦斯爆炸而引起。

The fire broke out because of a gas explosion in the “Ni Hui Hong KTV” on the sixth floor.

Explanation: “此” is used when writing or in formal speech; it means “這”. It is followed by a noun, or modifier + noun; it can be used as a pronoun, in which case it does not have to be followed by a noun.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 此起火災是因六樓「你會紅 KTV」瓦斯爆炸而引起。

→

2. 根據此張保單，每年應繳三萬塊保費。

→

3. 此間病房之病人已於上月底出院。

→

4. 本公司打算明年一月開始進行此計畫。

→

Additional Vocabulary

進行: to proceed

Please change the following sentences to the “此” written style.

1. 這次考試的結果會在下星期通知學生。

→

2. 請不要在這裡烤肉。

→

3. ③此起火災是因六樓「你會紅 KTV」瓦斯爆炸而引起。

The fire broke out because of a gas explosion in the “Ni Hui Hong KTV” on the sixth floor.

③……三十六名客人因無其他逃生設備而被困在濃煙裡。

...thirty-six patrons of the establishment had no other escape equipment, and were therefore stuck in the dense smoke.

Explanation: “而” is the conjunction in the “因……而……” construction, and means “所以”, or “就”. This construction links the reason, which follows “因”, and the result, which follows “而”. It is mostly used in writing or on formal occasions.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 三十六名客人因無其他逃生設備而被困在濃煙裡。

→

2. 山上的花草樹木都因久未下雨而乾死。

→

3. 我女朋友常因一點小事而不跟我說話。

→

4. 此起彼大火因消防隊及時趕到而未造成嚴重災害。

→

Additional Vocabulary

乾: dry 及時: punctual, on time

Please change the following sentences to the “因…而” written style.

1. 因為天氣不好，班機就停飛了。

→

2. 書宜跟大海因為了解(到他們並不合適)就分手了。

→

4. 由於該大樓安全門被鎖，找不到鑰匙，無法打開。

Because the fire doors in the building were locked, and there was no key to be found, the doors could not be opened.

Explanation: “由於” is a conjunction meaning “因為”. It is used in writing or formal occasions to express a reason. The clause following it, which expresses the result, can begin with a “所以”, “因此”, or “因而” (though these may be omitted.) As compared to “因為”: a) “因為” is more colloquial; b) “因為” can only be used together with “所以”, and not with “因此” or “因而”; c) “因為” can be used at the beginning of a final clause, but “由於” cannot (unless preceded by a “是”, making “……是由於……”).

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 由於該大樓安全門被鎖，找不到鑰匙，無法打開。

→

2. 由於老張的外語能力很好，老闆派他到外國工作。

→

3. 由於考試的成績(績)太差，他下個月得補考。

→

4. 由於電話費未繳，他被停話了。

→

Please change the following sentences to the “由於” written style.

1. 濃煙太多，所以被困在大樓裡的人沒有辦法逃生。

→

2. 醫生給的藥不對，所以病人很快就死了。

→

Additional Vocabulary

成 jī (績): grade; score

5. 由於該大樓安全門被鎖，找不到鑰匙，無法打開。

Because the fire doors in the building were locked, and there was no key to be found, the doors could not be opened.

Explanation: “該” is used in writing, and means “前面剛提過的這/那個 the thing mentioned previously”; it is followed by a noun or modifier + noun.

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 東三街的「你會紅 KTV」昨晚起火。由於該大樓安全門被鎖，找不到鑰匙，無法打開。

→

2. 張老師有一名學生考試的時候遲到了。該名學生必須補考。

→

3. 我們上週參觀了大安公司。該公司即將發展跨國企業，需要很多外語能力好的人。

→

4. 行遍天下旅行社的費用比較高，不過該旅行社的行程平常都比別家好。

→

Please change the following sentences to the “該” written style.

1. 今年萬國銀行的客戶最多，因為這家銀行的服務好，lìxī(利息)高。

→

2. 大安醫院是本市最大的醫院，這家醫院有五百張病床。

→

Additional Vocabulary

lìxī (利息): (financial) interest

6. 關於起火原因及責任，警方正調查中。

Police are conducting an investigation into the reason and the responsibility for the fire.

Explanation: “正…中” means “正在……in the middle of ...”, and indicates that the action is proceeding. “正” is followed by a verb indicating this continual process, such as “調查”, “了解”, “計畫”, “準備”, “聯絡”, “搶救”, “急救”, “發展”, “修理”, “檢查”, “考慮”, “討論”, “研究”, or “趕工”.

Please fill in the blank with a proper phrase chosen from the following: 正計畫中、正了解

中、正準備中、正調查中、正聯絡中、正修理中、正搶救中、正急救中

1. 東三街大火已經撲滅。關於起火原因及責任，警方_____。
2. 期末考有一半以上學生考試不及格，學生考壞的原因老師_____。
3. 關於明年暑假去歐洲旅行的事，我們_____。
4. 本餐廳大安店即將在此為您服務，現在_____。到時候歡迎光臨。
5. 昨天出車禍的學生，父母在國外旅行。警方_____。

Additional Vocabulary

為: for

7. 關於起火原因及責任，警方正調查中。

Police are conducting an investigation into the reason and the responsibility for the fire.

Explanation: “關於” indicates the object concerned. It can be followed by a noun phrase, verb phrase, or clause. “關於” is normally used in the initial clause; if used in the final clause, it should be expressed as “……是關於……”

王：李小姐，請問你保險費是怎麼扣的？

李：我不清楚。_____，是張小姐管的，你最好問她。

王：今天經理找我們來，有什麼事？

李：這兩個月公司的業務越來越差。你們都在公司很久了，_____，各位有什麼意見？

王：你買的那本是什麼樣的書？

李：我現在對中國藝術很有興趣。我買的這一本是_____。

學生：老師，這次的考試，你準備考什麼樣的題目？

老師：_____，我上次已經說得很清楚了。不要再問了。

24

8. 本台將隨時播出最新消息，敬請注意收聽。

We will broadcast the latest news on this at any time, so please stay tuned.

Explanation: “將” is used in writing to indicate that an action or situation will soon occur; it thus means “will” or “is about to”

Please change the following into spoken-style sentences.

1. 本台將隨時播出最新消息，敬請注意收聽。

→

2. 本校籃球隊將於五月底到日本參加「大學杯」籃球比賽。

→

3. 本公司下個月將派王經理去美國調查市場。

→

4. 從下個月起，沒戴安全帽的人將被警察 fā(罰)五百元。

→

Additional Vocabulary

市場: market fā (罰): to fine

Please change the following sentences to the “將” written style.

1. 結婚以後我們要住在我們公司附近。

→

2. 本公司要從七月一日開始改名為「日新公司」。

→

9. 本台將隨時播出最新消息，敬請注意收聽。

We will broadcast the latest news on this at any time, so please stay tuned.

Explanation: “隨時” is placed in front of the verb or adverb, and means “什麼時候都……”.

王：為什麼要申請自動提款卡？沒有不可以嗎？

李：有了自動提款卡 _____，比較方便。

王：我什麼時候去你家比較好？

李：這個星期我不上班，我 _____。你哪天來我家都沒關係。

王：我的護照可不可以放在旅館裡，不要帶出去？

李：不好。旅行的時候，最好 _____。

王：火車站怎麼走，你知道不知道？

李：我來看看 dìtú (地圖)。我也剛搬到這裡來，所以 _____。

隨時都帶著地圖

隨時可以提款

隨時帶著護照

隨時都有空

Additional Vocabulary

dìtú (地圖): map

Aural Comprehension Drill

The following speech may contain some unfamiliar vocabulary. Do not be concerned if you have not yet learned the vocabulary or do not understand its meaning. Try to guess the meaning from the context, then answer the questions.

- () 這是什麼？
 - a. 廣播新聞
 - b. 電視新聞
 - c. 廣播節目
- () 這段在說什麼？
 - a. 送受傷的人到醫院急救
 - b. 警方在調查有多少人受傷
 - c. 有一架飛機爆炸了
- () 這件事是什麼時候發生的？
 - a. 下午兩點四十分
 - b. 上午兩點三十五分
 - c. 夜裡兩點三十五分
- () 這架飛機為什麼會爆炸？
 - a. 飛得太快
 - b. 還在調查中
 - c. 起飛的時候發生問題
- () 這架飛機上的人情形怎麼樣？
 - a. 都已經回家了
 - b. 都住院了
 - c. 有的已經死了，有的受傷了
- () 怎麼樣可以知道更多關於這件事的消息？
 - a. 看醫院的通報
 - b. 收看下次的電視
 - c. 收聽下次的廣播

Notes

1. “本台消息” means “The news from our station.” It is a common phrase used at the beginning of a broadcast news. “本報消息” is used in newspapers.
2. “此起火災是因六樓「你會紅KTV」瓦斯爆炸而引起的。” means “This fire was caused by a gas explosion at ‘Ni Hui Hong KTV’ on the six floor.”

〔 简体课文 〕
(Text in Simplified Characters)

(本台消息) 台南市东三街今天凌晨两点发生一起大火。消防队接到通报后，马上赶到现场抢救。根据消防队员在现场的了解，此起火灾是因六楼「你会红KTV」瓦斯爆炸而引起。由于安全门被锁，却找不到钥匙，无法打开。当时还在里面唱歌的36名客人因无其他逃生设备而被困在浓烟里，情况很危险。本台记者张台生到现场时，看见有些客人因等不及抢救自该大楼六楼跳下，造成五死七伤。后来消防队员撞开安全门，将其他人救出，大火亦于四点左右扑灭。关于起火原因及责任，警方正调查中。本台将随时播出最新消息及死伤名单，敬请注意收听。

Exercises

I. Who is the most willful?

The students are divided into groups of two, and asked to tell each other who the most stubborn or self-willed of the people they know is, and why they think so. Does the person say “absolutely must” often? At all? When? After talking for three minutes, their conclusions should be organized, written down, and handed in to the teacher.

Additional Vocabulary

gùzhí (固執): to be stubborn.

rènxìng (任性): to be self-willed

II. What to do if there is a disaster?

The teacher writes the topics below on cards. The students are split into groups of four or five, and each group is given a card. They spend five minutes discussing what to do in the case of the emergency on their card. They then present their conclusions to the class; alternatively, they write them down and either stick them on the wall or hand them in to the teacher.

1. 樓上忽然起火了。
2. 忽然發生dìzhèn(地震)。
3. 有一個神經病拿著qiāng(槍)跑進學校來。
4. 在家看書準備考試的時候，忽然停電了，什麼都看不見，也沒辦法用diànkì(電器)。
5. 有一個小偷在半夜到你家來偷東西，被你看見了。小偷拿出刀來，要shā(殺)你。

Additional Vocabulary

dìzhèn (地震): earthquake

qiāng (槍): gun

diànkì (電器): electric appliances

shā (殺): to kill

III. What is the reporter asking?

The students are told that they are to interview their Chinese teacher for the school magazine. They are given ten minutes to prepare their questions and to write them down — about 10 - 15 per person. The students then interview the teacher, either in turn or by appointing a representative to be the reporter. (If the teacher and the students know each other well, the students may interview someone else, perhaps a celebrity, political personage, etc., who is played by one of the students.)

IV. Who is the thief?

The teacher writes on cards the details of a robbery: time, place, objects stolen, etc., e.g. the teacher's credit card was stolen from his desk last Friday afternoon. Two students are chosen to play policemen, and they are given cards. Four other students are chosen to play suspects, and they are also given cards but they must choose one of their number to be the thief, such that only they know who the thief is. The remaining students do not see the cards. The students

playing policemen and suspects are given a few minutes to prepare their questions and answers. Then the policemen in turn question the four suspects and try to detect the identity of the thief. The remaining students also try to find out the thief's identity. The teacher should help with any vocabulary questions.

V. Role play

1. Two people: one is a policeman, the other someone reporting a crime. This person has had his wallet stolen on the street, and so has gone to the police station to report. Act out their conversation.
2. Two people. The first is calling a bank to report that their credit card is missing. The other is the bank employee who asks when and how the card came to be missing. The first person does not really remember and so the process of this discovery is related: when the card was last used, how it was found to be missing that day, etc. Act out what the two people might say to one another.
3. Two people. One is a policeman; the other has witnessed a car accident: a car was driving too fast and crashed into a telephone pole at the side of the road; it exploded and burst into flames. This person calls the police at once and tells the policeman. Act out the conversation they might have.
4. Four people: two are policemen and two are roommates, one of whom has been seriously injured in an assault. One of the policemen calls for an ambulance, while the other makes inquiries, so as to find out how and why the situation happened. The other roommate returns and is shocked at this scene. When the ambulance arrives to remove the victim, the other roommate must stay to answer the policemen's questions. Act out their dialogue.
5. A few friends go out to a KTV or pub, where suddenly a fire breaks out. What do they do? Some run to call the emergency services; others may try to escape; others may collapse in tears. Act out the scene.

Reading Comprehension

新聞記者的話

最近有好幾起KTV大火，都造成嚴重死傷損失，光一起火災就死傷三十八人，當然引起大家對公共場所安全的討論。根據記者的了解，不管是上週五台中「大家唱KTV」的大火，還是昨天凌晨二時左右台北「你會紅KTV」的大火，都有一樣的問題，那就是逃生設備不全，安全門前面堆滿了東西，無法打開，逃生路線不清楚。由於現場的客人對火災逃生常識不夠，死傷人數也因客人亂跳樓而增加。KTV的老闆明明知道自已的逃生設備有問題，居然還讓客人

進來，完全不管客人的安全，現在終於受到嚴重損失。這樣的老闆，這樣的場所，警察局非管不可。現在罵警察局沒有把工作做好，沒有用，那些死了的人也救不回來了。此時我們能做的就是請警察局隨時去各公共場所檢查，我們自己也要多學些關於火災逃生的常識。下面就是消防隊員告訴記者的一些火災逃生須知，請大家注意。

Additional Vocabulary

公共場所: public place	tǎolùn (討論): to discuss
常識: common knowledge	跳樓: to jump from a building
zēng (增) 加: to increase	jiǎnchá (檢查): to check, inspect

Questions:

1. 為什麼大家都在討論公共場所的安全？
2. 最近發生的幾起大火，都是什麼原因造成的？
3. 火災死傷人數為什麼增加？
4. 警察局為什麼非管KTV這樣的場所不可？
5. 為什麼現在罵警察局沒有用？
6. 現在我們能請警察做什麼？
7. 除了警察局應該做的事，我們自己也要怎麼做？

Try to Guess

1. What do you think “氣炸了” means?
a) gas explosion b) H-bomb exploded c) to fly into a rage
2. What do you think “天災人禍” means?
a) natural disaster and man-made calamity
b) typhoon and car accident
c) someone set a fire in an flying airplane
3. What do you think “無能” means?
a) no ability b) incapable c) cannot
4. What do you think “好處” means?
a) good direction b) good points c) good place

Authentic Materials

I. 報案單

台北市政府警察局大安分局		受理刑事案件報案三聯單		WN81 No010812	
受理時間	87年6月25日20時20分		受理方式	親自	電話
				✓	
案類	①殺人 ②強盜 ③搶奪 ④海盜 ⑤擄人勒贖 ⑥恐嚇 ⑦強姦 ⑧竊盜 ⑨槍擊				
	⑩縱火……				
	……				
	……				
報案人	姓名	高新雨 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 男 <input type="checkbox"/> 女	被害人	姓名：高新雨、趙奇	
	身分證字號 (護照號碼)	N134952769	發生地點	發生時間：88年6月25日 時	
	出生年月日	59年2月3日		地點：台北縣(市)大安市(區鎮鄉) 龍安里(村)溫州路(街)段 88巷 弄15號4樓 室	
	連絡電話	(02)2768-4312			
台端於上記時地向本單位報案，受理後積極偵辦中。					
報案人簽章：高新雨					
備註	1. 謊報刑案屬違法行為，得處七年以下有期徒刑。 2. 本單僅為報案登記，不做其他證明之用。		單位核章	建檔人職章	主管職章
					填單人職章

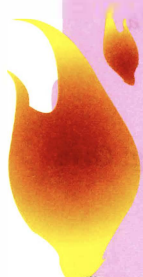
1. 報案的人是誰？是男的，還是女的？這個人幾歲？
2. 這個人是怎麼報案的？
3. 這件事情是什麼時候發生的？
4. 這件事情是在哪裡發生的？
5. 如果報案的這個人就是課本裡的新雨，你想「竊盜」是什麼意思？

II. 火災逃生須知

火災逃生



- 不要隨便跳樓。
- 逃生比搶救東西重要。
- 火災時應向樓下逃生，如果往下的通路被火勢阻斷，應立即向屋頂平台逃生，等待消防人員搭救，千萬不可由高樓跳下。
- 簡易逃生方法
 1. 用水弄濕全身衣物，可中和空氣中的高溫。
 2. 用濕毛巾掩住口鼻，可隔絕濃煙侵襲。
 3. 如果要通過火焰才能逃生時，應先將衣服用水弄濕，或用濕棉被、毛毯或床單把身體包起來，快速通過。
 4. 如果濃煙太大，找個一般塑膠袋，打開，左右搖晃，讓袋裡裝滿空氣，再套在頭上，一手拉緊袋口，沿著牆面逃生。
 5. 火災發生後，想開門逃出去，應先用手摸門板及把手，如果很熱，千萬別開門，以免門外的火竄進來。
 6. 火災逃生時，如果要上下樓，千萬不可使用電梯，以免忽然斷電，被困在內。



1. 你想「濕」是什麼意思？
2. 如果你在大樓裡，發生火災時，你要怎麼辦？
3. 火災的時候，如果濃煙太大，應該怎麼辦？
4. 火災的時候，你在裡面，想要開門逃出去，應該先做什麼？
5. 你想「電梯」是什麼？火災逃生時，為什麼不可以用電梯？

VOCABULARY INDEX

生詞索引

A

ǎi	矮	矮	to be short (in height)	3
àiqíng	愛情	爱情	love (between a couple)	1
ai	唉	唉	P: indicates a sigh of regret or sadness	15
ānjìng	安靜	安静	to be quiet	9
ānpái	安排	安排	to arrange	11
ānquán	安全	安全	to be safe; to be secure	6
ānquándài	安全帶	安全带	safety belt	16
ānquánmào	安全帽	安全帽	safety helmet	16
ānwèi	安慰	安慰	to console	18
ānxīn	安心	安心	to have peace of mind	18
àn	按	按	to press; to follow; according to	11
àn·zi	案子	案子	case	23

B

bālěiwǔ	芭蕾舞	芭蕾舞	ballet	10
bǎi	擺	摆	to arrange; to pur	7
bǎi dìtān	擺地攤	摆地摊	to arrange a sidewalk display	7
bǎiniánhǎohé	百年好合	百年好合	One hundred years of harmony (a common wedding wish)	20
bàifǎng	拜訪	拜访	to visit	18
bàituō	拜託	拜托	a polite way to ask for something; Give me a break	13
bān	班	班	for scheduled buses; class	4
bàntiān	半天	半天	half a day; a long time	9
bànyè	半夜	半夜	middle of the night	9
bāngzhù	幫助	帮助	assistance /to help; assist; help	21
bàng	棒	棒	to be great; excellent	6
bāo	包	包	to guarantee; to wrap	1
bāokuò	包括	包括	to include	3
bāoniǐhǎokàn	包你好看	包你好看	P:name of a video rental store	1
bǎo·bǎo	寶寶	宝宝	baby	19
bǎodān	保單	保单	insurance policy	14
bǎolíngqiú	保齡球	保龄球	bowling	5

bǎoxiǎn	保險	保险	an insurance; to be secure	3
bǎozhèng	保證	保证	to guarantee	22
bǎozhèngrén	保證人	保证人	guarantor	22
bǎozhèngshū	保證書	保证书	warranty	22
bào	抱	抱	to embrace	18
bào	報	报	newspaper	10
bào'àn	報案	报案	to report a case	23
bàogào	報告	报告	to announce; to report	1
bàomíng	報名	报名	to register; to sign up	3
bàoqiàn	抱歉	抱歉	to be sorry	18
bàoyùnmǐhuā	爆玉米花	爆玉米花	popcorn	8
bàozhà	爆炸	爆炸	to explode	24
bàozhǐ	報紙	报纸	newspaper	10
bēi	背	背	to carry on the back	6
bēibāo	背包	背包	backpack	6
bēijù	悲劇	悲剧	tragedy	1
bèi	背	背	back	14
bèi	被	被	to carry on the back	13
bèidòng	被動	被动	to be passive	13
bèimiàn	背面	背面	back; reverse	14
bēnpǎo	奔跑	奔跑	to run	18
běn	本	本	SP: this; our	14
běnlái	本來	本来	originally	5
bèn	笨	笨	stupid	21
bísāi	鼻塞	鼻塞	to get a stopped-up nose; to have a stuffed-up	15
bí·zi	鼻子	鼻子	nose	15
bǐ	比	比	to compare	2
bǐlù	筆錄	笔录	notes; record; account	23
bǐsài	比賽	比赛	to compare/contest; race	2
bǐwán	比完	比完	game over	2
bìxū	必須	必须	should; must	18
bìyè	畢業	毕业	to graduate	12
biàn	遍	遍	everywhere/measure for times of an action which is done	3
biàn	變	变	to change	5
biàngēng	變更	变更	to alter	14
biǎoshì	表示	表示	to express; mean	21
biǎoyǎn	表演	表演	to perform/a performance	10

bié	別	別	Adv: don't (imperatively) V: to attach	2, 20
biérén	別人	別人	other people	2
biézhēn	別針	別針	brooch	20
bīng	冰	冰	ice	5
bìng	並	并	Adv: at all; really	21
bìng	病	病	to fall ill/disease; illness	15
bìngfáng	病房	病房	sick room; patient's room	18
bìngjià	病假	病假	sick leave	15
bìng·le	病了	病了	to fall ill; to catch a disease	15
bìngrén	病人	病人	sick person; patient	15
bófù	伯父	伯父	uncle	19
bómǔ	伯母	伯母	aunt	19
bòchū	播出	播出	to broadcast	24
búdàn	不但	不但	conj: not only	3
búguò	不過	不过	conj: however	1
bújiàn·le	不見了	不见了	gone, not to be found	23
búsuan	不算	不算	not count as	16
búzhìyú	不至於	不至于	Adv: not to so far as to	16
bǔkǎo	補考	补考	to make up a test	21
bù	部	部	M: for movies, machines, etc.	1
bùdé·bù	不得不	不得不	cannot but	20
bùdé·liǎo	不得了	不得了	to be serious/extremely; exceedingly	10
bùguǎn.....dōu	不管.....都	不管.....都	it does not matter...all	17

C

cā	擦	擦	to wipe	11
cái	才	才	Adv: then; then and only then	3
cái	才(only)	才(only)	Adv: only	10
cānguān	參觀	参观	to tour; to visit (an institution)	3
cānjiā	參加	参加	to participate, to join	3
cānjù	餐具	餐具	table ware	9
cǎo	草	草	plant; grass	5
céngjīng	曾經	曾经	Adv: to have the experience; to have done	12
chā	差	差	to be poor/to differ from; to fall short of	3
cháguǎn	茶館	茶馆	tea house	9
chájù	茶具	茶具	tea set	9
cháshí	茶食	茶食	tea snacks	9
cháyè	茶葉	茶叶	tea leaves	9
cháyìguǎn	茶藝館	茶艺馆	tea house	9

chàbùduō	差不多	差不多	Adv: almost; nearly	3
chàyìdiǎn	差一點	差一点	Adv: nearly; on the verge of	3
cháng	嘗	尝	to taste	7
chǎng	場	场	M: for events	10
chǎo	炒	炒	to stir fry	7
chǎojià	吵架	吵架	to argue	22
chǎo mǐfěn	炒米粉	炒米粉	fried rice noodles	7
chǎonào	吵鬧	吵闹	to make noise	18
chēhuò	車禍	车祸	traffic accident	16
chēpiào	車票	车票	train or bus ticket	3
chèn	趁	趁	Adv: to take advantage of; avail oneself of/while	12
chéng	成	成	as	20
chénggōng	成功	成功	success/to succeed/to be a success	21
chībúxià	吃不下	吃不下	to be unable to eat	22
chībùliǎo	吃不了	吃不了	cannot finish eating (too much)	7
chídào	遲到	迟到	to be late	20
chōu	抽	抽	to draw out; to pull out; to smoke	10
chōubùchūlái	抽不出來	抽不出来	cannot take out; unable to draw out; unable to pull out	10
chōutì	抽屜	抽屉	drawer	23
chū	齣	出	M: for dramas	10
chū chēhuò	出車禍	出车祸	to have a traffic accident	16
chūfā	出發	出发	to depart; to set out	5
chūmén	出門	出门	to go out; to leave	9
chūyuàn	出院	出院	to check out of a hospital	18
chú·le	除了	除了	Adv: other than; besides	12
chuī	吹	吹	to blow	19
chuīfēngjī	吹風機	吹风机	hair dryer	19
Chūnshēng	春生	春生	a person's name	13
chūntiān	春天	春天	spring	4
cǐ	此	此	SP: this	24
cìshù	次數	次数	number of times; number of occasions	14
cōngmíng	聰明	聪明	to be intelligent; bright; smart	21
cónglái	從來	从来	Adv: from the beginning	17
cóngqián	從前	从前	a long time ago, before, formerly	1
cuī	催	催	to press; push; to rush	14
cún	存	存	to deposit; to save	11
cúnkǔǎn	存款	存款	to deposit money	13

cuòguò	錯過	错过	to miss; to let slip	10
--------	----	----	----------------------	----

D

dā	搭	搭	to put up; to build	6
dǎbàn	打扮	打扮	to dress up	20
dǎgōng	打工	打工	to work part-time	11
dǎhūn	打昏	打昏	to knock unconscious	23
dǎhuǒjī	打火機	打火机	lighter	6
dǎjià	打架	打架	to fight	22
dǎkāi	打開	打开	to turn on	6
dǎpái	打牌	打牌	to play cards	8
dǎpēntì	打噴嚏	打喷嚏	to sneeze	15
dǎrǎo	打擾	打扰	to disturb	19
dǎsǎo	打掃	打扫	to sweep	11
dǎsuàn	打算	打算	to plan; to intend/plan; intention	3
dǎyāng	打烊	打烊	to close a shop after business hours	11
dǎzhēn	打針	打针	to have a shot; to give an injection	17
Dà'ān Yīyuàn	大安醫院	大安医院	a name of a hospital	18
dàfāng	大方	大方	to be generous	15
dàgēdà	大哥大	大哥大	cellular phone	5
dàjiā	大家	大家	everybody; everyone	19
dàtuǐ	大腿	大腿	thigh	16
dài	代	代	to substitute	14
dài	帶	带	to lead	11
dài	戴	戴	to wear	20
dàibān	代班	代班	to work in place of someone else; to fill in; to substitute for	15
dàijiǎo	代繳	代缴	to pay in place of	14
dàiwèi	帶位	带位	to lead to a seat; to usher	11
dàiyù	待遇	待遇	salary; pay	12
dài·zi	帶子	带子	tape cassette; ribbon	16
dài·zi	袋子	袋子	bag	20
dānrénfáng	單人房	单人房	single room	4
dānxīn	擔心	担心	to worry/to be worried	13
dàn	淡	淡	to be weak or thin; to be tasteless	9
dàngāo	蛋糕	蛋糕	cake	19
Dāngdài	當代劇場	当代剧场	The Contemporary Theater, theater group	10
Jùchǎng				
dāngrán	當然	当然	Adv: naturally; of course	10

dāngshí	當時	当时	at that time	16
dàochù	到處	到处	Adv: everywhere	12
dàolǐ	道理	道理	reason; sense	19
dàoqī	到期	到期	to reach the deadline	3
dàoqiàn	道歉	道歉	to apologize	18
dédào	得到	得到	to get; to obtain	7
Déguó	德國	德国	Germany	3
Déwén	德文	德文	German language	12
dēnghào	燈號	灯号	electric number indicator	17
dī	低	低	to be short (in height)	3
dǐxià	底下	底下	below; beneath; under	6
dìdiǎn	地點	地点	place; location; venue	3
diǎn	點	点	to light, order, to drop (medicine) into	19
diàn	店	店	store; shop	
diàndòng	電動	电动	electrical-controlled	5
diàndòngwánjù	電動玩具	电动玩具	video game	5
diànshì	電視長片	电视长片	TV movie	2
chángpiàn				
diànyǐng	電影明星	电影明星	movie star	8
míngxīng				
diànyǐngyuàn	電影院	电影院	movie theater	10
diànyuán	店員	店员	clerk, shop attendant	1
diào	釣	钓	to fish; to lure	5
diàochá	調查	调查	to investigate/investigation	24
diàoyú	釣魚	钓鱼	to go fishing	5
diē	跌	跌	to stagger; to fall	11
dìngbúdào	訂不到	订不到	unable to reserve	4
dìnghūn	訂婚	订婚	to get engaged	19
diū	丟	丢	to throw; to get rid of; to lose	8
diū fēibiāo	丟飛鏢	丢飞镖	to throw darts	8
diūliǎn	丟臉	丢脸	to be embarrassed/to lose face	21
dōngbù	東部	东部	eastern part	4
dōngtiān	冬天	冬天	winter	4
dòng	動	动	to move	1
dòng	棟	栋	M: for houses	18
dòngshǒushù	動手術	动手术	to perform an operation	18
dòngwù	動物	动物	animal	17
dòngzuò	動作	动作	action; movement	1
dòngzuòpiàn	動作片	动作片	action movie	1

dú	毒	毒	poison/to poison	17
dù	度	度	degree	4
dù·zi	肚子	肚子	stomach	17
duàn	斷	断	to break; to be broken	16
duī	堆	堆	M: for a pile of something	13
duì	隊	队	M: team, for contest teams	2
duì	對	对	to towards	1
duìbùqǐ	對不起	对不起	sorry (to be unable to face)	21
duìfāng	對方	对方	opposite, the other side	24

E

Éluósī	俄羅斯	俄罗斯	Russia	10
Éluósī	俄羅斯芭蕾舞	俄罗斯芭蕾舞	Russian Ballet Dance Troupe	10
Bāilěiwǔtuán	團	团		
ér	而	而	and, but (sometimes not translated)	24
érqiě	而且	而且	moreover	12
ér·zi	兒子	儿子	son	19
ěr·duo	耳朵	耳朵	an ear	15

F

fā	發	发	to give out; break out	22
fāpí·qì	發脾氣	发脾气	to get angry	22
fāshāo	發燒	发烧	to have a fever	15
fāshēng	發生	发生	to happen, occur	21
fāshénjīng	發神經	发神经	to go crazy	22
fāxiàn	發現	发现	to discover	17
fāyán	發炎	发炎	to infect; to inflame	15
fāzhǎn	發展	发展	development/to develop	12
fǎxing	髮型	发型	hairstyle	20
Fǎwén	法文	法文	French language	12
fān	翻	翻	to turn (over; up side down, etc.)	6, 23
fánnǎo	煩惱	烦恼	to be concerned, worried/trouble	20
fǎnzhèng	反正	反正	Adv: anyway, as it is	19
fàntīng	飯廳	饭厅	dining room	19
fǎngkè	訪客	访客	visitor	18
fǎngwèn	訪問	访问	to interview; to visit/interview; visit	18
fàngjià	放假	放假	to have or take a vacation	4
fàngxīn	放心	放心	to stop worrying; to rest assured	3
fēi	飛	飞	to fly	4

fēibiāo	飛鏢	飞镖	dart	8
fēi.....bùkě	非……不可	非……不可	Adv: absolutely must...	23
fēijī	飛機	飞机	airplane	4
Fēizhōu	非洲	非洲	Africa	3
Fēnfēn	芬芬	芬芬	a girl's name	18
fēnshǒu	分手	分手	to split up; to separate	22
fēng	風	风	the wind	4
fēngjǐng	風景	风景	scenery	3
fēngmì	蜂蜜	蜂蜜	honey	9
fēngzāi	風災	风灾	wind damage	24
fènr	份兒	份儿	share; set	9
fúlì	福利	福利	benefits; welfare	12
fùmǔ	父母	父母	father and mother	19
fùqīn	父親	父亲	father	22
fùzá	複雜	复杂	to be complicated	11

G

gāi	該	该	SP: this; the above	24
gǎi	改	改	to change; to alter; to correct	5
gǎibiàn	改變	改变	to change/change	5
gǎn	敢	敢	to dare	22
gǎn	趕	赶	to hurry; to catch up	7
gǎnkuài	趕快	赶快	Adv: quickly; to hurry up	7
gǎnmào	感冒	感冒	common cold	15
Gāo	高 (姓)	高 (姓)	Gao (common Chinese surname)	3
gāo	高	高	to be tall/high	3
gāogēnxié	高跟鞋	高跟鞋	high-heeled shoes	20
gāosù	高速	高速	high speed	16
gāosù gōnglù	高速公路	高速公路	highway; expressway	16
gēxīng	歌星	歌星	singer	8
gè	各	各	SP: each; every	9
gèwèi	各位	各位	each person	14
gēn	根	根	M: (measure word for long thin objects, e.g. cigarettes, matches, etc.)	19
gēnjù	根據	根据	according to	24
gèng	更	更	Adv: even more; to a greater degree	4
gōngfū	功夫	功夫	Kung fu; martial arts	1
gōngfūpiàn	功夫片	功夫片	Kung fu/martial arts movie	1
gōng-gōng	公公	公公	father-in-law	19

gōngjù	工具	工具	tool	9
gōngkè	功課	功課	homework; school work	21
gōnglù	公路	公路	highway; public road	16
gōngshì	公事	公事	business matter	22
gōngxǐ	恭喜	恭喜	to congratulate	20
gōngzuò	工作人員	工作人員	employee; worker	18
rényuán				
gòuwù	購物	購物	to shop; go shopping	13
guāzǐ	瓜子	瓜子	watermelon seeds	9
guà	掛	挂	to hang; suspend	
guàhào	掛號	挂号	to register	17
guàhàozhèng	掛號證	挂号证	registration card	17
guài	怪	怪	to be strange; to blame	17, 21
guān	關	关	to close; to turn off	2
guānxīn	關心	关心	to be concerned/concern	10
guānyú	關於	关于	CV: in regard to	24
guānzhòng	觀眾	观众	audience	10
guǎn	管	管	to take care of; to be in charge	7
guǎnlǐ	管理	管理	to manage; to administrative fee	14
guǎnlǐfèi	管理費	管理费	management fee	14
guǎnlǐyuán	管理員	管理员	caretaker; janitor	14
guǎn	罐	罐	M: for cans	6
guǎntóu	罐頭	罐头	can; canned food	6
guāng	光	光	Adv: only; just	23
guǎngbò	廣播	广播	broadcast/to broad cast	24
guǎnggào	廣告	广告	commercial; advertisement	2
gǔjī	古跡	古迹	relics; ruins	3
guǐ	鬼	鬼	ghost	22
guō·zi	鍋子	锅子	pot; pan; cooker	6
guójiā	國家	国家	country	3
Guójiā Jùyuàn	國家劇院	国家剧院	National Theater	10
guò	過	过	P:(used after a verb indicating past experience)	1
guòfèn	過分	过分	to be excessive; going too far	13
guòmǐn	過敏	过敏	allergy	17
guòqī	過期	过期	to expire; to overdue; to past the deadline	3
H				
hā·jiū	哈啾	哈啾	atchoo; noise of a sneeze	15

Hāmǔléitè	哈姆雷特	哈姆雷特	Hamlet	10
háishì	還是	还是	it's best to	9
hǎi	海	海	sea	4
hǎibiān	海邊	海边	beach; sea side	4
hǎixiān	海鮮	海鲜	seafood	18
hài	嗨	嗨	I: Hi; Hello	10
hài	害	害	to harm, cause someone to come to harm	22
hàn	和	和	and	9
hǎo	好	好	in order to, so as to	19
hǎotīng	好聽	好听	nice to listen to	6
hǎowán	好玩	好玩	to be fun	5
hǎoyùn	好運	好运	good luck	11
hàomǎ	號碼	号码	number	5
hé	合	合	to fit in with, match	19
héhǎo	和好	和好	to make up	22
Hépíng Lù	和平路	和平路	name of a street; Heping Road	23
héshì	合適	合适	to be suitable	7
hézuò	合作	合作	to cooperate/cooperation	14
hóng	紅	红	to be popular	8
hóngbāo	紅包	红包	red envelope	20
hóngbāodài	紅包袋	红包袋	red envelope	20
hóngchá	紅茶	红茶	black tea	9
hóulóng	喉嚨	喉咙	throat	15
hòuhuǐ	後悔	后悔	to regret	21
hòulái	後來	后来	afterwards; later	5
huā	花	花	flower; to spend	5, 23
huācǎo	花草	花草	flowers and plants	5
Huālián	花蓮	花莲	name of a place in eastern Taiwan	4
huāshēng	花生	花生	peanut	9
huán	還	还	to return	1
huīsè	灰色	灰色	gray	21
huīxīn	灰心	灰心	to depress	21
huìyuán	會員	会员	club member	1
huìyuánkǎ	會員卡	会员卡	membership card	1
hūnlǐ	婚禮	婚礼	wedding	20
huódòng	活動	活动	activity/to exercise	4
huǒ	火	火	fire	6
huǒchái	火柴	火柴	match	6
huǒzāi	火災	火灾	fire	24

huò	或	或	or	13
hūrán	忽然	忽然	suddenly; unexpectedly	17
hútú	糊塗	糊涂	to be confused	13
hùshì	護士	护士	nurse	16
hùtóu	戶頭	户头	bank account	13
hùzhào	護照	护照	passport	3

J

jīchǎng	機場	机场	airport	16
jīchǎng	機場交流道	机场交流道	airport interchange	16
jiāoliúdào				
(jī)dàn	〔雞〕蛋	〔鸡〕蛋	(chicken's) egg	19
jīhuì	機會	机会	opportunity	8
jīwěijiǔ	雞尾酒	鸡尾酒	cocktail	8
jí	及	及	and	18
jí	急	急	to be impatient; to be anxious; to be urgent; in a hurry	6
jíge	及格	及格	to make the grade, to pass the exam	21
jíhé	集合	集合	to gather; to meet	5
jǐjiāng	即將	即将	Adv: about to	14
jǐjiù	急救	急救	to save; to rescue; first aid	16
jízhěn	急診	急诊	emergency treatment	16
jízhěnshì	急診室	急诊室	emergency ward	16
jì	季	季	season	4
jì	繫	系	to die; to fasten	16
jìchéngchē	計程車	计程车	taxi	16
jìcuò	記錯	记错	to remember incorrectly	5
jì-de	記得	记得	to remember	5
jìhuà	計畫	计划	plan/to plan	4
jìmò	寂寞	寂寞	to be lonely	22
jìrán	既然	既然	since; because	12
jìshù	技術	技术	skill; technique	8
jìxù	繼續	继续	to continue; to resume	21
jìzhě	記者	记者	reporter	24
jiāchángcài	家常菜	家常菜	home cooking	19
jiāwèichá	加味茶	加味茶	scented or flavored tea	9
jiàqián	價錢	价钱	price	4
jiǎndān	簡單	简单	to be simple	11
jiànbǎo	健保	健保	health insurance	17

jiànbǎokǎ	健保卡	健保卡	health insurance card	17
jiànkāng	健康	健康	to be healthy/health	15
jiànmiàn	見面	见面	to meet with	11
jiàn xíng	健行	健行	to hike/hiking	5
jiāng	將	将	CV: (indicates a direct object, like “把” but more formal and more written-style) Adv: will; would	14
jiāng lái	將來	将来	in the future	12
jiǎng pǐn	獎品	奖品	reward; prize	7
jiāo	交	交	to hand over; to exchange	14
jiāo fǎ	教法	教法	teaching technique, style, method	23
jiāo gěi	交給	交给	to hand to	14
jiāo liú dào	交流道	交流道	interchange	16
jiāo tōng	交通	交通	communication; traffic	4
jiǎo	繳	缴	to pay	11
jiào	叫	叫	to call; to tell someone to do something	2
jiào shì	教室	教室	classroom	12
jiē	接	接	to pick up; to meet	7
jiē shòu	接受	接受	to accept; to receive	12
jié guǒ	結果	结果	in the end; result	21
jié hūn	結婚	结婚	to get married	19
jié mù	節目	节目	program	2
jiě shì	解釋	解释	to explain; resolve/explanation	22
jiè	借	借	to borrow; to lend	1
jiè zhǐ	戒指	戒指	ring	23
jīn'ér	金額	金额	amount of money	14
jǐn	緊	紧	to be tight	21
jǐn kuài	儘快	尽快	Adv: as quickly as possible	14
jǐn liàng	儘量	尽量	Adv: as much as possible	23
jǐn zhāng	緊張	紧张	to be nervous	21
jīng cǎi	精彩	精彩	to be wonderful; to be brilliant	10
jīng jì	經濟	经济	to be economical/economy	21
jīng jì xué	經濟學	经济学	economics	21
jīng lǐ	經理	经理	manager	12
jīng lì	經歷	经历	to experience	11
jīng shén	精神	精神	spirit, energy	21
jīng yàn	經驗	经验	experience	11
jǐng chá	警察	警察	policeman	23
jǐng chá jú	警察局	警察局	police station	23

jǐngfāng	警方	警方	police	24
jìng	敬	敬	to toast Adv: respectfully (generally not translated)	14, 19
jìng'ài	敬愛	敬愛	to respect and like	14
jìngqǐ	敬啓	敬启	to respectfully address to	14
jìng·zi	鏡子	镜子	mirror	20
jiǔdān	酒單	酒单	drink menu	8
jiǔguǎn	酒館	酒馆	pub; tavern	8
jiù	救	救	to save	16
jiù	就	就	Adv: right away, then	1, 4
jiù	就	就	Adv: only; nothing else	9
jiùhùchē	救護車	救护车	ambulance	16
jiùmìng	救命	救命	to save a life (also used for “help!”)	16
jūrán	居然	居然	Adv: to my surprise; unexpectedly; to go so for as to	23
jù	句	句	M: for sentences	13
jùběn	劇本	剧本	script	10
jù·zi	句子	句子	sentence	13
K				
kǎpiàn	卡片	卡片	card	18
kǎtōng	卡通	卡通	cartoon	2
kǎtōng	卡通影片	卡通影片	animated film	2
yǐngpiàn				
kāi	開	开	to open; to turn on; to write; to open	2,17
kāidāo	開刀	开刀	to have an operation	18
kāihù	開戶	开户	to open a bank account	13
kāihuì	開會	开会	to hold a meeting	22
kāishǐ	開始	开始	to begin; to start	10
kāiyào	開藥	开药	to prescribe medication	17
kāiyèchē	開夜車	开夜车	to burn the midnight oil (work until late)	21
kàn	看	看	to depend on	2
kànbìng	看病	看病	to see a doctor	17
kànbùdǒng	看不懂	看不懂	can not understand by reading	8
kànfǎ	看法	看法	opinion	23
kànjiàn	看見	看见	to perceive from hearing	1
kǎo	烤	烤	to roast; bake; broil	5
kǎoròu	烤肉	烤肉	to roast or BBQ/BBQ	5
kǎoshì	考試	考试	to test; to take an exam/exam; test	8

kē	科	科	department; section	17
ké	咳	咳	to cough	15
késòu	咳嗽	咳嗽	to cough/cough	15
kě	可(emphasis)	可(emphasis)	Adv: really	15
kě	渴	渴	to be thirsty	9
kěnéng	可能	可能	Adv: probably; maybe	8
kěnéngxìng	可能性	可能性	probability	15
kěsǐ-le	渴死了	渴死了	dying of thirst	9
kěwù	可惡	可惡	to be detestable; hateful	23
kěxī	可惜	可惜	to be pitiful; what a shame	7
kèhù	客戶	客戶	client	7
kèmǎn	客滿	客滿	to be full; no vacancy	4
kèrén	客人	客人	quest; customer	7
kǒngpà	恐怕	恐怕	I'm afraid; perhaps	10
kǒu	口	口	month (-ful)	20
kǒudài	口袋	口袋	pocket	20
kǒuhóng	口紅	口紅	lipstick	20
kǒuwèi	口味	口味	taste, flavor	19
kòu	扣	扣	to deduct	1
KTV			Karaoke singing parlor	5
kū	哭	哭	to cry	13
kǔ	苦	苦	to be bitter	9
kuà	跨	跨	to straddle	12
kuàguó qǐyè	跨國企業	跨国企业	international company	12
kuài	快	快	Adv: quickly; hurry up; make haste; fast; rapid; swift	6,16
kuàilè	快樂	快乐	to be happy/happiness	16
kùn	困	困	to be in a difficult position	24
kùnnán	困難	困难	difficulty/to be difficult	24
L				
lā	拉	拉	to pull	17
lādù-zi	拉肚子	拉肚子	to have diarrhea	17
làzhú	蠟燭	蜡烛	candle	19
lái	來(order)	来(order)	to bring me...	9
láibùjí	來不及	来不及	not to be able to make it (on time)	16
lán	籃	籃	M: basket	2
lánqiú	籃球	篮球	basketball	2
lánqiúsài	籃球賽	篮球赛	basketball game	2

Lánsè Xiàwēiyí	藍色夏威夷	蓝色夏威夷	Blue Hawaii	8
lánsè	藍色	蓝色	blue	8
lán·zi	籃子	篮子	basket	2
lǎn	懶	懒	to be lazy	13
làngfèi	浪費	浪费	to waste, to squander	20
làngmàn	浪漫	浪漫	to be romantic	3
lǎobǎn	老闆	老板	boss; business owner	11
lǎodà	老大	老大	the eldest (child in a family); the master	6
lǎoshì	老是	老是	always	13
lèi	累	累	to be tired	4
lí	離	离	CV: distant from	4
lǐ	理	理	to pay attention to	22
lǐbài	禮拜	礼拜	week	5
lǐbàirì	禮拜日	礼拜日	Sunday	5
lǐbàitiān	禮拜天	礼拜天	Sunday	5
lǐwù	禮物	礼物	gift	19
lìhài	厲害	厉害	fierce; serious; impressive	15
lián	連	连	even	8
liánluò	聯絡	联络	to contact	5
liánxù	連續	连续	Adv: successive; continuous	1
liánxùjù	連續劇	连续剧	television series that airs every week-day	2
liǎn	臉	脸	face	21
liǎnsè	臉色	脸色	face, complexion	21
liáng	量	量	to measure	17
liàng	輛	辆	M: for automobiles; vehicles	16
liáotiān	聊天	聊天	to chat	9
liǎojiě	了解	了解	to understand	21
língchén	凌晨	凌晨	early morning	24
lìngwài	另外	另外	Adv/SP: moreover, besides	19
liū	溜	溜	to slip; to slide; sledding	5
liūbīng	溜冰	溜冰	to skat/ice skating	5
liú	流	流	to flow	15
liúxíng	流行	流行	to be popular	7
liúxíngxìng	流行性	流行性	popularity; prevalence	15
liúxíngxìng	流行性感冒	流行性感冒	influenza; flu	15
gǎnmào				
lù	錄	录	to record; to tape	1
lùshàng	路上	路上	on the road; on the way	16
lùxiàn	路線	路线	route	6

lùyīndài	錄音帶	录音带	tape cassette	6
lùyīnjī	錄音機	录音机	tape recorder; cassette player	6
lùyíng	露營	露营	to go camping/; camping	5
lùyǐng	錄影	录影	to videotape	1
lùyǐngdài	錄影帶	录影带	video cassette	1
luàn	亂	乱	to be messy/chaotic/to be chaotic	22
luàn qī bā zāo	亂七八糟	乱七八糟	in a real mess	23
luōsuō	囉唆	啰唆	wordy; long-winded	15
lǚguǎn	旅館	旅馆	hotel, inn	4
lǚkè	旅客	旅客	passenger	3
lǚlìbiǎo	履歷表	履历表	resume	12
lǚxíngtuán	旅行團	旅行团	tour group	3
lǚyóu	旅遊	旅游	tourism	3
lǚyóu píng'ān bǎoxiǎn	旅遊平安保險	旅游平安保險	travel (safety) insurance	3

M

·m	姆	姆	I: Mm	19
mǎlù	馬路	马路	road	16
mà	罵	骂	to scold, tell off	13
·ma	嘛	嘛	P: (indicating something obvious)	15
màizuò	賣座	卖座	to draw large audiences for a performance	10
mǎn	滿	满	to be full/to be filled Adv: quite, rather	4, 20
mànpǎo	慢跑	慢跑	to jog/jogging	5
mào·zi	帽子	帽子	hat	16
Měizhōu	美洲	美洲	America	3
Měishì	美式	美式	American style	8
Měiyuè	美月	美月	A person's name	13
mén	門	门	M: class, for course	21
ménpiào	門票	门票	entrance ticket	3
ménzhěn	門診	门诊	outpatient service	17
ménzhěnrshì	門診室	门诊室	outpatient room	17
mǐfěn	米粉	米粉	rice noodles	7
mìshū	祕書	秘书	secretary	12
miàn	麵	面	noodles	6
miàntán	面談	面谈	to interview; interview	12
míng	名	名	M: modifier for people	24
míngbái	明白	明白	to understand/to be clear	22
míngdān	名單	名单	name list	24

míngmíng	明明	明明	Adv: clearly; obviously	23
mìng	命	命	life; fate; destiny	7
mǔqīn	母親	母亲	mother	22

N

nà·me	那麼	那么	Adv: so; to that degree; in that way	2
nǎichá	奶茶	奶茶	milk tea	9
nàixīn	耐心	耐心	patience	6
nándé	難得	难得	to be hard to get; to be rare	7
nánfāng	男方	男方	male (groom's) side	24
nánguài	難怪	难怪	Adv: no wonder	20
nánguò	難過	难过	to be sad; to be feeling bad	21
nèibiān	那邊	那边	over there	7
nèikē	內科	内科	internal medicine	17
nèiróng	內容	内容	contents	18
nénglì	能力	能力	ability	12
Nǐhuìhóng KTV	你會紅 KTV	你会红 KTV	name of a KTV parlor	24
niánchū	年初	年初	beginning of the year	14
niándǐ	年底	年底	end of the year	14
niánqīng	年輕	年轻	to be young	12
níngyuàn	寧願	宁愿	to prefer to/would rather	22
niúǎi	牛奶	牛奶	(cow) milk	9
nóng	濃	浓	to be thick (in colors, tastes, smells, etc.)	9
nǚ'ér	女兒	女儿	daughter	19
nǚfāng	女方	女方	female (bride's) side	24
nǚshì	女士	女士	Ms.; lady	14

O

Ōushì	歐式	欧式	European style	8
Ōuzhōu	歐洲	欧洲	Europe	3

P

pái	排	排	to line up; to arrange in order/line; row	10
páiduì	排隊	排队	to line up	10
pài	派	派	to send (a person)	23
pángbiān	旁邊	旁边	beside; next to	7
pàng	胖	胖	to be fat	10
pǎo	跑	跑	to run	5
pàomò	泡沫	泡沫	bubbles and foam	9

pàomò	泡沫紅茶	泡沫红茶	foamy black tea	9
hōngchá				
péi	陪	陪	to accompany	7
pèi	配	配	to match/to be a match	20
pēntì	噴嚏	喷嚏	sneeze	15
pēng	砰	砰	bang	16
pèng	碰	碰	to collide; to hit; to touch	11
pèngdào	碰到	碰到	to encounter; to bump into	12
pèngjiàn	碰見	碰見	to meet unexpectedly	11
pí	皮	皮	skin; fur; pelt	17
píbāo	皮包	皮包	handbag; purse	17
pídài	皮帶	皮带	(leather) belt	16
pífū	皮膚	皮肤	skin	17
pífūkē	皮膚科	皮肤科	dermatology	17
píjiǔwū	啤酒屋	啤酒屋	beer house	8
píqì	脾氣	脾气	temper	22
piàn	片	片	M: piece, for things that are sliced or flat	1
piàn	騙	骗	to cheat, lie	22
piàn·zi	片子	片子	movie; film	1
piàn·zi	騙子	骗子	liar, cheat	22
piào	票	票	ticket	1
píng	平	平	to be even; flat; smooth	6
píng'ān	平安	平安	to be safe and sound	3
píngdǐxié	平底鞋	平底鞋	pumps	20
pó·po	婆婆	婆婆	mother-in-law	19
pò	破	破	to break/to have been broken	17
pò'àn	破案	破案	to solve a case	23
pòfèi	破費	破费	to go to (great) expense	19
pūmiè	撲滅	扑灭	to extinguish, put out	24

Q

qīmòkǎo	期末考	期末考	end-of-term exam; final exam	21
qítā	其他	其他	other	24
qízhōng	其中	其中	among	24
qǐ	起	起	to begin M: (for incidents)	17, 24
qǐ	啓	启	to address (to)	14
qǐchuáng	起床	起床	to wake up; get out of bed	15
qǐfēi	起飛	起飞	to take off	24
qǐ hōngzhěn·zi	起紅疹子	起红疹子	to develop or have a rash	17
qǐhuǒ	起火	起火	to start (of a fire)	24

qǐlái	起來	起来	to get up	15
qì	氣	气	to be angry/to provoke; to irritate	1
qìfēn	氣氛	气氛	atmosphere	8
qìpǎo	氣跑	气跑	to make someone leave in anger	22
qìwēn	氣溫	气温	temperature of the weather	4
qìxiàngyùbào	氣象預報	气象预报	a weather forecast	2
qǐyè	企業	企业	business enterprise	12
qiānwàn	千萬	千万	Adv: by all means (used of exhortation or a friendly warning)	19
qiānzhèng	簽證	签证	visa	3
qiánpái	前排	前排	the front row	10
qiǎn	淺	浅	shallow, light	20
qiǎnlánsè	淺藍色	浅蓝色	light blue	20
qiǎng	搶	抢	to snatch, scramble for	24
qiǎngjiù	搶救	抢救	to rescue, save	24
qiāo	敲	敲	to knock	12
qiāomén	敲門	敲门	to knock on a door	12
qīn	親	亲	to be close to/to kiss	22
qīn'ài-de	親愛的	亲爱的	dear; darling	22
qīngchá	清茶	清茶	green tea	9
qīngchǔ	清楚	清楚	to be clear/to make clear	11
qīngdān	清單	清单	invoice	23
qīngdàn	清淡	清淡	to be simple; to be sluggish; to be dull	9
qīngnián	青年	青年	youths; young people	4
Qīngnián	青年活動中心	青年活动中心	Youth Activity Center	4
Huódòng				
Zhōngxīn				
qīngshāng	輕傷	轻伤	slight injury	16
qīngsōng	輕鬆	轻松	to be relaxed; to be relaxing	8
qíngkuàng	情況	情况	situation	11
qíng rén	情人	情人	lover	22
qíngshū	情書	情书	love letter	22
qíngtiān	晴天	晴天	clear day	5
qíngxíng	情形	情形	situation; circumstance	18
qǐng	請	请	to hire; to invite	11, 15
qǐng bìngjià	請病假	请病假	to request sick leave	15
qìngshēnghuì	慶生會	庆生会	birthday party	19
qìngzhù	慶祝	庆祝	to celebrate	19
qiūtiān	秋天	秋天	autumn	4

qiú	求	求	to beg	22
qiúsài	球賽	球赛	ballgame	2
qiúxié	球鞋	球鞋	sports shoes	20
quán	全	全	Adv: all; totally	12
què	卻	却	Adv: but, yet	20

R

ránhòu	然後	然后	Adv: then	5
ràng	讓	让	CV: to make; allow; let	22
ràng	讓	让	to let, allow	19
rènao	熱鬧	热闹	to be lively; to be bustling	7
rénshù	人數	人数	number of people	14
rěnnài	忍耐	忍耐	to practice patience; restrain oneself	6
rèn-de	認得	认得	to recognize	20
rìjì	日記	日记	diary	20
rìqī	日期	日期	date	14
Rìshì	日式	日式	Japanese style	8
Rìwén	日文	日文	Japanese language	12
rì-zi	日子	日子	day	20
rú	如	如	as; like	14
rúxià	如下	如下	as below; as follows	14

S

sāi	塞	塞	to plug; to clog	15
sāichē	塞車	塞车	to be jammed with traffic	15
sān líng wǔ shì	305 室	305 室	Room 305	12
sǎo	掃	扫	to sweep	11
sè	色	色	color	19
sè xiāng wèi jù	色香味俱全	色香味俱全	to be complete with the look, the smell, and the taste of the food	19
quán				
shāng	傷	伤	injury/to injure/to have an injury	16
shāngxīn	傷心	伤心	to have hurt feelings/hurt someone's feelings	22
shàng	尚	尚	Adv: still; yet	14
shé·tou	舌頭	舌头	tongue	17
shèbèi	設備	设备	equipment; facilities	24
shèyǐngjī	攝影機	摄影机	video/movie camera	23
shèyǐngshī	攝影師	摄影师	cameraman	23
shēn	深	深	deep, dark	20

shēnqǐng	申請	申请	to apply	1
shēnqǐngbiǎo	申請表	申请表	application form	14
shēnqǐngshū	申請書	申请书	application form	14
shēntǐ	身體	身体	body; health	15
shén	神	神	spirit	22
shénjīng	神經	神经	nerve	22
shénjīngbìng	神經病	神经病	to be mentally ill, crazy	22
shēng	生	生	to be raw; unfamiliar; to give birth (to)	2, 19
shēng	聲	声	noise; word	16
shēngbìng	生病	生病	to be ill	16
shēnghuó	生活	生活	life/to live	7
shēnghuǒ	生火	生火	to make a fire	6
shēngpíjiǔ	生啤酒	生啤酒	draft beer	8
shēngqì	生氣	生气	to be angry	1
shēngyīn	聲音	声音	voice; sound	16
shībài	失敗	失败	fail/to fail/to be a failure	21
shīliàn	失戀	失恋	to fall out of love	22
shīwàng	失望	失望	to disappoint	21
shídài	時代	时代	era; generation	13
shíwù	食物	食物	food; provisions	17
shízài	實在	实在	really; truly/to be real; solid; concrete, realistic	10
shìjiè	世界	世界	world	12
shìqíng	事情	事情	event; matter; things to do	18
shìyìng	適應	适应	to get used to; to adapt	15
shìyǒu	室友	室友	room-mate; housemate	23
shōu	收	收	to receive	11
shōufèizhàn	收費站	收费站	toll station	16
shōujù	收據	收据	receipt	13
shōukàn	收看	收看	to watch (a broadcast)	24
shōurù	收入	收入	salary; pay; income	15
shōutīng	收聽	收听	to listen to (a broadcast)/listening	24
shōuyīnjī	收音機	收音机	radio	6
shóu	熟	熟	to be cooked; to be ripe; to be familiar	8
shǒu	首	首	for songs and poems	8
shǒudiàntǒng	手電筒	手电筒	flashlight; torch	6
shǒushì	首飾	首饰	jewelry	20
shǒushù	手術	手术	operation	18
shǒuxù	手續	手续	precedure	13

shòu	受	受	to accept; to receive	17
shòu	瘦	瘦	to be thin; to be skinny	10
shòubùliǎo	受不了	受不了	cannot stand	17
shòudào	受到	受到	to receive	17
shòumiàn	壽麵	寿面	birthday noodles	19
shòuqì	受氣	受气	to receive someone's anger	22
shòushāng	受傷	受伤	to receive an injury; to be injured	16
shòuxīng	壽星	寿星	birthday person	19
shū	輸	输	to lost	2
shūfú	舒服	舒服	to be comfortable	4
shǔjià	暑假	暑假	summer vacation	4
shù	束	束	bunch	18
shù	樹	树	tree	5
shùmù	樹木	树木	trees	5
shùyè	樹葉	树叶	tree leaves	9
shuài	帥	帅	handsome young man	8
shuàigē	帥哥	帅哥	handsome young man	8
shuāngfāng	雙方	双方	both sides	24
shuāngrénfáng	雙人房	双人房	double room	4
shuǐguǒ	水果	水果	fruit	6
shuǐzāi	水災	水灾	flood, flooding	24
shuì	稅	税	tax	13
shuìbùzháo	睡不着	睡不着	cannot sleep	17
shuìdài	睡袋	睡袋	sleeping bag	6
shùn	順	顺	to follow; to be in accordance; to be smooth	13
shùnbìan	順便	顺便	Adv: at one's convenience; to do something while on one's way to perform a major work	13
shuōbúdìng	說不定	说不定	probably	17
sījī	司機	司机	driver	16
sīshì	私事	私事	private matter	22
sǐ	死	死	to die/to be dead	9
sìchù	四處	四处	Adv: every where; on all sides	23
sōng	鬆	松	to be loose	8
sòng dàlǐ	送大禮	送大礼	to give a major present	20
sùdù	速度	速度	speed	16
sùshí	速食	速食	fast food	6
sùshímiàn	速食麵	速食面	instant noodles	6

suànmìng	算命	算命	to tell someone's fortune	7
suànrǎilái	算起來	算起来	to count as; add up to	23
suànshì	算是	算是	to consider as	16
suīrán	雖然	虽然	although	4
suíbiàn	隨便	随便	as you wish; unconcerned	7
suíshí	隨時	随时	Adv: at any time	24
sǔnshī	損失	损失	loss/to lose	23
suǒ	鎖	锁	to lock/lock	23

T

tái	台	台	M for TV companies, computers, etc./channel; station	2
Tái'ān Dàlóu	台安大樓	台安大楼	name of a building	14
táifēng	颱風	台风	typhoon	4
Tàishān	泰山	泰山	Taishan, a country near the CKS airport	16
Tàishān	泰山收費站	泰山收费站	name of a toll booth	16
Shōufèizhàn				
tàiyáng	太陽	太阳	sun	8
tān-zi	攤子	摊子	street stall	7
tán	談	谈	to talk	11
tánchéng	談成	谈成	to reach an agreement; to conclude talks	11
tánliàn'ài	談戀愛	谈恋爱	to be in love	22
tànbìng	探病	探病	to visit sick people	18
tàng	燙	烫	to iron, burn/hot	20
táo	逃	逃	to run (away)	24
táoshēng	逃生	逃生	to escape	24
tǎoyàn	討厭	讨厌	to be annoying; to dislike	13
tèsè	特色	特色	special feature	3
tī	踢	踢	to kick	6
tīfān	踢翻	踢翻	to be kicked over	6
tí	提	提	to carry by a handle; to withdraw	6,11
tí	題	题	question; topic	21
tíkǎn	提款	提款	to withdraw money	13
tíkǎnkǎ	提款卡	提款卡	cash card	13
tímù	題目	题目	topic; subject; question	21
tíshuǐ	提水	提水	to carry water with a bucket	6
tǐwēn	體溫	体温	body temperature	17
tǐzhòng	體重	体重	body weight	17
tì	替	替	CV: for; in place of	19

tiānxià	天下	天下	world	3
tián	甜	甜	to be sweet	9
tiányánmìyǔ	甜言蜜語	甜言蜜語	sweet words	22
tiáo	條	条	M: for something long and narrow	6
tiáo	調	调	to mix; to adjust	8
tiáo·dechūlái	調得出來	调得出来	can achieve the result by mixing	8
tiáojiàn	條件	条件	condition; requirement	12
tiáojiǔ	調酒	调酒	to mix drinks	8
tiào	跳	跳	to jump	8
tiàowǔ	跳舞	跳舞	to dance	8
tīngjiàn	聽見	听见	to perceive from hearing, to hear	2
tīnglì	聽力	听力	listening ability; hearing	12
tīngqǐlái	聽起來	听起来	to sound (like)	13
tīngshuō	聽說	听说	to hear; to have heard	1
tīngzhòng	聽眾	听众	audience	10
tíng	停	停	to stop; to park	7
tíngchēwèi	停車位	停车位	parking place; parking space	7
tíngdiàn	停電	停电	to cut off the electricity supply	13
tínghuà	停話	停话	to cut off the telephone line	13
tíngshuǐ	停水	停水	to cut off the water supply	13
tōng	通	通	to get through; to go; to communicate	13
tōngbào	通報	通报	to announce; to inform; notify	24
tóngshì	同事	同事	colleague	8
tóngxìngliàn	同性戀	同性恋	homosexuality	22
tóngxué	同學	同学	classmate	8
tóngyì	同意	同意	to agree	9
tòng	痛	痛	to feel pain; to hurt	15
tōu	偷	偷	to steal	23
tóu	頭(head)	头(head)	head	15
tóu	頭(the first)	头(the first)	first	15
tóufǎ	頭髮	头发	hair	20
tóuhūn	頭昏	头昏	to be muddled; confused	21
tóutòng	頭痛	头痛	headache	15
tuántǐfáng	團體房	团体房	group room	4
tuǐ	腿	腿	leg	16

W

wǎsī	瓦斯	瓦斯	natural gas	14
wàiguó	外國	外国	foreign country	12

wàikē	外科	外科	external medicine	17
wàiwén	外文	外文	foreign language	12
wàiwénxì	外文系	外文系	foreign language department	12
wàiyǔ	外語	外语	foreign language	12
wán	完	完	to be finished	2
wánjù	玩具	玩具	toy	5
wánquán	完全	完全	Adv: completely	12
Wáng Fēi	王非	王非	Wang Fei	8
wǎng	網	网	net	5
wǎnglù	網路	网路	network; Internet; World Wide Web	13
wǎngqiú	網球	网球	tennis	5
wàngguāng	忘光	忘光	to forget completely	21
wēixiǎn	危險	危险	to be dangerous	6
wēixiǎnxìng	危險性	危险性	risk	15
wéi	為	为	to be	18
wéitāmìng	維他命	维他命	vitamin	15
wěiyuán	委員	委员	committee member	14
wěiyuánhùi	委員會	委员会	committee	14
wèi	未	未	Adv: not yet	14
wèiwèn	慰問	慰问	to show sympathy	18
wèiwèn kǎ	慰問卡	慰问卡	sympathy card	18
wēndù	溫度	温度	temperature	4
wénhuà	文化	文化	culture	9
wényì	文藝愛情片	文艺爱情片	artistic love story movie	1
àiqíngpiàn				
wǒfáng	臥房	卧房	bedroom	23
wòshì	臥室	卧室	bedroom	23
wūlóngchá	烏龍茶	乌龙茶	oolong tea	9
wúfǎ	無法	无法	Adv: no way to; unable to	24
wǔtái	舞台	舞台	stage	10
wǔtájù	舞台劇	舞台剧	stage play	10
wù	勿	勿	do not	18
X				
xīdú	吸毒	吸毒	to take drugs/narcotics	17
xīshì	西式	西式	western style	8
xīzhuāng	西裝	西装	suit	20
xífù	媳婦	媳妇	daughter-in-law	19
xǐjiǔ	喜酒	喜酒	wedding banquet	20

xǐjù	喜劇	喜剧	comedy	1
xǐtiě	喜帖	喜帖	wedding invitation	20
xì	系	系	department	12
xì	戲	戏	play; drama; theatrical performance	10
xìjù	戲劇	戏剧	drama; play	10
xià	嚇	吓	to scare	23
xiàfàn	下飯	下饭	to go along well with rice	8
xiàjiǔ	下酒	下酒	to go with liquor	8
xiàqí	下棋	下棋	to play chess	5
xiàntiān	夏天	夏天	summer	4
Xiàwēiyí	夏威夷	夏威夷	Hawaii	8
xià xià ge yuè	下下個月	下下个月	the month after next	10
xià xià lǐbàisān	下下禮拜三	下下礼拜三	the Wednesday after next	10
xià yí tiào	嚇一跳	吓一跳	to startle someone, make someone jump	23
xiānhuā	鮮花	鲜花	fresh flowers (with fright)	18
xiànchǎng	現場	现场	the place where an event happens (happened)	16
xiànzhì	限制	限制	to restrict/restriction	1
xiànzhìjí	限制級	限制级	restricted rating	1
xiāng	香	香	to be fragrant; having good smelling	9
xiāngpiàn	香片	香片	jasmine tea	9
xiāngshuǐ	香水	香水	perfume	9
xiāngxìn	相信	相信	to believe	22
xiǎngdào	想到	想到	to think of	8
xiǎngfǎ	想法	想法	feelings	23
xiǎngkāi	想開	想开	to get over something	21
xiǎngqǐlái	想起來	想起来	to recall; to think of	8
xiǎngshòu	享受	享受	to enjoy; enjoyment	9
xiàng	巷	巷	lane	23
xiàng	像	象	to resemble	15
xiāo	消	消	to disappear; to disperse	17
xiāofángduì	消防隊	消防队	fire brigade	24
xiāofáng	消防隊員	消防队员	fireman	24
duìyuán				
xiāomiè	消滅	消灭	to wipe out; destroy	24
xiāo·xi	消息	消息	news; information	23
xiāoyán	消炎	消炎	to reduce inflammation	17
xiǎochī	小吃	小吃	snack	7
xiǎochītān	小吃攤	小吃摊	snack stall	7

xiǎoqì	小氣	小气	to be stingy; selfish	15
xiǎotōu	小偷	小偷	thief	23
xiǎotǔ	小腿	小腿	calf of leg	16
xiǎoxīn	小心	小心	to be careful	15
xiào	笑	笑	to laugh	13
xiédài	鞋帶	鞋帶	shoelace	16
xiě	血	血	blood	16
xīn	心	心	heart, mind	3
xīnláng	新郎	新郎	bride groom	20
xīnniáng	新娘	新娘	bride	20
xīnqíng	心情	心情	mood	18
xīnshǎng	欣賞	欣赏	to enjoy; to appreciate; to admire	10
xīnshuǐ	薪水	薪水	salary	12
xīnwén	新聞	新闻	news	2
xīnwénxìng	新聞性	新闻性	timing	15
xīnxiān	新鮮	新鲜	to be fresh	18
xīnyì	心意	心意	regard	22
xìnxīn	信心	信心	confidence	21
xīngxīng	星星	星星	star	8
Xíngbiàn	行遍天下旅行	行遍天下旅行	Travel the World Travel Agency	
Tiānxià	社	社		3
Lǚxíngshè				
xíngchéng	行程	行程	itinerary	3
xǐng	醒	醒	to wake; to wake up	16
xǐnglái	醒來	醒来	to wake up (mentally)	16
xìngkuī	幸虧	幸亏	Adv: fortunately; luckily	1
xìngqù	興趣	兴趣	interest	1
xiōng	兇	凶	to be fierce and mean	2
xiū	修	修	to repair	7
xiūjià	休假	休假	vacation	12
xiūlǐ	修理	修理	to repair	7
xiū·xi	休息	休息	to take a rest	5
xiūxián	休閒活動	休闲活动	leisure activities	
huódòng				5
xiūxiánxié	休閒鞋	休闲鞋	casual shoes; sneakers	5
xiūyǎng	休養	休养	to rest; to recuperate	18
xūyào	需要	需要	to need/need	11
xūzhī	須知	须知	guidelines; rules	18
xǔyuàn	許願	许愿	to make a wish	19

xuǎn	選	选	to choose	20
xuéfèi	學費	学费	tuition fee	11
xuéhuì	學會	学会	to have learned	11
xuélì	學歷	学历	educational background	11
xuéqī	學期	学期	semester; term of study	21
xuéqīmò	學期末	学期末	end of term; end of semester	21
Y				
yān	煙	烟	smoke	21
yán	嚴	严	to be strict	21
yángé	嚴格	严格	to be strict	21
yánzhòng	嚴重	严重	to be serious	16
yǎn	演	演	to act; to perform	10
yǎnjì	演技	演技	acting skill	17
yǎnjīng	眼睛	眼睛	eye	20
yǎnjìng	眼鏡	眼镜	eye glasses	10
yǎnyuán	演員	演员	actor or actress	20
yángzhuāng	洋裝	洋装	dress	18
yǎng	養	养	to raise; to rear	15
yǎng	癢	痒	to itch; to be scratchy	18
yǎngbìng	養病	养病	to recuperate	1
yàng	樣(M.)	样(M.)	M: modifier for different things	1
yáokòng	遙控	遥控	to control from a distance	2
yáokòngqì	遙控器	遥控器	a remote controller	17
yào	藥	药	medicine	7
yàobùrán	要不然	要不然	otherwise; or else	7
yàofāng	藥方	药方	prescription	18
yàofáng	藥房	药房	pharmacy	
yào-shi	鑰匙	钥匙	key	23
yàowù	藥物	药物	medicine; medication	17
yěxǔ	也許	也许	maybe	7
yè	夜	夜	night	7
yèshēnghuó	夜生活	夜生活	nightlife	7
yèshì	夜市	夜市	night market	7
yéwù	業務	业务	business activities	12
yè-zi	葉子	叶子	leaves	9
yīhù rényuán	醫護人員	医护人员	hospital technician	18
yīshēng	醫生	医生	doctor	16
yīshī	醫師	医师	doctor	16

yīyuàn	醫院	医院	hospital	16
yíqiè	一切	一切	total; all together	18
yíshényíguǐ	疑神疑鬼	疑神疑鬼	to have unnecessary suspicions; paranoid	22
yíxià·zi	一下子	一下子	Adv: in one moment; very quickly	1
yǐhòu	以後	以后	after, later on, sometime in the future	2
yǐmiǎn	以免	以免	so as to avoid; lest	18
yǐnèi	以內	以内	Adv: within; inside	1
yǐqián	以前	以前	before	2
yǐshàng	以上	以上	Adv: above; over (sometimes may also include the number preceding it)	3
yǐwài	以外	以外	Adv: outside of	12
yǐwéi	以為	以为	Adv: to think (mistakenly)	16
yǐxià	以下	以下	Adv: below; under (sometimes may also include the number preceding it)	3
yì	亦	亦	Adv: also	18
yìbān	一般	一般	common; general	4
yìbiān	一邊	一边	Adv: concurrently	9
Yìdàlì	義大利	义大利	Italy	3
yìjiàn	意見	意见	opinion	9
yìliú	一流	一流	first-rate	10
yìshù	藝術	艺术	art	1
yì·si	意思	意思	meaning	2
yìzhí	一直	一直	Adv: continuously	15
yīnyuè	音樂	音乐	music	6
yǐnqǐ	引起	引起	to attract, cause	1
yíng	贏	赢	to win	2
yǐngxiǎng	影響	影响	to influence; in fluence	18
yìngzhēng	應徵	应征	to respond to a job offer	12
yǒngyuǎn	永遠	永远	always/ever; forever	21
yòngfàn	用飯	用饭	to eat, dine	19
yòngfǎ	用法	用法	usage; operation	23
yònggōng	用功	用功	studious, keen	21
yònghù	用戶	用户	user; consumer	13
yóu	由	由	CV: from; up to; by	14
yóu	油	油	to be oily oil	7
yóu	游	游	to swim	5
yóukè	遊客	游客	tourist	3
yóuqíshì	尤其是	尤其是	Adv: especially	15
yóuxì	遊戲	游戏	game	7

yóuyǒng	游泳	游泳	to swim/swimming	5
yóuyú	由於	由於	CV: because	24
yòu	又	又	Adv: again	2,4
yú	於	於	CV: at; on; by; from	14
yuán	元	元	M: for money; same meaning as 塊 but more formal	1
yuánlái	原來	原来	Adv: (indicating sudden realization)	7
yuánliàng	原諒	原谅	to forgive	22
yuányīn	原因	原因	reason	24
yuànwàng	願望	愿望	wish, hope	19
yuēhǎo	約好	约好	to have arranged; to have an agreement; to have made	5
yuèchū	月初	月初	beginning of the month	14
yuèdǐ	月底	月底	end of the month	14
yuèfèn	月份	月份	month; monthly period	14
yuèláiyuè	越來越	越来越	Adv: increasingly; more and more	1
yuèliàng	月亮	月亮	moon	8
yuètuán	樂團	乐团	music group; band	8
yùndòng	運動	运动	exercise; sport/to exercise	5
yùnqì	運氣	运气	luck	11
Z				
zāihài	災害	灾害	disaster	24
zàihū	在乎	在乎	to be concerned about; to care	8
zàishuō	再說	再说	Adv: moreover, besides	1,21
zāo	糟	糟	to be awful	21
zāogāo	糟糕	糟糕	to be in a terrible state/oh no!	23
zāoxiǎotōu	遭小偷	遭小偷	VO: to be burglarized	23
zǎorìkāngfù	早日康復	早日康复	to get well soon	18
zàochéng	造成	造成	to lead to; cause	24
zé	則	则	M: modifier for written articles, reports, etc.	24
zérèn	責任	责任	responsibility	24
zěn·me	怎麼	怎么	how come; how can it be	1
zěn·me·le	怎麼了	怎么了	What's up?	15
zhá	炸	炸	deep fry	24
zhà	炸	炸	to bomb	24
Zhāng Dàhǎi	張大海	张大海	a person's name	18
zhāngkāi	張開	张开	to open; to stretch open	18

zhǎng	漲	涨	to increase in price	11
zhǎng	長	长	to look, appear	22
zhǎngbúdà	長不大	长不大	to not be able to grow big	22
zhànghù	帳戶	账户	account	13
zhàngpéng	帳篷	帐篷	tent	6
zháojí	著急	着急	to be anxious or worried	11
zhào jìng·zi	照鏡子	照镜子	to look in the mirror	20
zhàopiàn	照片	照片	picture; photograph	3
zhàoxiàng	照相 (像)	照相 (像)	to take a photo	19
zhàoxiàngjī	照相機	照相机	camera	19
zhè·me	這麼	这么	Adv: so; in this way; to this degree	2
·zhe	著	着	an adverbial particle	13
zhēnqíng	真情	真情	true feelings	22
zhēnxīn	真心	真心	sincerity	22
zhěnsuǒ	診所	诊所	clinic	17
zhěn·zi	疹子	疹子	rash	17
zhēngqiú	徵求	征求	to offer a job	12
zhěng	整	整	orderly; exactly; entire	11
zhěnglǐ	整理	整理	to tidy up	11
zhèng	正	正	Adv: precisely	24
zhèngjiàn	證件	证件	document; certificate	17
zhèngmíng	證明	证明	to prove	22
zhèngrén	證人	证人	witness	22
zhèngzhuàng	症狀	症状	symptoms	15
zhī	之	之	P: of	14
zhīchí	支持	支持	to support/support	14
zhījiān	之間	之间	(in) between	1
zhǐ	紙	纸	paper	10
zhǐhǎo	只好	只好	Adv: no other alternative, the only thing to do	5
zhǐyào	只要	只要	Adv: provided only, so long as	11
zhìdù	制度	制度	system	12
zhìshǎo	至少	至少	Adv: the least; at least	17
zhōngjiān	中間	中间	middle	10
Zhōngshì	中式	中式	Chinese style	8
zhōngxīn	中心	中心	center	4
zhōngyú	終於	终于	Adv: finally	23
zhòngdú	中毒	中毒	to be poisoned	17
zhòngshāng	重傷	重伤	serious injury	16

zhòngyào	重要	重要	to be important	12
zhòngyàoxìng	重要性	重要性	importance	15
zhōu	洲	洲	continent	3
zhōumò	週末	周末	weekend	1
zhǔ	煮	煮	to boil; to cook in water	6
zhǔjiǎo	主角	主角	leading actor/actress	10
zhǔyì	主意	主意	idea; suggestion	5
zhù	祝	祝	to wish someone happiness	11
zhùhè	祝賀	祝贺	to wish, to congratulate	20
zhùhù	住戶	住户	resident; household	14
zhùyì	注意	注意	to pay attention	17
zhùyuàn	住院	住院	to be hospitalized	18
zhuā	抓	抓	to scratch; to catch	17
zhuǎn	轉	转	to transfer; to convert; to relay	2,13
zhuǎntái	轉台	转台	to switch the channel	2
zhuǎnzhàng	轉帳	转账	to transfer funds	14
zhuàn	賺	赚	to earn	11
zhuànqián	賺錢	赚钱	to earn money	11
zhuàng	撞	撞	to bump; to crash	8
zhuàngduàn·le	撞斷了	撞断了	to be broken after being hit	16
zhuàngqiú	撞球	撞球	pool; billiards	8
zhǔnbèi	準備	准备	prepare	11
zì	自	自	CV: from	16
zìcóng	自從	自从	CV: since then; ever since	16
zìdòng	自動	自动	voluntary/to do	13
zìdòng	自動提款卡	自动提款卡	automatically/automatically	
tíkuǎnkǎ			automatic teller machine card	13
zìzé	自責	自责	to blame oneself	21
zìzhuàn	自傳	自传	autobiography	12
zǒngshì	總是	总是	Adv: always	7
zǒngsuàn	總算	总算	Adv: at last	20
zǒu	走(away) (V 走)	走(away) (V 走)	to be away from here, away	6
zǒudào	走道	走道	aisle; hallway	18
zuànjiè	鑽戒	钻戒	diamond ring	23
zuànshí	鑽石	钻石	diamond	23
zuǐbā	嘴巴	嘴巴	mouth	17
zuìhǎo	最好	最好	It's best that; had better	1

zuìhòu	最後	最后	SP/Adv: the last; finally	10
zuǒyòu	左右	左右	Adv: about, around, roughly	23
zuòfǎ	做法	做法	method; the way to do something	23
zuòyè	作業	作业	school assignment	21
zuòzhě	作者	作者	writer; author	24

GRAMMAR INDEX

文法索引

Pinyin	Grammar point	English	Lesson
àn	按 NP+V	according to what NP verb	11
bǎ+NP+V+dào...lái/qù	S+ 把 NP+V 到 +PW 來/去	to verb NP to place	6
bǎ+O+V-yíxià	把 +O+V 一下	Verb object (a while) to	11
bèi	S+ 被 + NP+V+C	Verb by NP	13
běnlái	本來	originally	5
bǐ	NP ₁ /VP ₁ 比 NP ₂ /VP ₂ +SV	NP ₁ is SV than NP ₂	2
bǐ...gèng	NP ₁ /VP ₁ 比 NP ₂ /VP ₂ 更 SV	SP ₁ is even more SV than NP ₂	4
bié yòu	別又	don't... again	2
bié/búzài...le	別/不再 VP 了	never VP again	17
bìng bù/méi	並不/沒	not as what was said	21
gēn...bǐqǐlái	跟 NP ₁ /VP ₂ 比起來, NP ₂ /VP ₂ ...	compare with NP ₁ , NP ₂ is...	3
búdàn...yě...	不但...也...	not only ...but also...	3
bùdébù	不得不	to have no choice but	20
·de bùdéliǎo	SV 得不得了	extremely SV	10
bùguǎn...dōu	不管...都...	no matter whether... (all)	17
búguò	不過	however	1
búshì...jiùshì	不是...就是...	if not...then must be...	8
búshì...·ma	不是...嗎	isn't it correct that...	6
búsuàn	不算	not consider as...	16
bùzhīdào	不知道...	I wonder...	5
búzhìyú	不至於	not so far as...	16
cái	才 (conditional)	only if; then and only then	3
cái	才 (only)	just; only	10
céngjīng	曾經	once; formerly	12
chà bùduō	差不多	nearly the same; almost	3
chà yìdiǎn	差一點	nearly; on the verge of	3
chèn	趁	take advantage of; while	12
chībúxià fàn	吃不下飯	no appetite or can't eat more	22
chú-le...yǐwài, hái...	除了...以外, 還...	besides... (in addition)	12
cǐ	此	this	24
cóng...qǐ...	從...起...	to start from...	20
cónglái bù/méi	從來不/沒	have never	17
děi/yàokàn	得/要看	it depends on...	5
duì...guòmǐn	對...過敏	allergic to...	17
duì...yǒu/méi xìngqù	對...有/沒興趣	be (not) interested in...	1

duō VO	多 VO	V more	15
duō-me SV	多麼 SV	how SV!	22
érqiě	而且	moreover	12
fǎnzhèng	反正	anyway; anyhow; in any case	19
fēi...bùkě	非...不可	must; is indispensable	23
gāi	該	the above mentioned	24
gè	各 V	each	9
gěi...dàilái	給 NP ₁ 帶來 NP ₂	bring NP ₂ to NP ₁	18
gēnjù	根據	according to	24
guāng...jiù	光...就	just...already...	23
guānyú	關於	with regard to	24
hài	害	cause (in a harmful way)	22
háishì...ba	還是...吧	(after consideration) it's best to	9
hǎo	好(so as to)	so as to	19
hǎo – SV	好(Adv)+ SV	so/really SV	6
hòulái	後來	afterwards; later	5
jǐ	及	and	18
jiāng	將	be going to/把	14, 24
jiéguǒ	結果	as a result; in the end	21
jíjiāng	即將	be about to	14
jìrán	既然	now that; since	12
...le..., jiù...	(S+) V ₁ 了 O ₁ , S 就 V ₂ O ₂	then	4
jiù	(S+) V+QW·(S+)就 V+QW	whatever; wherever, ect.	7
jiù	就(only)	only; nothing else	9
jiùshì-ma	就是嘛	quite right; exactly	15
jūrán	居然	unexpectedly	23
kànbùdǒng	看不懂 (V 懂)	not understand via reading	8
kě	可(emphasis)	emphasis	15
kěxī	可惜	it's pity; it's too bad	7
kǒngpà	恐怕	I'm afraid that	10
kuài	快(about to)	soon; before long	16
kuài V	快 V	hurry up	6
lái/qù	S+ 來/去 + VO (非趨向)	S about to do something	6
lái	來(order)	order	9
lái bùjí	來不及	no enough time to do something	16
lǎoshì	老是	always	13
lí...bù-mǎn-yuǎn/jìn	NP ₁ 離 NP ₂ + 不 + 滿(Adv) + 遠/近	NP ₁ is not far/near from NP ₂	4
lián...dōu	連...都...	Even...	8

lìngwài	另外	in addition; another	19
mǎn	滿 Nu-M	to reach or fully attain Nu-M	12
mǎn...de	滿- SV 的	entirely/quite SV	20
méi duōshǎo	沒多少	not much; very little	11
méiyǒu shēn·me	沒有(VP)什麼(SV 的 +)NP	NP is nothing SV	5
míngmíng	明明	obviously; undoubtedly	23
MM	MM	duplication of Measure Words	10
nà·me/zhè·me	那麼/這麼 + SV	so/such SV	2
nánguài	難怪	no wonder	20
níngyuàn...yě	寧願...也...	would rather...than...	22
qiānwàn	千萬	used of a friendly warning	19
què	卻	but; yet; however	20
ràng	讓	let; allow/make someone feel	19, 22
rúxià	如下	as follows	14
shéi zhīdào	誰知道	how was I to know	19
shēn·me...dōu	什麼(QW)都...	whatever	2
shēn·me	什麼 (不定指)	something indefinite	6
shēn·me·de	什麼的	...etc.	23
shì	是 +Adv+ SV	indeed	13
shì...kěshì	VP/SV 是 VP/SV , 可是...	Well, It is SV, however...	11
shízài	實在	be frank; true/honestly; indeed	10
shuìbùzháo	睡不著	cannot fall asleep	17
shùnbìan	順便	on the way; as one passes	13
shuōbúdìng	說不定	perhaps; maybe	17
suīrán...kěshì	雖然...可是...	although	4
suíshí	隨時	at any time; at all times	24
SV – sǐ·le	渴死了 (SV 死了)	SV to death; extremely SV	9
SV	SV-SV (單音節形容詞重疊)	duplication of one-syllable SV	6
SV	SV-SV (雙音節形容詞重疊)	duplication of two-syllable SV	20
tì	替	take the place of, for	19
Time	Time-duration+Neg.+VO	haven't done this action for...	10
tīngjiàn	聽見 (看見)	perceived via listening	2
tóu	頭 +Nu+M(+N)	the first Nu M	15
V·de	V 得...	V to the point that	15
V·de/bù qǐ	V 得/不起	can/cannot afford or face	21
V lái V qù	V 來 V 去	repeated action	21
V·zhe	V 著	continued situation	19
V/SV·de chàbùduō·le	V/SV 得差不多了	almost finished via V	10

V-bú-dào	訂不到 (可能式RC)	cannot achieve the goal	4
V-bù-liǎo	吃不了 (V 不了)	cannot finish eating	7
V-chéng	V 成	succeed in V; to complete V	11
V-chéng	把 NP ₁ +V-成 + NP ₂	NP ₁ turn into NP ₂ Via V	20
V-de-chūlái	調得出來 (V 得出來)	can V out	8
V- guāng	V-光	V till it is used up	21
V- guò	V 過	have been V (past experience)	1
V- guò- Nu- cì	V 過 Nu 次 (了)	Have been V times	4
V- guò-le	V 過了	have completed the action	13
V- hǎo	約好 (V 好)	satisfied via V	5
VO ₁ -deVO ₁	VO ₁ 的 VO ₁ , VO ₂ 的 VO ₂	Each group is doing its thing	8
V- qǐlái	V 起來 (比起來)	V as if	3
V- qǐ- O- lái	V 起 O 來 (罵起人來)	When ...starts V	13
VV kàn	VV 看	try V	12
V- wán	V 完	finish V	2
V-.zhe	V 著(O)+ VP	VP while doing V	13
V- zǒu	拿走 (V 走)	V away	6
wéi	為(to be)	to be	18
wèi	未	not yet	14
wù	勿	don't	18
xiǎng dào	想到	think of	8
xiǎngqǐlái	想起來	Remember; recall	7
xìngkuī	幸虧	fortunately	16
xuéhuì	學會	learn(ed) to	11
yàobùrán	要不然	otherwise	7
yì	亦	also	18
yī...jiù	一...就...	as soon as...; no sooner than	4
yǐnèi	Nu-M 以內	within Nu M	1
yìbiān... yìbiān	一邊...一邊...	two simultaneous actions	9
yī-M ₁ -N+Nu-M ₂ -N	一-M ₁ -N+Nu-M ₂ -N	Nu-M ₂ -N for each M ₁ -N	9
yǐmiǎn	以免	in order to avoid	18
yīn...ér...	因...而...	because of...; due to	24
yíqiè	一切	all; everything	18
yíxià	Nu-M 以下	below; under	3
yíxià·zi...yíxià·zi...	一下子...一下子...	one moment... another moment...	15
yìzhí	一直	always; all along	15
yòng...lái	用 NP 來 VP	to VP with NP	13
yóu	由	from	14

yòu...yòu...	又...又...	both... and...	4
yóuqíshì	尤其是	especially	15
yóuyú	由於	because of	24
yǒu/méiyǒu...nà-me	NP ₁ /VP ₁ 有/沒有(NP ₂ /VP ₂)那麼+SV	NP ₁ is not as SV as NP ₂	3
yú	於	在; at; in; on	14
yuánlái	原來	It turns out that...	7
yuè V yuè SV	越V越SV	the more... the more...	17
yuè lái yuè SV	越來越+SV	more and more SV	1
zài...jiù...(-le)	再...就... (了)	If ...continues..., then...	21
zàihū	在乎	take to heart; care; mind	8
zàishuō	再說	to consider a problem later	21
zài yě bù...-le	再也不...了	never V again	22
zǎo/wǎn/kuài/màn yìdiǎn VO	早/晚/快/慢一點 VO	VO a little sooner/later	16
zǎo zhīdào...jiù	早知道...就...	If I had known beforehand that...then...	22
zěn-me	怎麼(how come)	how come	2
zěn-me huísì	怎麼回事	What is going on?	21
zhǎngbúdà	長不大	unable to mature	22
zhǎo-de huílái	找得回來	can get it back via searching	23
zhèng...zhōng	正...中	in the middle of...	24
zhèyàng-V	這樣 V	V so, V in this way	11
zhī	之	的; modifier suffix	14
zhǐhǎo	只好	can only; cannot but	5
zhìshǎo	至少	at least	17
zhǐyào...jiù	只要...就...	as long as... (then...)	11
zhōngyú	終於	at last; finally	23
zhuàngduàn-le	撞斷了	broken by collision	16
zìcóng...yǐhòu	自從...以後	after...; since...	16
zǒngshì	總是	always; invariably	7
zǒngsuàn	總算	finally; at last	20
zuì hǎo	最好	had better	1
zuǒ yòu	左右	about... or so	23

APPENDIX I Translation of the Texts

課文翻譯

Unit 1

Lesson 1 Renting Video Tapes

Younger Sister: Sister, how about going to see a movie together this weekend?

Elder Sister: Tickets are more and more expensive now. Let's rent a video and watch it at home.

Younger Sister: OK. I heard a new video shop opened on the corner called something like "Bao Ni Haokan." Do you want to see what videos they have?

Elder Sister: OK. Let's go look now. Let's go.

(At the Video Rental Shop)

Clerk: Which tape do you two want to rent? Have you been here before?

Younger Sister: We haven't been here before. How much does it cost to rent one tape?

Clerk: It's best to apply for a membership card. Each membership is NT\$1000, for which you can rent fifteen tapes. If you are not a member, each tape is NT\$80 and NT\$100 deposit.

Younger Sister: Do you have any more recent movies?

Clerk: Yes, however, they must be returned within three days. If not returned on time, the price will be deducted from your membership fee or from your deposit, if you are not a member.

Elder Sister: We'll see what you have first and then we'll decide what to do next.

(The two went to see the video selection.)

Elder Sister: They have many action and kung fu movies here.

Younger Sister: I am not interested in kung fu movies. I love to watch love stories. Ah, here are some restricted movies.

Elder Sister: You'd better not watch restricted movies. Let's watch a comedy.

Younger Sister: This love story is not bad. Let's rent this one first, then watch a comedy next time.

Lesson 2 Don't Switch the Channel

Elder Brother: Hey, the game isn't over yet. Don't switch the channel.

Younger Brother: There's a commercial on now. I want to watch the cartoon on channel three. The cartoon is much better than the basketball

game.

Elder Brother: But the game isn't over yet!

Younger Brother: It doesn't matter. In a while you can watch the news, then you will know which team won.

Elder Brother: No, I was here first. How can you act like this?

Younger Brother: You have been watching the game so long. Others can't watch any program.

Elder Brother: I have seen this cartoon before. It's no good at all. Give me the remote controller!

Younger Brother: What do you mean? You are so mean! OK, you watch the game. Call me when the game is over. I want to watch the news and the weather report. I am going to mountain hiking tomorrow.

Elder Brother: Hmm.

Younger Brother: Did you hear me?

Elder Brother: I heard you.

Younger Brother: Don't forget again. Yesterday Mother asked you to videotape a soap opera, but after watching the feature you turned off the television. Mother is still mad.

Elder Brother: I know!

Unit 2

Lesson 3 Are There Tour Groups Going to Europe?

Miss: Xingbian Tianxia Travel Agency, hello.

Little Gao: May I ask, do you have any tour groups going to Europe next month?

Miss: Yes, we do. We have many itineraries. Where do you plan to go and for how long?

Little Gao: I have been to Germany, now I want to go to Italy. I heard Italians are very romantic, also that there are many ruins to see there.

Miss: That's right, Italy is a country with characteristics. Next month, we have a 15-day tour of Italy and France. Oh, this is the best time to go, not only the weather is good, but also the scenery is beautiful.

Little Gao: Is it expensive?

Miss: Including traveler's insurance and entrance tickets, altogether \$65,000.

Little Gao: It does not include visa fees?

Miss: No. Compared to other travel agencies, \$65,000 is already the cheapest price.

Little Gao: How many people are in the group now? I do not like groups that are too

big. Only if there are less than 20 will I join.

Miss: Rest assured, none of our groups are that big, they are around eighteen people.

Little Gao: Oh, I almost forgot. My passport has expired. Can you help me?

Miss: Yes, we can. However, you must add another \$1200. In addition, give me your ID card, old passport, and three photos.

Little Gao: Please send me the itinerary to look at, okay?

Miss: No problem. Please tell me your address and I will send it immediately.

Lesson 4 What Do You Know about That Place?

Taisheng: Jiaming, where do you want to travel during summer vacation? Do you have any plans?

Jiaming: I plan to go to the East. And you?

Taisheng: I plan to rest at home.

Jiaming: I heard the beach in Hualian is very beautiful. Have you been there?

Taisheng: I have been many times. When do you plan to go?

Jiaming: I plan to go as soon as vacation starts. Is it easy to find a place to stay there?

Taisheng: There are many hotels, and prices are not expensive. A single room is \$700 per night. However, you better call first to reserve a room.

Jiaming: You mean you are worried that I cannot get a room?

Taisheng: That's right. There are many people during the holidays, if you are late, the rooms will be full, and you will not get a room. Oh, yeah. If you cannot get a hotel room, go stay at the Youth Activity Center, it's much cheaper than an ordinary hotel. There are also group rooms for \$300 per person.

Jiaming: Is the transportation from Taipei to Hualian convenient? Can I drive there myself?

Taisheng: Hualian is not far from Taipei. Although you can drive there yourself, it's not an easy drive, it's very tiring.

Jiaming: Then, how about taking a plane?

Taisheng: Taking a plane is expensive and tickets are hard to buy. There are seven or eight trains going to Hualian every day. Take a train, it's comfortable and convenient. It only takes three hours and you are there.

Jiaming: What is the weather like in Hualian?

Taisheng: All four seasons in Hualian are better than Taipei. Summer temperatures are around 30 degrees. Sometimes there are typhoons. You better listen to the weather forecast before you go.

Jiaming: Thank you. Tomorrow after class I will go to buy the train ticket.

Unit 3

Lesson 5 What Do You Do on the Weekends?

Old Ma: Little Zhang, have you been busy lately?

Little Zhang: Not too bad, nothing really special.

Old Ma: What do you do on the weekends? Do you like to exercise?

Little Zhang: I often take my girlfriend bowling, ice skating, or jogging. Sometimes we stay home and play chess or video games.

Old Ma: Oh, it sounds like you do not enjoy outdoor activities.

Little Zhang: Not necessarily, that depends on the time and weather. We often go hiking in the mountains, camping, and BBQing. Sometimes we go swimming at the beach.

Old Ma: This weekend my wife, children and I want to go hiking. I wonder if you would be interested in going with us?

Little Zhang: Sorry, my girlfriend and I have arranged to play tennis, then we will go to a KTV and sing. I remember you want to go fishing with Little Qian.

Old Ma: No, you remembered wrong. I originally wanted to play tennis, then my children said their teacher wanted them to go up into the mountains to recognize some plants, I can only take them to the mountains first, and play tennis next week.

Little Zhang: These past few days have been very clear, it should be good weather this weekend too. It will be good to go out for a walk. I will ask my girlfriend if she wants to go together with you.

Old Ma: Good. The more the merrier. My wife and children love to sing, too. We can go sing at a KTV when we come down from the mountain.

Little Zhang: That's a good idea. My girlfriend will definitely want to go. Where should we meet? What time should we leave?

Old Ma: We will meet at 7:00 o'clock Saturday morning at the entrance to the train station and leave at 7:10.

Little Zhang: Good, that's what we'll do. If there is a change, I will contact you. I have your cell phone number and am not worried about not finding you.

Lesson 6 Camping

Little Gao: Are we there yet? We've been walking so long, how come we still haven't arrived?

Little Zhang: We're there, we're there. It's just in front of us. Stop whining. Walk

quickly.

Lao Wang: The route we took today is a bit far. Please be patient, however this road is flatter and is easier to walk.

Little Gao: The fruit in my backpack is so heavy. Now I can put it down.

Little Li: The pans and cans in my pack are not light, either. Hmm, this place is not bad. Let's pitch the tent here.

Old Wang: I will put up the tent. Zhang, you help me. Gao, aren't you good at making fires? You go start the fire. Li, you go get some water, okay?

Little Zhang, Gao, Li: Okay. Sir, we will do whatever you say.

Little Gao: I will turn on the radio first and see if there is any good music, then start the fire.

Little Zhang: I have a really good tape here. Let's listen to it.

Little Gao: Okay. Oh, I forgot to bring the matches.

Old Wang: It doesn't matter. I will lend you my lighter.

Little Zhang: Who rented this tent? How come it is so hard to set up?

Little Li: Don't worry, take your time. It's still early.

Old Wang: Li, why did you set the water down here? I almost kicked it over.

Little Li: Sorry, sorry. I will take it away immediately.

Little Zhang: Put it under the tree, it's safer there.

Little Gao: The fire is ready. I already took the instant noodles out too. Should we boil them now?

Old Wang: Take the vegetables out of your backpack first and wash them. When my tent is ready I will help you. Zhang, you can bring the sleeping bags and flashlights over.

Unit 4

Lesson 7 Taking a Stroll in a Night Market

Mrs. Bao: What a rare situation! It has been a long time since we took a stroll in a night market together. You are always so busy.

Mr. Bao: The computer is being repaired and there is no way to work, otherwise, I would not be able to accompany you.

Mrs. Bao: That's right. So I am especially happy. Today we will definitely take a long stroll.

Mr. Bao: I remember you love to eat snacks. There are so many stalls, which one do you want to eat at?

Mrs. Bao: I want to try them all. It's a pity I cannot eat so much. How about some fried rice noodles first?

Mr. Bao: It's up to you, whatever you eat, I will eat. However these rice noodles are too oily, let's go across to that one.

Mrs. Bao: Some people are arranging things on the sidewalk next to that snack shop. They are selling clothes. After we eat, let's go see what kind of clothes are in fashion. Maybe we can buy something suitable.

Mr. Bao: Then let's hurry.

(after a while)

Mrs. Bao: There is a lot of excitement here. Why are so many people over there? Let's go see.

(going over)

Mr. Bao: So, they are playing games. I will play a bit and see what prize I can win.

Mrs. Bao: I have no interest. I will leave you alone. You can play here, I will go over there to the stall and have my fortune told.

Mr. Bao: Oh, I just remembered. An American client will call at 11:00. I must return and wait for his call.

Mrs. Bao: Every time it is like this. Okay, we will have to come back next time. Where is your car parked?

Mr. Bao: Straight ahead and to the right. You wait at the intersection and I'll pick you up.

Lesson 8 Sitting in a Pub

Xinyu: This pub is very famous, I didn't know you had not been here before.

Shuyi: That's right. I often go with my friends to a beer house, and do not often have the chance to go to western bars. Do you often come here?

Xinyu: I always come after taking a test. I like the atmosphere here. It is very relaxing. Whatever you do, no one bothers you.

Shuyi: That's right. As I look at the people here, the drinkers are drinking, the card players are playing, and the dancers are dancing, without worrying what other people think.

Xinyu: Over there are people playing pool and throwing darts. Let us first order something to drink. What would you like, beer or a mixed drink?

Shuyi: What kind of cocktails do they have here? Is there a menu?

Xinyu: It's here. That handsome bartender over there is really good at mixing drinks; whatever you want, he can mix it.

Shuyi: Yikes, I don't understand any of it. What kind of drinks are these? What should I drink?

Xinyu: Why don't you try a Blue Hawaii. The taste is good. I think I'll drink a draft beer. We'll then order some food to go with the drinks.

Shuyi: I only want some popcorn. What song is this?

Xinyu: How could it be that you haven't even heard this song? This is currently the most popular group's "You are my sun."

Music (You are my sun)

Shuyi: Oh, that's right. I remember now. I heard my classmate sing it.

Xinyu: Recently, whenever you turn on the radio, if it is not this song, then it's another song by Wang Fei. They are all pretty good. The drinks are here, let's drink.

Unit 5

Lesson 9 Let's Go Have Some Tea

Little Lin: We have been walking half the day, I'm tired and thirsty. Let's go drink something.

Little Chen: Okay, there is a foam black tea shop up ahead. Let's go there, okay?

Little Lin: A tea house is quieter and has a good atmosphere, it would be better go to a tea house.

Little Chen: Okay.

(at the tea house)

Waiter: What kind of tea would you two like to drink?

Little Chen: Before leaving, I only had a glass of water. We strolled the whole afternoon without drinking anything, so now I am dying of thirst. (to the waiter) Please bring us each a glass of water first, okay.

Waiter: Okay, no problem. (walks away)

Little Lin: Should we drink Oolong tea or green tea? They also have the recently popular fruit tea, milk tea, and flavored tea. You are probably more interested in them.

Little Chen: I'll have jasmine tea with honey. I wonder if they have it.

Little Lin: They should. I don't like sweet tea or too light tea either. I will have Oolong tea.

Waiter (bringing the water): What kind of tea would you like? Have you decided?

Little Chen: One jasmine with honey, one Oolong.

Waiter: Would you like some tea snacks?

Little Lin: Peanuts and watermelon seeds, one order of each is fine.

Waiter: Okay, thank you. I will bring the tea set, tea leaves, and snacks right out. (walks away)

Little Lin: I feel chatting while drinking tea is the greatest pleasure.

Little Chen: Yeah, I agree.

Lesson 10 Going to See a Performance

Zhao Qi: Hi! Li Hong, it's been a long time since I saw you. You look thinner.

Li Hong: That's right, thanks for your concern. I have been very busy recently and get home late everyday.

Zhao Qi: Last night's performance was great. Too bad you didn't come watch.

Li Hong: What performance? I have not seen a performance in a month.

Zhao Qi: The Russian Ballet has been here for many days now. You haven't heard yet?

Li Hong: I know, but I really cannot find the time to see them. How is their performance? Is it easy to buy tickets?

Zhao Qi: Since it is such a wonderful performance, the show drew an extremely large audience. I was in line for three hours before buying a ticket.

Li Hong: You only waited three hours. I heard some people waited five hours.

Zhao Qi: Last night was the final performance, too bad you missed it; now you cannot see it.

Li Hong: So there is no way. However, it doesn't matter. My busy life is about to finish, I can relax in one more week.

Zhao Qi: That's good. The Wednesday after next the "Contemporary Theater" is performing "Hamlet" at the National Theater. The actors in this play, every one of them has first-rate skill. The leading actor and actress are your favorites. Do you want to go see it together?

Li Hong: Of course I want to go. Such a famous play, I definitely won't miss it.

Zhao Qi: Good. I will buy the tickets. Do you have a newspaper? I will see when they begin selling tickets.

Li Hong: Here is the paper.

Zhao Qi: I want to buy tickets for the front center, what do you think?

Li Hong: Anything is okay. I am worried that it will not be easy to buy tickets, so it would be good if you could get them.

Zhao Qi: After I buy them, I will call you.

Li Hong: Okay. Thanks for going to all the trouble.

Unit 6

Lesson 11 Looking for a Job?

Little Zhou: Tuition is going up again next term. I counted the money I put in the bank; there will be little left after I pay the tuition, what should I do for living expenses?

Old Wu: Don't worry, let me think about it. Have you thought about getting a

part-time job to earn money?

Little Zhou: I would like to, but I don't have any experience and my educational level is not high enough. I don't know what I can do.

Old Wu: It doesn't matter that you do not have experience, some work does not require a high level of education. As long as you are willing to learn, then you can learn it quickly.

Little Zhou: I hope all the bosses also think this way.

Old Wu: Oh, I know. Our boss said yesterday that he wants to hire a waiter, are you interested?

Little Zhou: What does a waiter do?

Old Wu: It is simple: before guests arrive, you prepare. When the guests arrive, lead them in, serve dishes, collect the dishes, and clean the table. After closing time, you have the restaurant cleaned and straightened up.

Little Zhou: I can do those things. What about working hours?

Old Wu: Twelve hours per week. Two or three times a week, you can arrange it according to your situation.

Little Zhou: How much per hour?

Old Wu: I am not sure. You better meet the boss and talk with him. I will write down our restaurant's address and telephone number for you.

Little Zhou: That's great! My luck is not bad. I was looking for work and bumped into you. After the job is settled, I will definitely treat you to a meal to thank you.

Old Wu: Sure. Don't be polite. (Don't mention it.) Good luck. Good-bye.

Lesson 12 Responding to a Job Offer

Little Lin: Excuse me, didn't your company advertise for a secretary? I am here in response to the ad.

A: Oh, go to room 305 and interview with Manager Zhang. It's the first room on the right in front of you.

(Little Lin knocks on the door)

Manager: Come in.

Little Lin: Hello, Manager Zhang. I am here in response to the ad for a secretary.

Manager: Good, please sit down. Please give me your autobiography and resume.

Little Lin: OK. (gives the papers to Manager Zhang)

Manager: Oh, You are a graduate of the foreign languages department of Taiwan University, and worked for a year as a secretary in a trading company. Since you have already worked in a trade office, why do you want to work for us?

Little Lin: I want to learn more while I am young. Your esteemed company is internationally renowned and the business is not completely like my old company; moreover, your esteemed company's system, pay, and benefits are much better and there should be growth potential in the future, so I hope to give it a try.

Manager: Foreign language ability is very important for the secretary we need now. Other than English, can you speak another foreign language?

Little Lin: I have studied two years of German, one year of French, and can also speak a little Japanese.

Manager: Without experience, our company's secretaries are paid \$25,000 per month including insurance. After one year they have ten days annual leave. What do you think?

Little Lin: The salary is a bit low, but if there is opportunity for advancement I am willing to accept.

Manager: Your qualifications are not bad. We will contact you after we decide.

Little Lin: Thank you.

Unit 7

Lesson 13 You Can Open a Bank Account and Transfer Funds

Chunsheng: Oh no! Meiyue, finally you are here. I have been calling you for the past few days, but have not been able to find you.

Meiyue: Oh, I'm sorry. I forgot to pay the telephone bill and my line was cut. Why were you looking for me?

Chunsheng: Nothing special. It has just been a long time that we haven't met, and I wanted to chat with you. How come you are always confused and forgot to pay your bill again? Didn't I tell you before? Go to the bank and follow their procedure, then they will transfer the funds each month and you will not have to worry about being overdue.

Meiyue: Okay, okay. How come you started to scold me. I just say one sentence and you then say a whole bunch. So annoying! I do not even have a bank account, how can I transfer funds?

Chunsheng: Then go open an account! Don't be so lazy, it's simple: take your name chop, ID card, and money to the bank, fill out the forms, that's all.

Meiyue: Can I transfer the funds at the same time?

Chunsheng: You should bring your bill or receipt, then you can. They need to know your user account number.

Meiyue: It sounds easy. I can also apply for an automatic teller card, then with-

drawing money will be easy.

Chunsheng: It is easy! Come on, my lady. What generation are you in now? There are already people using the Internet to pay their utility bills, pay taxes and shop. You haven't even opened a bank account. That is too much.

Meiyue: Stop laughing at me. I am going to open an account and transfer funds right now. Goodbye.

Chunsheng: Goodbye. When your phone is connected, I will contact you.

Lesson 14 Notice for Payments

A. Payment Reminder for Residents

9/20/97

Dear Resident:

1. The administrative fee for this month should be paid by the 15th. Would those residents who have not yet done so please pay the caretaker as soon as possible.
2. Would those residents whose gas bill was paid for them by the caretaker please pay the fee for July and August to him by the end of the month.

Thank you for your cooperation.

Taian Building Administrative Committee.

B. Notice for Automatic Transfer of Insurance Premium Payments

Dear Mr. / Mrs. / Ms. Meiyue Lin:

1. Thank you very much for your support in automatically transferring insurance premium payments. Your premium will soon expire, and the next installment is as set out below. If there are any mistakes, please contact us.

Transfer date	12/27/97	Transfer bank	First Bank
A/C no.	60092150	Installment	7th annual installment
Payment due	12/27/97	Premium	NT\$ 5,137
		Total for transfer	NT\$ 5,137

2. If your address has changed in the meantime, please fill out the 'Address Change' form on the reverse and return it to us.

Unit 8

Lesson 15 Be Careful or You Will Catch a Cold

Little Zhou: Atchoo!

Old Wu: Little Zhou, what's wrong? You keep sneezing. Did you catch a cold too?

Little Zhou: I don't know. I have been sneezing since I got out of bed. The weather

has changed quickly these last two days, one moment it's hot, the next moment it's cold. It's difficult to adjust. Maybe it really is a cold.

Old Wu: Other than sneezing, anything wrong else where?

Little Zhou: My head hurts a little, my throat is scratchy, and my hearing is unclear sometimes.

Old Wu: You'd better be careful. There is a serious cold going around. I am afraid your throat is already infected. I have been sick more than a week with a vicious cough, especially at night. I cough so much I cannot sleep.

Little Zhou: I do not have a stuffed up nose or fever. It doesn't look like the cold that is going around.

Old Wu: I hope you do not have a cold, but some symptoms cannot be seen during the first two days. You better drink a lot of water and get plenty of rest and also take some vitamins. Otherwise, you will be like me; so sick that you cannot go to work.

Little Zhou: That's right. Without working there is no pay, plus I have to find someone to fill in for me.

Old Wu: Yes, exactly! Also, our boss is so stingy. When you ask for sick leave, he will chatter half a day.

Little Zhou: Yeah! Health is the most important thing.

Lesson 16 Had a Car Accident

Meiyue:

I haven't gotten in touch with you since we last met, because I was hurt in a car crash last month and spent three weeks in the hospital. I only got out yesterday. Don't worry: fortunately I had put on my seat belt, so my injuries weren't serious. I was driving on the highway at the time, had passed the Taishan Toll Station, and was nearly at the airport interchange when a taxi cut in from the side. I thought he wouldn't hit me, but guess what: 'bang!' and then ... nothing. I woke up and found my leg was broken. The nurse said that the taxi driver had lost too much blood, and couldn't be given emergency treatment in time; he died on the way to the hospital. If someone at the scene had called an ambulance sooner, he wouldn't have died. While recalling the event, I think I'm indeed much luckier than he.

Since then I've been at home resting every day, with little to do but surf the Internet. If it's convenient for you, we could keep in touch this way.
Stay happy and healthy.

Jinshui

Unit 9

Lesson 17 It's So Scratchy!

(Little Zhou at the dermatology clinic)

Little Zhou: Miss, I want to register.

Nurse: Have you been here before? Do you have a health insurance card?

Little Zhou: I have been here before. Here is my health insurance card and my registration card.

Nurse: Okay, the registration fee is \$150. Please wait outside the outpatient room and watch the number indicator. When it gets to your number, you can go in.

(after ten minutes)

Nurse: Number eight, please come in. I will take your temperature and see if you have a fever. (taking the temperature) Hmm, 37 degrees, no fever.

(Little Zhou enters the outpatient room)

Doctor: What happened? What seems to be the problem?

Little Zhou: Last night at about 8:00, I suddenly discovered my body had broken out into a very red rash. The more I scratched the itchier it got. It was so itchy I could not stand it. I could not sleep all night.

Doctor: What did you eat last night?

Little Zhou: Let me think. Hmm, I did not eat anything special. How could I catch this strange disease? Oh, yeah. I ate a kind of foreign fruit I had not eaten before. There was probably something wrong with that kind of fruit.

Doctor: Other than itchy skin, do you have diarrhea?

Little Zhou: No.

Doctor: Then it was not food poisoning. Let me look at your tongue and eyes. Please open your mouth.

(doctor looks at tongue and eyes)

Doctor: It looks okay. Then it must be an allergy. You are allergic to this kind of fruit, do not eat it again. I will give you a three-day supply of medicine. After you eat the medicine you will not feel itchy.

Little Zhou: About my rash, will a shot make it go away more quickly?

Doctor: I am afraid there is nothing else we can do. With this kind of allergy it does not matter if you eat medicine or take a shot. It will take at least three days before it will go away.

Little Zhou: Is there anything else I should pay attention to?

Doctor: Do not scratch too hard. If the skin is scratched, you will have to come to see me again.

Little Zhou: Thank you, good-bye. I certainly do not want to come again.

Lesson 18 Going to the Hospital to Visit the Sick

A. Comfort card

Envelope: To: Mr. Da-Hai Zhang

Da An Hospital, External Medicine, Building A,
Room 603, Bed#2

Content: Da-Hai,

I heard that you were hospitalized to have an operation. I'm sorry that I've been too busy to come to see you. How was the operation? Hope everything is okay. I sent this bundle of flowers to bring you a good mood. Please recuperate with no worries. Wish you
Get well soon!

Fenfen

9/18

B. Notice to visitors

Dear visitors:

1. The visiting hours are 10:00 a.m. to 11:30 a.m. and 2:00p.m. to 9:00 p.m.
2. During your visit, please do not make loud noises, nor run in the hallways, so as to avoid interfering our patients' rest and our medical crew's work.

The Hospital

Unit 10

Lesson 19 Attending a Birthday Party

Fenfen: My mother-in-law says the food is ready. Everybody please come to the dining room and eat.

Li Hong: Okay, thank you. I'm really sorry to cause you all this bother, Mrs. Lin.

Mrs. Lin: Oh it's nothing; please don't stand on ceremony. If there's anything you like, please have more.

Zhao Qi: Mm! Smells great! I'm sure it tastes good.

Mrs. Lin: Thank you, but it's just home cooking. I don't know if you'll like it.

Jiaming: These dishes look and smell perfect. Auntie Lin makes food even better than a restaurant.

Li Hong: Come on, let's have a drink. Firstly, a toast to the birthday person:
happy birthday. And thank you, Auntie Lin and Mr. Lin.

.....

Zhao Qi: I'm full. But do eat more, take your time.

Mrs. Lin: You're really full? How about having another bowl of soup.

Zhao Qi: No, thank you. I want to keep some space for the cake!

Mr. Lin: If everybody's finished, let's have some cake.

Fenfen: I already bought a cake; who would know that you bought one too?
(goes to get the cake)

Li Hong: I'll take away the bowls and chopsticks.

Mrs. Lin: Don't bother. You're a guest. How could I let a guest tidy up for me?
That doesn't make any sense.

Mr. Lin: I'll help.

Fenfen: (brings the cake over) You've gone to so much expense, buying a cake
and a present, I feel so bad about this.

Li Hong: Not at all. It's only a little something. It's supposed to be done in this
way.

Jiaming: How many candles should I light?

Fenfen: Two will be enough, just as a symbol. Anyway, you all know how old I
am.

Zhao Qi: Wait before blowing out the candles. Let's first take a photo.

Li Hong: Fenfen, what wish did you make?

Fenfen: Having been married for three years, I want to have a baby, so as to set
my mother-in-law's mind at rest.

Li Hong: You really are a good daughter-in-law.

Fenfen: Also, I wished for good health for everyone.

Li Hong: Thank you.

.....

Li Hong: It's late, we should leave.

Fenfen: Stay a while longer.

Zhao Qi: We should go, we have been enough trouble. Thank you, thank you,
goodbye.

Fenfen: Well then, I'll see you out. Get home safely. Goodbye.

Appendix I

Lesson 20 My Best Friend's Wedding

Li Hong's diary

December 20th: clear weather

Today is Meiyue's wedding day. I have been racking my brains about what to

wear ever since receiving the wedding invitation. Meiyue is my best friend, and I want to look great; I also ought to give her a big present.

I wrote a few words of congratulation on the red envelope: “Wishing you a hundred years of harmony.” Then I chose a light blue suit, and a brooch to match it, and next a pair of high-heeled shoes, which I seldom wear. I looked in the mirror; it matched my new curled hairstyle very well. And so I left. On the way, I remembered that I hadn’t put on lipstick, and had forgotten to take the red envelope. I had no choice but to go back home. I was furious: what a waste of time. I wonder what I was thinking about while leaving home. In the end, however, I wasn’t late.

At the wedding banquet, I met my classmate Xie Meiyi. She recognized me, but I didn’t recognize her because she had grown much fatter and was wearing a lot of jewelry. No wonder I thought she was the bride’s mother, and even congratulated her. How embarrassing.

Meiyue was getting married; Meiyi was getting fat. And me?

Unit 11

Lesson 21 Alas! I Didn’t Do Well on the Test

Jinshui: What’s up with you? You look terrible, and have no energy at all.

Jiaming: I had an economics test today. I only got 55, so I failed. It’s so embarrassing. If I fail the next test, I may have to take a make-up test at the end of semester.

Jinshui: What’s wrong? Is the course really difficult? Or are you not working hard enough?

Jiaming: I was too nervous. I was afraid I’d fail, so I burned the midnight oil for two days. When it came to the test, I felt woozy and didn’t understand the topic and forgot everything. I sure regret staying up late.

Jinshui: Cheer up. You’re so smart, all you have to do is not burn the midnight oil, and this kind of thing won’t happen again.

Jiaming: Ai! I work so hard and do so badly on the test. It’s extremely depressing. How can I face my parents, they must be very disappointed with me.

Jinshui: I understand how you feel. Don’t be like this. You should have confidence in yourself. Furthermore, one failure doesn’t mean you’ll always fail. Didn’t I just say that? Just keep on working hard, do not stay up so late, and you will not have any problems.

Jiaming: No matter what we’ve talked, it’s just that I care too much.

Jinshui: You’re too hard on yourself. Look at it this way: blaming yourself won’t help anything. Come on, let’s go to the KTV to sing and relax a bit.

Jiaming: OK, whatever you say.

Lesson 22 Writing a Love Letter

Dear Shuyi:

I haven't seen you for a week. I'm lonely. I can't eat. I can't sleep. All I can think of is how happy we were together. I've been blaming myself in the last few days for flying into a childlike tantrum all the time. I shouldn't have argued with you. I shouldn't have hurt your feelings and made you ignore me for a week. I love you. I want you to be happy. I'd rather you get mad at me than you feel hurt and sad. It's all my fault. Can you forgive me?

The girl you saw the other day is my colleague. We'd just finished a meeting, and were discussing business. It's not what you think between her and me. Please believe me — I'm telling you the truth. I shouldn't have called you "crazy and paranoid." I should have been more patient, and explained things to you. That way you wouldn't have run away in a huff. I won't do it again. I promise you that this won't happen again. Don't dump me; forgive me, and let's not break up. I'll do anything if you and I can get back together.

I have called you a hundred times, but you never pick up the phone. That's why I'm writing you this letter. I don't know what sweet things to say; I just hope you know my heart. I am asking you to please, please call me.

Begging your forgiveness,

Jiaming

Unit 12

Lesson 23 Burglarized

Policeman A: Hello, this is 911. What's the matter?

Xinyu: Hello, 911, please send an ambulance. Someone has been beaten unconscious.

Policeman A: Where? Tell me the address.

Xinyu: Hopping Road, Lane 284, No. 6, second floor.

Policeman A: We'll be right there.

Xinyu: I haven't finished. There was a burglary too.

Policeman A: Please dial 2321-8547.

Xinyu: (calling this number) Hello, police station? I have a case to report. Our house has been burglarized.

Policeman B: When did this happen?

Xinyu: I don't know when the burglar got in. When I got home, I found the

door open. I thought it strange. I did lock the door. Then I found the lock had been broken and the rooms were turned upside down, and my roommate had even been knocked out. What the burglar did is really hateful. You must catch him.

Policeman B: And how is the injured person? Have you called an ambulance?

Xinyu: Yes. They said they'd be right here.

Policeman B: OK. Don't touch the scene of the crime. We'll send someone over right away.

(Later)

Xinyu: Great, you're here at last. I was worried sick.

Policeman C: First let's take a look around. Has the injured person been taken away?

Xinyu: Yes.

Policeman C: Just now we saw the drawers of the closet in the bedroom. What have you lost? Is the loss serious?

Xinyu: My American dollars and diamond ring are gone. I spent \$300,000 on that diamond, so those two things alone probably come to \$400,000 or so. And then there was a camera, a video camera, and stuff like that. Added up, that's got to be at least \$600,000.

Policeman C: Please make a list, and I'll make a record of it.

Xinyu: What I've lost – will I be able to get it back?

Policeman C: I don't know, but we'll do our best. I'll let you know as soon as we have news.

Lesson 24 A Broadcast News about a Fire

(This news from our station:) A huge fire broke out at 2 a.m. today in Dongsan Street in Tainan. On receiving the emergency call, the fire brigade came immediately to the rescue. According to what firemen on the scene know, the fire was caused by a gas explosion in the "Ni Hui Hong KTV" on the sixth floor. The fire doors in the building were locked, and there was no key to be found, so the doors could not be opened. The thirty-six patrons of the establishment had no other safety equipment, and were therefore stuck in the dense smoke. The situation was very dangerous. When our reporter Zhang Taisheng arrived at the scene, he found that some patrons, not wanting to wait to be rescued, had jumped from the sixth floor window, resulting in five people dead and seven injured. Firemen were later able to break open the safety doors and save the others. The fire was extinguished at about four o'clock. Police are conducting an investigation into the reason and the responsibility for the fire. We will broadcast further news and the name list of the dead and the wounded on this at any time, so please keep your radios tuned to this station.

APPENDIX II ABBREVIATIONS LIST

詞類略語表

Adv	Adverb	副詞
AV	Auxiliary Verb	助動詞
Conj	Conjunction	連詞
CV	Coverb	前置介詞
D	Direction	方向
DO	Directional Object	直接賓語
DV	Directional Verb	方向動詞
I	Interjection	嘆詞
IE	Idiomatic Expressin	習慣用語
IO	Indirect Object	間接賓語
L	Localizer	方位詞
M	Measure	量詞
MA	Movable Adverb	可移副詞
N	Noun	名詞
NP	Noun Phrase	名詞短語
Nu	Number	數詞
O	Object	賓語
P	Particle	助詞
PN	Pronoun	代名詞
Proper N	Proper Noun	專有名詞
PV	Post-verb	後置介詞
PW	Place Word	處所詞
QW	Question Word	疑問詞
RC	Resultative Compound	結果複合動詞
RE	Resultative Ending	結果複合詞尾
S	Subject	主語
SP	Specifier	指示詞
SV	Stative Verb	性狀動詞
TW	Time Word	時間詞
V	Verb	動詞
VO	Verb Object Compound	動賓複合詞
VP	Verb Phrase	動詞短語